《新概念英语》(新版) 辅导丛书

主编 何其莘 顾问 亚历山大(英)

新概念英语 2

NCE Exercise Companion

练习详解 Practice & Progress

王雅华 编著

Practice & Progress

实践与进步

外语教学与研究出版社

LONGMAN 朗文

《新概念英语》(新版)辅导丛书

主编　何其莘

顾问　亚历山大(英)

新概念英语练习详解 2

NCE Exercise Companion 2

Practice & Progress

王雅华　编著

外语教学与研究出版社

LONGMAN 朗文

外研社 朗文 新概念英语　练习详解 2

NEW CONCEPT ENGLISH *(New Edition)*

EXERCISE COMPANION 2: *Practice & Progress*

English edition of *New Concept English* © L. G. Alexander 1967
Original English material © Addison Wesley Longman Ltd. 1997
This edition of New Concept English EXERCISE COMPANION 2
with the addition of Chinese material © Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press and
Pearson Education North Asia Ltd., 2001. This edition is
published under the Longman imprint,
which is an imprint of Pearson Education Group,
and by arrangement with Pearson Education North Asia Ltd., Hong Kong.

Licensed for sale in the mainland territory of the People's Republic of China only.

This simplified Chinese characters edition first published
in 2001 jointly by Foreign Language Teaching and Research Press
and Pearson Education North Asia Ltd.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be
reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted
in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical,
photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the
prior written permission of the Publishers.

合作出版人：李朋义(外研社)　沈维贤(朗文)
主编：何其莘　　顾问：亚历山大(英)
责任编辑：任小玫
执行编辑：邢新冰
封面设计：诸中英

外语教学与研究出版社
培生教育出版北亚洲有限公司 联合出版

本书任何部分之文字及图片，如未获得本社之书面同意，
不得用任何方式抄袭、节录或翻印。

本简体字版只供在中华人民共和国内地销售。
凡属合法出版之本书，封面均贴有防伪标贴；
凡无防伪标贴者均属未经授权之版本，
本书出版者及原版权持有者将予以追究。

朗文(Longman)为培生教育出版集团(Pearson Education Group)所拥有之商标。

《新概念英语》（新版）是《新概念英语》1967 年首次出版以来第一次推出的新版本。现在，由该经典教材的出版者外语教学与研究出版社和培生教育出版北亚洲有限公司独家授权、由原编著者何其莘教授亲自主持编写、亚历山大先生担任顾问的这套《新概念英语》（新版）辅导丛书涵盖自学导读、练习详解、词汇、语法以及录音练习等各方面的内容，是面向中国广大英语爱好者的一套权威的辅导用书，定能满足中国广大读者对《新概念英语》（新版）的全方位的要求，并使英语爱好者在学习过程中最大限度地发挥自己的潜能。

《新概念英语》（新版）辅导丛书包括：

《新概念英语自学导读 1》（*NCE Study Guide 1: First Things First*）
《新概念英语自学导读 2》（*NCE Study Guide 2: Practice & Progress*）
《新概念英语自学导读 3》（*NCE Study Guide 3: Developing Skills*）
《新概念英语自学导读 4》（*NCE Study Guide 4: Fluency in English*）
《新概念英语练习详解 1》（*NCE Exercise Companion 1: First Things First*）
《新概念英语练习详解 2》（*NCE Exercise Companion 2: Practice & Progress*）
《新概念英语练习详解 3》（*NCE Exercise Companion 3: Developing Skills*）
《新概念英语练习详解 4》（*NCE Exercise Companion 4: Fluency in English*）
《新概念英语语法手册》（*An NCE Grammar Handbook*）
《新概念英语词汇大全》（*An NCE Complete Vocabulary List*）
《新概念英语词汇自学手册》（*An NCE Pocket Dictionary*）
《新概念英语录音练习手册》（*Recorded Drills for NCE*）

Preface

This Exercise Companion is intended for all students of *Practice & Progress*, but particularly for those working on their own.

Detailed answer keys and notes are given for all the exercises in the Student's Book, Lessons 1 ~ 96. Specifically, these cover:

- Written exercises
- Grammar and vocabulary exercises
- Multiple choice questions
- Sentence structure

We believe that these additional notes will help students from all backgrounds to benefit from the course and to complete it successfully.

Louis George Alexander

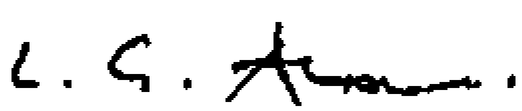
前　　言

该《练习详解》专为所有使用《实践与进步》的学习者而设计，特别适用于自学者。

书中，针对学生用书 96 课中的每一个练习均有进一步说明。其中包括：

- 写作练习；
- 语法、词汇练习；
- 多项选择练习；
- 句子结构。

我们确信这些补充材料将使各种起点的学习者从中受益，并顺利学完本课程。



L.G.亚历山大

目　　录

测试 1 答案 …… 1
Lesson 1 A private conversation 私人谈话 …… 8
Lesson 2 Breakfast or lunch? 早餐还是午餐? …… 13
Lesson 3 Please send me a card 请给我寄一张明信片 …… 18
Lesson 4 An exciting trip 激动人心的旅行 …… 23
Lesson 5 No wrong numbers 无错号之虞 …… 29
Lesson 6 Percy Buttons 珀西·巴顿斯 …… 34
Lesson 7 Too late 为时太晚 …… 39
Lesson 8 The best and the worst 最好的和最差的 …… 44
Lesson 9 A cold welcome 冷遇 …… 50
Lesson 10 Not for jazz 不适于演奏爵士乐 …… 55
Lesson 11 One good turn deserves another 礼尚往来 …… 60
Lesson 12 Goodbye and good luck 再见,一路顺风 …… 66
Lesson 13 The Greenwood Boys 绿林少年 …… 71
Lesson 14 Do you speak English? 你会讲英语吗? …… 76
Lesson 15 Good news 佳音 …… 81
Lesson 16 A polite request 彬彬有礼的要求 …… 86
Lesson 17 Always young 青春常驻 …… 91
Lesson 18 He often does this! 他经常干这种事! …… 96
Lesson 19 Sold out 票已售完 …… 101
Lesson 20 One man in a boat 独坐孤舟 …… 107
Lesson 21 Mad or not? 是不是疯了? …… 112
Lesson 22 A glass envelope 玻璃信封 …… 117
Lesson 23 A new house 新居 …… 124

Lesson 24 It could be worse 不幸中之万幸 …………………… 129
测试 2 答案…………………………………………………… 134
Lesson 25 Do the English speak English? 英国人讲的是英语吗? ……………………………………… 141
Lesson 26 The best art critics 最佳美术评论家 …………… 146
Lesson 27 A wet night 雨夜 …………………………………… 152
Lesson 28 No parking 禁止停车 ……………………………… 157
Lesson 29 Taxi! 出租汽车! …………………………………… 162
Lesson 30 Football or polo? 足球还是水球? ……………… 167
Lesson 31 Success story 成功者的故事 …………………… 172
Lesson 32 Shopping made easy 购物变得很方便 ………… 177
Lesson 33 Out of the darkness 冲出黑暗 ………………… 182
Lesson 34 Quick work 破案"神速" ………………………… 187
Lesson 35 Stop thief! 捉贼! ………………………………… 191
Lesson 36 Across the Channel 横渡海峡 ………………… 196
Lesson 37 The Olympic Games 奥林匹克运动会 ………… 201
Lesson 38 Everything except the weather 惟独没有考虑到天气 ……………………………………… 206
Lesson 39 Am I all right? 我是否痊愈? …………………… 211
Lesson 40 Food and talk 进餐与交谈 ……………………… 215
Lesson 41 Do you call that a hat? 你把那个叫帽子吗? …… 220
Lesson 42 Not very musical 并非很懂音乐 ………………… 224
Lesson 43 Over the South Pole 飞越南极 ………………… 230
Lesson 44 Through the forest 穿过森林 …………………… 235
Lesson 45 A clear conscience 问心无愧 ………………… 241
Lesson 46 Expensive and uncomfortable 既昂贵又受罪 …… 246
Lesson 47 A thirsty ghost 嗜酒的鬼魂 …………………… 253
Lesson 48 Did you want to tell me something? 你想对我说什么吗? …………………………………… 258

测试3答案 …… 263
Lesson 49 The end of a dream 美梦告终 …… 271
Lesson 50 Taken for a ride 乘车兜风 …… 276
Lesson 51 Reward for virtue 对美德的奖赏 …… 281
Lesson 52 A pretty carpet 漂亮的地毯 …… 286
Lesson 53 Hot snake 触电的蛇 …… 292
Lesson 54 Sticky fingers 粘糊的手指 …… 298
Lesson 55 Not a gold mine 并非金矿 …… 302
Lesson 56 Faster than sound! 比声音还快! …… 307
Lesson 57 Can I help you, madam? 你要买什么，夫人? …… 313
Lesson 58 A blessing in disguise? 是因祸得福吗? …… 318
Lesson 59 In or out? 进来还是出去? …… 323
Lesson 60 The future 卜算未来 …… 328
Lesson 61 Trouble with the Hubble 哈勃望远镜的困境 …… 333
Lesson 62 After the fire 大火之后 …… 338
Lesson 63 She was not amused 她并不觉得好笑 …… 344
Lesson 64 The Channel Tunnel 海峡隧道 …… 350
Lesson 65 Jumbo versus the police 小象对警察 …… 355
Lesson 66 Sweet as honey! 像蜜一样甜! …… 361
Lesson 67 Volcanoes 火山 …… 367
Lesson 68 Persistent 纠缠不休 …… 373
Lesson 69 But not murder! 并非谋杀! …… 379
Lesson 70 Red for danger 危险的红色 …… 385
Lesson 71 A famous clock 一个著名的大钟 …… 391
Lesson 72 A car called *Bluebird* "蓝鸟"汽车 …… 396
测试4答案 …… 401
Lesson 73 The record-holder 纪录保持者 …… 407
Lesson 74 Out of the limelight 舞台之外 …… 413

Lesson 75 SOS 呼救信号 …………………………………… 418
Lesson 76 April Fools' Day 愚人节 ………………………… 424
Lesson 77 A successful operation 一例成功的手术 ………… 429
Lesson 78 The last one? 最后一枝吗? …………………… 435
Lesson 79 By air 乘飞机 ……………………………………… 441
Lesson 80 The Crystal Palace 水晶宫 ……………………… 448
Lesson 81 Escape 脱逃 ……………………………………… 454
Lesson 82 Monster or fish? 是妖还是鱼? ………………… 460
Lesson 83 After the elections 大选之后 …………………… 466
Lesson 84 On strike 罢工 …………………………………… 472
Lesson 85 Never too old to learn 活到老学到老 ………… 478
Lesson 86 Out of control 失控 ……………………………… 483
Lesson 87 A perfect alibi 极好的不在犯罪现场的证据 …… 489
Lesson 88 Trapped in a mine 困在矿井里 ………………… 495
Lesson 89 A slip of the tongue 口误 ……………………… 501
Lesson 90 What's for supper? 晚餐吃什么? ……………… 507
Lesson 91 Three men in a basket 三人同篮 ……………… 513
Lesson 92 Asking for trouble 自找麻烦 …………………… 519
Lesson 93 A noble gift 崇高的礼物 ………………………… 525
Lesson 94 Future champions 未来的冠军 ………………… 531
Lesson 95 A fantasy 纯属虚构 ……………………………… 539
Lesson 96 The dead return 亡灵返乡 ……………………… 545

测试1答案

A. 1. He is busy.
2. He is learning English.
3. He has a new book.
4. He lives in the country.
5. He will see you tomorrow.
6. He can understand you.
7. He must write a letter.
8. He may come next week.
9. He does a lot of work every day.
10. He did a lot of work yesterday.
11. He played football yesterday.
12. He bought a new coat last week.
13. He has had a letter from Tom.
14. He was busy this morning.
15. He could play football very well when he was younger.
16. He always tries to get up early.
17. He might see you next week.
18. He always enjoys a good film.
19. He had finished his work before you came.
20. He watches television every night.

注解：

人称代词 he 是第 3 人称单数主格，作句子的主语时后面的谓语动词要作相应改变：在一般现在时中，动词 be 要用 is；行为动词词尾要加-s 或-es；动词 have 改成 has；情态助动词同其他人称一样不需改变：

He is tired.

He lives in the city.

He has a new bike.

在一般过去时中,he 后面的动词 be 要用过去式形式 was:

He was busy this morning.

B. 1. some　2. a　3. any　4. any　5. a

6. some　7. a　8. any　9. any　10. any

注解:

some 和 any 是两个常用的数量词,表示不确定的量"一些"。

some 用于肯定句中修饰可数或不可数名词:

I want some biscuits.

I want some coffee.

any 用于疑问句或否定句中修饰可数名词或不可数名词:

Do you want any biscuits?

I don't want any coffee.

a 作为不定冠词放在单数可数名词前表示不特指的"一个":

He has bought a car.

C. 1. I haven't got much butter.

2. You haven't got many cigarettes.

3. We haven't got much milk.

4. She hasn't got many biscuits.

5. They haven't got much stationery.

注解:

many 和 much 都是数量词,表示不确定的量"很多"。many 修饰可数名词;much 修饰不可数名词。

D. 1. bought　2. aired　3. lost

4. listened　5. emptied

注解：

这几个句子都需要用一般过去时，动词也都要改为动词的过去式形式，因为它们都表示在过去某一时间发生的动作，都有表示过去的时间状语，如 last year、yesterday 等。

E. 1. Q. Did he buy a new car?

Q. What did he buy?

N. He didn't buy a new car.

2. Q. Can she come tomorrow?

Q. When can she come?

N. She can't come tomorrow.

3. Q. Were they here yesterday?

Q. When were they here?

N. They weren't here yesterday.

4. Q. Must he leave early?

Q. Why must he leave early?

N. He mustn't leave early.

5. Q. Did he give you a pen?

Q. What did he give you?

N. He didn't give you a pen.

6. Q. Does he live next door?

Q. Where does he live?

N. He doesn't live next door.

7. Q. Do you know him well?

Q. How well do you know him?

N. You don't know him well.

8. Q. Has he found his pen?

Q. What has he found?

N. He hasn't found his pen.

9. Q. Did you see that film?

Q. When did you see that film?

N. You didn't see that film.

10. Q. Did he arrive at two o'clock?

Q. When did he arrive?

N. He didn't arrive at two o'clock.

F. 1. slowly 2. lazily 3. badly

4. carefully 5. suddenly

注解：

一般形容词的副词形式是在形容词词尾加-ly 构成。(也有一些形容词例外。)副词是用来修饰动词的，一般放在动词后面。

G. 1. He'll... 2. She'll... 3. I'll...

4. He won't... 5. We shan't...

H. 1. his 2. mine 3. hers

4. theirs 5. yours

注解：

以上代词叫所有格代词。它们指人或指物，单复数形式一样，代替前面句子中提到的名词：

His father is a lawyer. *Mine* is a doctor.

These shoes belong to my wife. They are *hers*.

I. 1. cooler 2. wetter

3. later 4. easier

5. more expensive 6. larger

7. more interesting 8. prettier

9. more beautiful 10. more intelligent

注解：

形容词的比较级的构成：单音节和多数双音节的形容词在词尾加-er；以-y 结尾的形容词，把 y 改成 i 再加-er；以-e 结尾的直接加-r；单音节而以一个辅音字母结尾的形容词，要

把辅音字母双写后再加-er;多音节的形容词要在词前面用more。(注意:有一些形容词的比较级的构成是不规则的。)

J. 1. yesterday　2. tomorrow
3. today　4. this afternoon
5. the day after tomorrow　6. the day before yesterday
7. last night　8. tomorrow morning
9. this morning　10. yesterday afternoon

K. 1. at　在钟点前面要用介词 at。
2. on　在具体日期前面要用介词 on。
3. in　在月份前要用介词 in。
4. in　在某年前面要用介词 in。
5. on　在星期前要用介词 on。

L. 1. over 在……上方,经过
2. under 在……底下
3. across/in
此句如填 across,可译成:这男孩正在游过/横渡这条河。如填 in,可译成:这男孩正在河里游泳。
4. along 沿着
5. on 在……顶上
6. in 在……里
7. off 与……离开,脱离
8. between 在两者之间
9. into 进人
10. out of 出来

M. 1. Which　2. Who　3. Which
4. Who　5. Which

注解:

which(哪一个)既可以指人也可以指物。

who(谁)只能指人。

N. 1. This is the car *which* the mechanic repaired yesterday.

2. He is the man *whom* I invited to the party.

3. These are the things *which* I bought yesterday.

4. He is the man *who* came here last week.

5. He is the policeman *who* caught the thieves.

6. She is the nurse *who* looked after me.

7. She is the woman *whom* I met yesterday.

8. I am the person *who* wrote to you.

9. They are the people *whom* I saw yesterday.

10. They are the trees *which* we cut down yesterday.

注解:

who、whom、which 都是关系代词,在关系从句中代替它们所修饰的先行词。

1. who 在关系从句中作主语,指人:

He is the man *who* lives next door.

2. whom 在关系从句中作宾语,指人:

He is the man *whom* I met the day before yesterday.

3. which 在关系从句中作宾语,指物,也可指人。

This is the photo *which* I took.

O. 1. knives 2. boxes 3. shelves

4. wives 5. dishes

注解:

以-x、-s 或-sh 结尾的名词,其复数形式是在词尾加-es;以-f或-fe结尾的名词,复数形式是先把 f 或 fe 改成 v 然后再加-es。

P. 1. No, I didn't. I took her to a party.

2. Yes, I did.

3. She sat near the window.
4. A middle-aged lady (came into our compartment).
5. She was middle-aged.
6. She sat opposite Sally.
7. She said 'Hello' to Sally.
8. To make herself beautiful./She did it to make herself beautiful.
9. No, she didn't. She thought she was ugly.
10. She said, 'But you are still ugly.'/She said she was still ugly.

Lesson 1
A private conversation
私人谈话

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer went to the theatre last week. He did not enjoy the play. A young man and a young woman were sitting behind him. They were talking loudly. The writer could not hear the actors. He turned round. 'I can't hear a word!' he said. 'This is a private conversation!' the young man said.

(55 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. I (1) got (2) very angry (3).

I (1) could not hear (2) the actors (3).

I (1) turned round (2).

I (1) looked at (2) the man and the woman (3) angrily (4).

They (1) did not pay (2) any attention (3).

In the end (6), I (1) could not bear (2) it (3).

I (1) turned round (2) again (6).

'I (1) can't hear (2) a word (3)!'

I (1) said (2) angrily (4).

'It (1) is (2) none of your business (3),'

the young man (1) said (2) rudely (4).

'This (1) is (2) a private conversation (3)!'

注解：

本课的关键句型是简单陈述句。陈述句是用来叙述一件事情的句子。每个句子包含一个概念，告诉我们一件事情。一个简单陈述句可以由 6 部分组成，但是并不是每个句子都有这么多部分。这 6 部分的顺序应该是：主语/动词/宾语或补语/方式状语/地点状语/时间状语(Subject/Verb/Object or Complement/Manner/Place/Time)。时间状语可以放在句尾，也可以放在句首：

The children played games quietly in their room yesterday.

主/动/宾/方式/地点/时间

Last week I went to the theatre.

时间/主/动/地点

B. 1. I enjoyed the film yesterday.
2. I listened to the news carefully.
3. The man played the piano well.
4. The children played games quietly in their room yesterday.
5. He opened the door quietly.
6. He left immediately.
7. He planted a tree in the corner of the garden.
8. He read the letter quickly in his office before lunch.
9. I borrowed a book from the library this morning.
10. The cook spoilt the soup.
11. We stay at home on Sundays.

12. There are a lot of people at the bus stop.

13. The little boy ate greedily an apple in the kitchen this morning.

14. She draws beautifully.

15. I like music very much.

16. They built a new school in our village last year.

17. The match ended at four o'clock.

18. She received a letter from her brother last week.

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

选(b)最为正确。因为(a)和(d)都与课文内容不符,也不合乎逻辑;(c)的意思是"他们没有注意他",而作者的意图并不是想让他们注意他,而是想让他们停止谈话。所以(b)最能表达作者当时心里的感受。

2. (c)

其余3个答案都与原句意思不符。

3. (b)

因为(a)to不正确,可以是He went to the theatre;(c)into也不正确,应该是He went into the theatre;(d)on更不符合语法。表示在某一个地方可以用介词in或at。in表示在大的空间,如国家、城市等,at则表示在小的地点或空间,如at the office、at the church、at the theatre等,所以(b) at是正确的选项。

4. (d)

(b)above(在……上方);(c)ahead of(在……的前面,在……之前)不和behind相对应,也不强调位置的前后顺序。(a)before和(d)in front of都是和behind相对应的,

都有“在……的前面”的意思。但 in front of 更具体地强调位置，而 before 则包含更宽泛的意思，即时间、空间、次序、等级、重要性等方面的“在……前面”。

5. (c)

因为用(a)Where、(b)Why、(d)When 提问都不符合逻辑，都不是针对状态提问的；只有用 How 提问，才能用 Angry 回答。

6. (a)

(b)they 只作主语；(c)their 只能作定语；(d)us 虽然能作宾语，但与前一句意思不符。

7. (d)

(a)none 是代词，很少用在名词前面；(b)any 只能用在否定句或疑问句中；(c)not any 不符合语法，因为前面没有助动词 did。

8. (b)

(a)chair(椅子)、(c)armchair(手扶椅)与(d)class(班级)这 3 者都和 seat 的意思不符。seat 是“座位”、“座席”的意思。强调的是可供坐下的地方，不是指具体椅子。只有(b)place 是 seat 的同义词。

9. (a)

(b)big(大的)指体积；(c)tall(高的)指身材；(d)large(大的)指空间和面积。这 3 个词均与人的年龄无关。只有(a)old 是说明年龄的。

10. (c)

(a)sad(悲哀，忧愁的)没有生气的意思；(b)unhappy(不幸的，不快乐的)不一定是生气；(d)pleased(高兴的)同 angry 意思相反。只有(c)cross(脾气坏的，易怒的，生气的)与 angry 意思相同。

11. (c)

(c)stand 是 bear 的同义词,都有“忍受”的意思。而其他 3 个选项(a)carry、(b)suffer、(d)lift 均没有“忍受”的意思。

12. (c)

(a)clever(聪明的)、(b)rude(粗鲁的)与(d)kind(仁慈的,和蔼的,友好的)这 3 个词都不是 rude 的反义词,只有 polite(有礼貌的)才是和 rude 相对应的反义词,所以应该选(c)。

4 句子结构答案

A young man and a young woman were sitting behind me.

Lesson 2
Breakfast or lunch?
早餐还是午餐?

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer always gets up late on Sundays. He got up late last Sunday. Then his aunt Lucy telephoned. She had arrived by train. She was coming to see him. 'I'm still having breakfast,' he said. His aunt was very surprised. It was one o'clock. (45 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. 1. are playing...play...is kicking...is running

2. 'What *are* you *doing*?' my landlady asked. '*I'm leaving*, Mrs. Lynch,' I answered. 'Why *are* you *leaving*?' she asked... '... friends never *come* to visit me...I frequently *go* to bed...I rarely *listen*... I always *feel* cold...'

注解:

本课的关键句型是 now、often 和 always,表示现在和经常发生的动作。表示现在发生的动作可以用时间副词 now、still 等,用现在进行时态。表示经常发生的动作,可以用

often, always, never 等作时间状语,用一般现在时态:

I'm *still* having breakfast.(现在正在发生的动作)

It's raining *now*.(正在进行的动作)

Do you *always* get up so late?(经常性的动作)

但是有时不用上述时间状语,通过上下文也能反映现在和经常发生的动作:

What are you doing?

I go shopping on Sundays.

B. 1. She *rarely* answers my letters.

2. We *never* work after six o'clock.

3. The shops *always* close on Saturday afternoons.

4. Do you *always* go to work by car?

5. Our teacher *frequently* collects our exercise books.

6. We *sometimes* spend our holidays abroad.

7. I *often* buy CDs.

8. Do you *ever* buy CDs?

注解:

表示时间的副词如 often、always、never 等在句子中要放在它们所修饰的动词前面,但是有的时间副词像 now、sometimes 等则可以放在句首或句尾。

难点练习答案

1. What a wonderful garden (this is)!
2. What a surprise (this is)!
3. What a lot of trouble he is causing!
4. What wonderful actors (they are)!
5. What a hard-working woman (she is)!
6. What a tall building (it is)!
7. What a terrible film (it is)!

8. What a clever boy you are!

9. What a pretty girl (she is)!

10. What a strange guy (he is)!

注解：

what 可以放在句首，引导感叹句表示惊奇、愤怒、赞赏、喜悦等感情。在感叹句中主谓语用正常语序：

What a day!

What a beautiful picture this is!

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

因为根据课文内容，作者正在吃早饭，他不可能在床上。所以(a)和(b)与课文不符。作者强调尽管他起床很晚，已是中午，但他还在吃早饭，所以(d)也不正确。

2. (d)

因为只有(d)才是 Aunt Lucy 感到惊讶的原因，其他 3 个选择都不合逻辑。

3. (c)

本句有一个表示经常性动作的时间状语 sometimes，所以要用一般现在时。因主语是 He，所以它后面的动词要在词尾加-s。(a)stay 词尾没加-s；(b)is staying 是进行时；(d)staying 是现在分词。只有(c)stays 符合时态和人称。

4. (c)

go to bed 是固定词组，意思是"就寝"。(a)in 可以用在 stay in bed 之中；(b)into 和(d)at 不符合语法和惯用法，英语中不用 into bed 和 at bed 这样的短语。

5. (a)

只有(a)late 是前一句中 early 的反义词，意思是"迟"、

"晚"。而(b)lately(最近)、(c)slowly(慢)、(d)hardly(几乎不)均不是 early 的反义词。

6. (b)

此问句的回答是 By train,是表示方式的,意思是乘火车来的。只有用(b)How 才能对句子中表示方式的部分进行提问。而(a)When是就时间提问的;(c)Why是对原因提问的;(d)Where是就地点提问的。

7. (b)

如果填(a)still,句子不符合语法规则,也不符合逻辑;填(c)often和(d)always也不符合逻辑。只有填(b)now 句子才合乎逻辑:他现在不能见他姑妈,因为他正在吃早饭。

8. (a)

4 个选择都有"看"的意思。look 的词义是"看"、"望",强调看的动作,常同介词 at、out of 等连用;see 的词义是"看见"、"见到",强调结果,后面要带宾语;watch 的词义是"观看"、"注视",多用来指看戏剧、电视节目等,是及物动词,如 watch TV、watch a play;remark 的词义是"注意到"、"察觉到",也强调结果。本句只有填 looked,意思才完整:他向窗外张望,看到外面在下雨。

9. (d)

(a)at once 和(b)immediately 都是"立刻"、"马上"的意思;(c)again是"再一次"的意思;只有(d)at the moment 同前句中 just then 意思相近,因此应选(d)。

10. (c)

(a)son、(b)grandson 和(d)niece 都不能表明他和他姑妈的关系,只有选(c)nephew 能准确地说明他们的关系。

11. (d)

(a)food(食品)、(b)dinner(正餐)、(c)lunch(午餐)这 3 个词都不能同 breakfast 划等号。只有(d)a meal(一顿饭)

可以等同于 breakfast，所以应选(d)。

12. (b)

本句中“Dear me”是感叹句，表示吃惊。只有选(b)surprised才能使这个句子符合逻辑，而其他 3 个词都没有“吃惊”的意思。

4 句子结构答案

I've *just arrived by train* .

Lesson 3
Please send me a card
请给我寄一张明信片

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Postcards always spoil the writer's holidays. He spent his holidays in Italy last summer. He thought about postcards every day. He did not send any cards to his friends. He bought thirty-seven cards on the last day. He stayed in his room all day. He did not write any cards. (50 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *went*(1.1); *visited* (1.2); *sat* (1.2); *taught* (1.2); *lent* (1.3); *read* (1.3); *did not understand* (1.4); *thought* (1.4); *passed* (1.5); *did not send* (1.5); *made*(1.5); *got up*(1.6); *bought* (1.7); *spent* (1.7); *did not write*(1.8)

C. ... Roy *died* last year ... *left* me ... *spent* a lot of money ... *bought* one or two ... never *went* to the cinema ... *stayed* at home ... *listened* to music ... often *lent* CDs ... they *kept* them ... *lost* many CDs ...

注解：

本课关键句型是"What happened?"，用于一般过去时，表

示过去发生的事情。一般过去时中动词要用过去式形式。大多数情况下有表示过去的时间状语：

Last summer, I went to Italy.

难点练习答案

1. He paid some money to the shopkeeper.
2. He handed the prize to me.
3. The waiter brought the man a bottle of beer.
4. He sold me all his books.
5. The shop assistant found me some curtain material.
6. He did a big favour for me.
7. She showed her new hat to her husband.
8. She promised the finder a reward.
9. He gave some advice to his son.
10. His uncle left some money to/for him.
11. He is teaching us English.
12. I bought you this bunch of flowers.
13. Bring me that book please.
14. He offered a cigarette to me.
15. Read the first paragraph to me.
16. I've ordered you some soup.
17. I owe a lot of money to him.
18. Pass your father the mustard.

注解：

英语中有些动词可以带两个宾语，分别称为直接宾语和间接宾语，如 He sent me a card。动词 sent 后带有表示动作所涉及的事物的直接宾语(a card)和表示动作为谁而做的间接宾语(me)。在大多数情况下，间接宾语置于直接宾语之前；如果间接宾语在后，必须加 to(表示动作对什么人而做)，或 for

(表示动作为什么人而做),因此这个例句也可以改成 He sent a card to me。又如 She bought me a tie 也可以改成 She bought a tie for me。

8 多项选择练习

1. (c)

   根据课文可以推断出作者不喜欢写明信片,但他很想收到别人寄来的明信片。所以应该选(c)。

2. (a)

   根据课文最后两句话可以判断出:作者作出的"一项重大决定"是给他的朋友们写明信片,可是还是一张也没有写成,所以应选(a)。

3. (c)

   (a)at 表示在小的地点和空间;(b)to 表示方向;(d)on 表示"在……上";只有(c)in 表示在大的空间和地方,如城市、国家等,所以应选(c)。

4. (a)

   只有选(a)Who taught,这句问话才与回答相配。

5. (d)

   只有选(d)in a friendly way(以友好的方式)才能说明前一句 He was a friendly waiter,也合乎语法和逻辑。而选其他 3 个(a) friend(朋友)、(b) as friends(作为朋友)、(c)like friends(像朋友一样)在语法上都讲不通。

6. (b)

   本句的时态是一般过去时,应该用动词的过去式形式:(a)reads 是第 3 人称单数现在时形式;(c)red 词义不符;(d)reading 是现在分词形式;(b)read 过去式和现在式形式相同,只是发音不同。所以只有选(b)是正确的。

7. (c)

(a)the hole 词义不对;(b)the all 和(d)all of 不合乎惯用法:英语中不用 the all day 和 all of day 这样的短语。只有选(c)all 才能使句中的词组 all day 同前一句中的 the whole day 意思相同。

8. (c)

句中 waiter 是"饭店服务员"的意思,他通常在饭店工作,而不在(a)public garden(公园)、(b)shop(商店)和(d)private house(私宅)工作,因此应该选(c)restaurant。

9. (b)

只有(b)borrowed 才与前一句中的 lent 相对应,而其他 3 个均不是。英语中的 borrow 和 lend 均有"借"的意思,但 borrow 是"向……借"的意思,而 lend 则是"借给"。

10. (a)

(b)end(最后,结束)有名词和动词词性,不能用在名词前修饰名词;(c)latest(最近的)不符合意思;(d)bottom(底部)是名词,不能修饰名词;只有选(a)final(最后的)才能使句子的意思成立。

11. (b)

只有(b)made up his mind(下决心)才同前句中的 made a big decision 意思相近。而其他 3 个选项(a)thought about it(考虑)、(c)changed his mind(改变主意)和(d)made a wish(立下心愿)都没有"下决心"的意思。

12. (b)

只有(b)didn't write even one(连一张也没有写)与前一句中的 didn't write a single card 意思相同,而(a)wrote only one、(c)wrote just one 和(d)wrote all the cards except one 都与其意思有别。

4 句子结构答案

I did not send any *cards to my friends*.

Lesson 4
An exciting trip
激动人心的旅行

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer has just received a letter from his brother, Tim. Tim is an engineer. He has been in Australia for six months. He has already visited many places. Now he is in Alice Springs. Tim has never been abroad before. He is enjoying his trip very much. (48 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. 1. I have *just* had breakfast.
2. He has been in prison *for six months*.
3. The police have not caught the thief *yet*.
4. You have (*already*) asked that question three times (*already*).
5. Have you *ever* been to Switzerland?
6. I have *never* been to Switzerland.
7. He is a wonderful runner. He has broken two records *so far*.
8. I haven't seen George *lately*.

注解：

本课的关键句型是“What has happened?”，用于现在完成时。现在完成时是由 have 的现在式 + 动词的过去分词构成的：

I have received a letter from my brother.

现在完成时的时间概念有时是不确定的，常用一些表示不确定的时间状语，如 just、already、ever、never、lately、yet 等。应该特别注意这些时间状语在句子中的位置。just、already、ever、never 这类时间状语要放在助动词 have 和动词的过去分词中间，而 lately、yet、so far 和 for six months 这类的时间状语要放在句尾：

I have *just* received a letter from my brother.

He has been there *for six months*.

I haven't seen him *lately*.

C. 1. He has just *left the house*.

2. He has *just had breakfast*.

3. *She has just written a letter*.

4. *My sister has just turned on the radio*.

5. *My mother has just made the bed*.

6. *She has just bought a new hat*.

注解：

注意现在进行时和现在完成时的区别：除了形式上的区别外，在意思上现在进行时强调动作在说话时还在进行，而现在完成时则强调过去发生的事对现在的影响，所关心的是现存的结果：

He is doing his homework now.

I have already done my homework.

D. 1. He hasn't *washed the dishes yet*.

2. She *hasn't made the beds yet*.

3. He *hasn't combed his hair yet*.

4. *She hasn't swept the carpet yet*.

5. *We haven't read 'Macbeth' yet*.

注解：

注意 still(还，仍然)可以用在进行时态中但不用于完成时态中，其位置要在助动词和现在分词之间。yet(还)只能用在完成时态的否定句或疑问句中而不用在肯定句中，其位置是在句尾：

He is *still* having breakfast.

He hasn't had breakfast *yet*.

Has he had breakfast *yet*?

E. 1. *Have you seen the new play at 'The Globe' yet?*

2. *Have you taken your holidays yet?*

3. *Have you read this book yet?*

4. *Have you done your homework yet?*

5. *Have you finished your work yet?*

注解：

现在完成时的疑问句形式是把助动词 have 放在句首，句尾用问号。如果句中有表示时间的词 already，应将其改成 yet，放在句尾：

I have *already* had lunch. Have you had lunch *yet*?

难点练习答案

1. received　2. received　3. took　4. taken　5. take

注解：

received 是"收到"、"接到"的意思，它常和介词 from 引导的短语连用表示"从……得到"：

I have just received a letter from my aunt.

我刚从我姑妈那里收到一封信。

take 所包含的意思很多，在这几个句子中是"拿走"的意思，和 receive 所表示的方向不同。它常和 with、to、off、out of 等介词连用，但有时也可以不带这些短语：

Who has taken my pen?

谁拿走了我的钢笔？

He has taken the letter to her.

他把那封信给她带去了。

3 多项选择练习

1．(d)

根据课文的内容 Tim is an engineer. He is working for a big firm...，只有(d)是正确的，而(a)、(b)、(c)均与课文内容不符。

2．(b)

根据课文的最后一句 My brother has never been abroad before...，应该选(b)，其他 3 个选择均与课文不符。

3．(a)

(b)in(在……里面) 不能和动词 go 连用；(c)at(在……地方)也不能同 go 连用；(d)into(进入……内)可以与 go 连用，但是到某个国家去不能用 go into；只有(a)to 同动词 go 连用(go to)才能表示到某个地方去，如国家、城市等，所以应该选(a)。

4．(b)

本句是问"他在那儿呆了多久"。因为说话时他还在那儿，所以应该用现在完成时态。(a)is he 是一般现在时；(c)has he 中没有过去分词 been，不符合语法；(d)was he 是一般过去时；只有(b)has he been 是现在完成时，因此应该选(b)。

5. (b)

(a)for 只有同表示一段时间的词连用时才能用在完成时态中。如 for six months, for one year 等;(c)from 常与介词 to 连用表示"从……到……",它很少用于现在完成时态;(b)by 可以表示时间"到……为止",常常用于过去完成时和将来完成时,但是它用在本句中意思不对;只有(b)since(从……以来)可以用在完成时态中,选(b)才能使句子的时态和意思正确并合乎逻辑。

6. (a)

本句的意思是"他刚刚买了一辆澳大利亚小汽车",强调买的时间很短,用 just 来表示。(b)a long time ago(很久以前)与原句意思不符;(c)last year(去年)也与原句意思不符;(d)six months ago(6 个月前)句子中也没有明确说明;只有(a)a short time ago(不久前,最近)同 just 的意思相近,所以应该选(a)。

7. (c)

本句需要用现在完成时,已经给出了助动词 has,只需要填上过去分词即可。(a)went 是过去式;(b)being 是现在分词;(d)was 是过去式;只有(c)been 是过去分词,所以正确答案是(c)。

8. (b)

本句需要选出 firm(公司)的同义词。只有(b)company(公司)和 firm 的词义相同。而其他 3 个(a)society(社会)、(c)factory(工厂)和(d)store(商店)均不是 firm 的同义词,所以正确答案是(b)。

9. (c)

本句需要选一个与前一句中的 different 相对应的词。(a)the only(惟一的)不是 different 的反义词;(b)a similar(相似的,类似的)也有"同样"的意思,但是它不是和

different 相对应的反义词；(d)alike(相像的，相同的)通常作表语；只有(c)the same(同一的，同样的)是 different 的反义词，所以应该选(c)。

10. (a)

只有(a)bigger than a village but smaller than a city 才能准确表达 town 的含义，而其他 3 个选择均不表示这个意思。

11. (c)

本句需选出同前一句中的 soon(不久)意义相近的词。(a)quickly(快速地)、(b)for a short time(短时间)、(d)in a hurry(匆忙地)这 3 个选择都与 soon 的意思不同。只有(c)shortly(不久)是 soon 的同义词。

12. (c)

本句需选出同前句中 fly(飞，乘飞机)的意思相应的短语。只有(c)by air 是固定短语，表示方式，go by air 是惯用法，意思是“乘飞机去”，而(a)with air、(b)in air、(c)through air 都不是固定短语，意思都讲不通，所以(c)是正确答案。

Lesson 5
No wrong numbers
无错号之虞

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Mr. Scott has opened his second garage in Pinhurst. His first garage is in Silbury. Silbury is five miles away. Mr. Scott cannot get a telephone for his new garage. He has bought twelve pigeons. They carry messages from one garage to the other in three minutes. (47 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. What happened: *carried* (1.4); *covered* (1.5)

What has happened: *has just bought* (1.1); *has just bought* (11.3-4); *has sent* (1.6); *has begun* (1.8)

C. 1. What *did* you *buy*...?

2. ...he *has* never *lent*...

3. *Have* you *burnt*...?

4. He *fought*...

5. They *have* already *left*.

6. When *did* you *lose*...?

7. *Did* you *listen*...?

8. We *have* just *won* . . .

注解：

本课的关键句型是“What happened?”与“What has happened?”表示一般过去时和现在完成时。这两个时态在第3课和第4课分别讲过。一般过去时用来表示过去某一特定时间发生的事情或动作，因此句中常有表示过去的时间状语，如 last year、yesterday、two years ago 等：

I bought this car *last year*.

去年我买了这辆车。

现在完成时表示发生在过去但对现在仍有影响的一个动作。在现在完成时的句子中常用像 just、already、for six months、up till now 等词和短语作时间状语：

He has been abroad *for six months*.

他在国外已6个月了。

难点练习答案

A. 1. On the way

2. in the way

3. By the way

4. in this/a way

5. in the way

注解：

注意带 way 的短语的不同含义：

in the way 挡住路；(喻)妨碍；以……方法

on the way 在途中

in this way 用这种办法/方法

by the way 顺便提一下

in a way 从某种意义来说

(请参见学生用书第30页难点中的例句)

B. 1. There is a *spare* wheel in the back of the car.

2. I always go on excursions in my *spare* time.

3. 'Have you any old clothes *to spare*?' he asked.

4. The guest slept in *our spare* room.

5. '*Spare* me!' begged the prisoner.

注解：

注意 spare 这个词作形容词和动词时的不同含义：

spare *adj*. 多余的，空闲的，备用的（与 extra 意思相近）

spare *v*. 赦免，饶恕，免于

（请参见学生用书第 30 页难点 b 中的例句）

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

根据课文第 3 行 but Mr. Scott cannot get a telephone for his new garage 判断，只有(c)He can't get one 是正确答案。

2. (a)

根据课文内容，养鸽子的目的是为了传递信息，只有(a)he uses them to send messages 与课文中的意思相同，而其他 3 个选择均无这种含义。

3. (d)

(d)his 既可以作所有格形容词又可以作所有格代词，其词义也是“他的”，相当于一个名词，本句只有选(d)句子 The garage is his 才合乎语法，而选(a)to him、(b)of him、(c)of his 在语法和意义上都讲不通。

4. (b)

(a)That's so(真的，是那样)；(c)because(因为，由于)常用来引导原因状语从句；(d)for(由于……的缘故，因为)用于提出证据或说明。本句只有选(b)That's why(这就是为什么)才可

说明理由，与前一句构成因果关系，而其他3个选择均不符合逻辑。

5. (c)

本句是一般过去时的疑问句，句中已给出助动词did，只需要填一个动词原形即可。只有(c)buy是动词原形，其他3个词均不是。

6. (d)

本句是针对距离的远近提问：(a)long ago...until不是说明距离的，long ago从不和until连用；(b)long...away是说明距离的，但应该是long...away from...；(c)away...till中away不应该和till连用，这不符合英语惯用法，从意义上讲不通；只有(d)far...from(离……远)是说明距离远近的，符合英语惯用法，因此应该选(d)。

7. (a)

本句需要选一个介词用在three minutes之前，表示所用的时间，只有(a)in合适，而(b)into、(c)with和(d)on都不能同three minutes构成表示时间的短语，所以应该选(a)。

8. (b)

本句需要选表示"另一个"意思的词修饰garage。(a)another(*adj*.)有"另一个"的含义，但它前面不能带其他的修饰词，如冠词、所有格形容词等；(c)else (*adj*. 其他，别的，另外)作形容词时应该放在它所修饰的词和代词之后；(d)different(*adj*.不同的)与题义不符；只有(b)other(另外的，其他的)可以带其他的修饰成分，如the、his等，也可以用在名词前面，所以答案是(b)。

9. (c)

本句需要选一个与前一句中的动词get意思相同的词。(a)take(拿去，携带)、(b)receive(收到)、(d)find(发现，找到)都不是get的同义词，只有(c)obtain有"获得"的意思，所以应

该选(c)。

10. (b)

本句需选与前一句中的动词短语 send requests for 的意思相同的词或短语。(a)asked(问,打听)、(c)begged(乞讨,乞求)、(d)pleased(喜欢,使……高兴)都不合题义,只有(b)asked for 有“请求”的意思,意思最接近,所以应该选(b)。

11. (a)

本句主要想说明紧急信函应如何发出。(b)slowly(慢慢地)与题义相反;(c)by hand(用手)不符合题义;(d)largely(许多,大量,主要地)更不符合题义;只有(a)quickly(快速地)才符合题义。

12. (d)

本句是要解释前一句中的 private(私人的,私有的)。(a)general(普遍的,全体的)、(b)spare(多余的,空闲的)、(c)secret(秘密的,私下的,神秘的)这 3 个选择都与 private 的意思不符,只有(d)his own(他自己的)词义最接近,因此答案是(d)。

4 句子结构答案

Pinhurst is only five miles from Silbury, *but* Mr. Scott cannot get a telephone for his new garage, *so* he has just bought twelve pigeons.

Lesson 6
Percy Buttons
珀西·巴顿斯

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer has just moved to a house in Bridge Street. A beggar knocked at her door yesterday. He sang songs. The writer gave him a meal and a glass of beer in return for this. The beggar's name is Percy Buttons. He calls at every house in the street once a month. (53 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. Some meat, a desk, some tobacco, a tin of beans, a comb, a city, a/some cloth, some oil, a bottle of beer, a day, a word, a student, some sugar, some rain, an orange, a/some rubber

D. (sample answers)

1. I found an old coin in the garden.
2. I put some sugar in my tea.
3. I cut some wood for a/the fire.
4. I bought a newspaper yesterday.
5. I made some coffee.

6. I like the curtains in this room.

注解：

注意 a、the 和 some 的用法：

1. a 是不定冠词，表示"一个"。要用在单数可数名词之前。如 a pen，a book，a glass of milk。
2. the 是定冠词，用在可数或不可数、单数或复数的名词前，表示特指的或前面提到过的事物或人：

   A man is walking towards me. *The* man is carrying a parcel.
3. some 是数量词，表示不确定的数量"一些"，它可以修饰可数或不可数名词。如 some books，some apples，some milk，some soap。

难点练习答案

A. 1. out　2. over　3. off　4. at

B. 1. *knocked him out*

2. *knock off*

3. *knocked 20% off* the price

注解：

有些动词后面加上介词或副词以后就会改变词义：

knock sb. out 把某人打昏

knock ... over 把……撞倒

knock off 下班

knock ... off... 把……从……碰掉

knock at 敲

knock 20% off the price 让利 20%（即：给 20% 的优惠）

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第 2～3 行 In return for this, the beggar stood on his head..., 只有(d)he wanted to 'pay' for his meal in this way, 才能准确表达他这样做的原因，而其他 3 个选择都不能说明这种原因。

2. (a)

根据课文的第 1 句 I have just moved to a house in Bridge Street, 只有(a)She was new to the neighbourhood 与课文的意思最接近，其他 3 个选择都和课文的意思不符。

3. (c)

(a)at house、(b)to the house 和(d)in the home 都不符合英语惯用法，只有 at home(在家)是习惯用法，所以正确答案是(c)。

4. (d)

只有选(d)a meal to him 这个句子才符合语法，而(a)to him a meal、(b)a meal for him 和(c)him to a meal 都有语法错误。按习惯用法，应该是 give sb. sth. 或 give sth. to sb.。

5. (d)

(a)told 后面少间接宾语，句子意思不完整；(b)said me 语法不正确；(c)told to me 中间接宾语应紧跟在动词后面，不需要加 to；只有选(d)said 才符合语法，它后面可以跟宾语从句，习惯用法为 tell sb. sth. 或 tell sth. to sb.。

6. (a)

只有选(a)They all 才能使这个句子语法正确，意思完整，其他选择都在语法上讲不通。如 Each 作主语，后边动词应为单数第 3 人称，Every 为形容词不能作主语，按习惯

用法 all of them 才可作主语。

7. (d)

这一问句是针对打电话"间隔的时间"或"频率"提问，因此用(a)How seldom、(b)How long 和(c)How soon 提问时都不能用 Once a month(每月一次)来回答，只有用(d)How often 提问才能用 Once a month 来回答。

8. (a)

只有(a)askes for money but doesn't work(只要钱但不工作)才能准确表达 beggar(乞丐)这个词的含义，其他 3 个选择都不能表达这个意思，因此(a)是正确答案。

9. (b)

a meal(一顿饭)是泛指，可以是早餐、午餐或晚餐。因此应该选(b)at any time(在任何时候)，而其他 3 个选择(a)only in the morning、(b)only at midday 和(d)only in the evening 意思都不够准确。

10. (a)

本句需选出与前一句中的 piece(小块，片)意思相近的词，(b)bar(长块)、(c)block(大块)、(d)packet(小包)这 3 个词都不能准确表达 piece 的含义。只有(a)bit(小片，少许)同 piece 的意思最接近，所以正确答案是(a)。

11. (d)

本句要选出和前一句中的短语 call at(访问某家或某地)的意思相同的词。(a)shouts at(呼喊)、(c)calls(召唤，打电话)与(c)cries out at(对……大喊)意思有别；只有(d)visits(访问，拜访)和 calls at 是同义词。

12. (a)

本句只有选(a)street 才符合英语惯用法；(b)way 不符合题义；(c)road 和(d)route 都不符合惯用法，在意思上都讲不通。

4 句子结构答案

He calls at every house in the street once a month and always asks for a meal and a glass of beer.

Lesson 7
Too late
为时太晚

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Detectives were waiting at the airport all morning. They were expecting a valuable parcel of diamonds from South Africa. Two men took the parcel into the Customs House after the arrival of the plane. Two detectives opened it. The parcel was full of stones and sand. (46 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. detectives *were waiting* (1. 1); They *were expecting* (1.2); detectives *were waiting* (1. 5); others *were waiting* (1.6); two detectives *were keeping guard* (11.7-8)

B. 1. When the plane arrived, some of the detectives were waiting inside the main building while others were waiting on the airfield.

2. When two of the detectives opened the parcel, two others were keeping guard at the door.

C. (sample answers)

1. I was getting into my bath when you telephoned me.
2. I was reading *Hamlet* when you saw me in the library this morning.
3. I was saying that you must see the new film when you interrupted me.

D. 1. was leaving...arrived

2. worked/was working...was sitting/sat
3. was walking...met
4. was reading...heard
5. was preparing...set/was setting
6. dropped...spoke

注解：

本课的关键句型是“What were you doing when I telephoned?”表示过去进行时。过去进行时由 be 的过去式 + 现在分词构成。过去进行时表示过去某个时刻或某段时间里正在发生的情况或动作，如课文中的句子：

...detectives were waiting at the airport all morning.

When the plane arrived, some of the detectives were waiting inside the main building...

While two detectives were keeping guard at the door, two others opened the parcel.

（请参见学生用书第 37 页关键句型）

难点练习答案

1. He gave all his books *away*.
2. She woke the children *up* early this morning.
4. They cut the king's head *off*.
5. Put your hat and coat *on*.

7. Help me to lift this table *up*.

8. Take your shoes *off* and put your slippers *on*.

11. They have pulled the old building *down*.

12. Make your mind *up*.

14. She threw all those old newspapers *away*.

注解：

有些动词的后面加上介词或副词就构成了短语动词。在句子中，有些短语动词中的副词或介词可以同它们后面的宾语调换位置，如 She put on her hat 可以变成 She put her hat on。但是有些短语动词是固定搭配，其中介词的位置是固定的，如 look at、look for、look after、wait for、ask for 等等。如 He is looking for his umbrella 不能变成 He is looking his umbrella for。

（请参见学生用书第 38 页难点）

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

   根据课文第 3～4 行 someone had told the police that thieves would try to steal the diamond 和第 8～9 行 While two detectives were keeping guard at the door...，可以判断出(b)to prevent a robbery 是正确答案，其他 3 个选择均不够准确。

2. (c)

   根据课文最后一句话 To their surprise, the precious parcel was full of stones and sand! 可以推测(c)didn't prevent the robbery 是正确答案。其他 3 个选择均不符合课文内容。

3. (c)

从回答中可以看出，此问句是对地点提问的，(a)Why、(b)When与(d)What 都不能针对地点提问，只有(c)Where是问地点的，可以用 At the airport 回答。所以(c)为正确答案。

4. (d)

这一句是针对动词宾语提问的，回答是用名词短语 A valuble parcel of diamonds。(a)Why、(b)When 与(c)Where这几个疑问词都不能针对动词宾语(名词)提问，只有(d)What 可以对名词提问。

5. (a)

前面的句子是过去完成时(had told)，表示在过去某一动作或情况发生之前完成的事情，“某人告诉警察……”这件事一定是在“飞机到达之前”发生的。因此正确答案应该是(a)before(在……之前)。

6. (c)

(a)in 后面需有一个表示地点的名词，意思才完整；(b)into在意思上讲不通；(d)for 后面需要有一个名词作宾语，意思才完整；只有(c)inside(在里面)意思最完整，而且与前半句的动作 went into the building 相符，因此应该选(c)。

7. (d)

4 个选择中只有(d)took it off 最合乎语法和题义，因此应该选(d)。

8. (a)

(b) waiting 是不及物动词，后面不能直接跟名词；(c)expecting for 中 expect 是及物动词，后面不能加 for；(d)expecting to 中 expect 后面不能加 to；只有(a)expecting最合乎语法。

9. (c)

本句需要选一个与前句中的 valuable(宝贵的,珍贵的)的意思相同的形容词作表语。(a)worth 可以作名词和形容词,意思是“价值”、“值得……的”,不是 valuable 的同义词;(b)worthy 是形容词,意思是“有价值的”、“值得的”,常与 of 或不定式连用,不能单独作表语,也不是 valuable 的同义词;(d)value 是名词,不符合词性;只有(c)precious 是形容词,意思是“宝贵的”、“珍贵的”,是 valuable 的同义词,可以作表语,因此正确答案是(c)。

10. (b)

(c) take from 和(d) take to 均不符合语法。(a) rob 和(b)steal都有“窃取”的意思,但 steal 强调“偷偷地或悄悄地趁人不注意时窃取”,而 rob 则强调“通过武力明目张胆地盗窃或抢劫”。steal 这一动作的执行者应该是 thief(小偷),而 rob 这一动作的执行者却是 robber(强盗)。因为本句的主语是 The thieves,所以(b)steal 是正确答案。

11. (a)

本句是要解释前一句中的 the main building(主楼),(b)smallest(最小的)、(c)first(第一)、(d)greatest(最伟大的)这 3 个选择均不符合词义,只有(a)most important(最重要的)与 the main 的意思最接近,因此应该选(a)。

12. (b)

本句如果选(a)full with、(c)full by 和(d)full in 都有语法错误,full 只能同 of 连用,意思是“充满……的”,因此只有选(b)full of 这个句子才正确。

4 句子结构答案

Two men took the parcel off the plane and carried it into the Customs House.

Lesson 8
The best and the worst
最好的和最差的

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Joe Sanders has the best garden in town. He wins 'The Nicest Garden Competition' each year. Bill Frith also has a fine garden. Joe's is better. The writer's garden is terrible. He always wins a prize for the worst garden in the town.

(43 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. 1. Mary's handwriting is *worse than* Jane's.
   2. Caroline's handwriting is *worse than* Mary's and Jane's.
   3. Caroline's dress is/was *more expensive than* Jane's.
   4. Mary's dress is/was *more expensive than* Jane's and Caroline's.

B. ...has *the most beautiful* garden in our town... '*The Nicest* Garden Competition'... garden is *larger than* Joe's... works *harder than* Joe and grows *more* flowers and vegetables... garden is *more interesting*... for *the*

worst garden in the town!

注解：

本课的关键句型是形容词的比较级和最高级。

1. 大多数形容词(单音节和多数双音节的)比较级和最高级的构成是在其原级后面加-er 和-est，如 clean，cleaner，cleanest。
2. 单音节形容词只有一个元音字母并以一个辅音字母结尾的，其比较级和最高级的构成是将这个辅音字母双写，再加-er 和-est。如 big，bigger，biggest。
3. 以-e 结尾的单音节形容词，只需在词尾加-r 和-st。如 nice，nicer，nicest。
4. 以辅音字母加-y 结尾的形容词，要把 y 改成 i 再加-er 和-est。如 tidy，tidier，tidiest。
5. 多音节的形容词的比较级和最高级的构成是在原级前加 more 和 most，如 expensive，more expensive，most expensive。
6. 还有一些不规则的比较级和最高级形式：

good	better	best
bad	worse	worst
far	father	farthest
	further	furthest
old	older	oldest
	elder	eldest
much / many	more	most
little	less	least

7. 比较级要与 than 连用，表示一事物与另一事物的比较：

   Jane is taller than Mary.

8. 形容词最高级前要加定冠词 the：

Joe Sanders has the most beautiful garden in our town.

D. 1. in　2. of　3. of　4. in

注解:

表示地点、空间的状语,一般要用 in 引导的介词短语:

Which is the longest river *in* the world?

表示许多事物或人中间的一个或一部分,要用 of 引导的介词短语:

This is the finest picture *of* them all.

难点练习答案

A. 1. believes　2. was　3. tries

注解:

用 every 构成的不定代词(everyone、everybody 与 everything)是单数形式,因此在句子中作主语时它们后面的动词要用单数形式。

B. Sentences 2,3 and 5

注解:

enter *v*. 进入

enter for 把……(作为比赛等的参加者)编入名单:

Everybody enters for the competition.

每个人都参加比赛。

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文的头一句和最后一句,只有(d)是正确答案。其他 3 个选择均与课文内容不符。

2. (b)

根据课文第6～7行 I like gardens too, but I do not like hard work 可以推测(b)是正确答案,其他3个选择均与事实不符。

3. (b)

(a)larger garden 前面没有冠词 a,不合乎语法;(c)large garden 前面也缺少冠词 a;(d)largest garden 中最高级前面应该用定冠词 the,而且在两者相比时也不能使用最高级。因此只有(b)a large garden 最合乎语法。

4. (a)

本句需要用比较级的形式。(b)more hard 中 hard 是单音节词,其比较级形式是在词尾加-er;(c)more hardly 中 hardly(几乎不……)词义不对;(d)hardier 中原形 hardy 表示"强壮的",与课文不符;只有(a)harder 最符合比较级的形式。

5. (c)

(a)by、(b)for 和(d)from 都不能同比较级连用;只有(c)than才能同比较级连用。

6. (c)

应该选同前一句 The writer is fond of garden 意思相近的句子。(a)They like him 意思同前一句相反;(b)They like to him 有语法错误,也同前一句意思不符;(d)He likes 有语法错误,缺少宾语;只有(c)He likes them 意思最接近,没有语法错误。

7. (b)

(a)in、(c)for、(d)by 都不符合语法,在意思上也讲不通。只有(b)of 才能使句子的意思完整,也合乎语法。

8. (b)

(a)wins(获胜,获奖)作及物动词时,它后面的宾语一般

不是人，而应是 win the game/race 等；(c)gains(获利，赚得)后面的宾语也不能是人；(d)earns(挣得，获得)后面的直接宾语也不应该是人；只有(b)beats 有"(在竞赛中)打败/战胜/取胜"的意思，而且 beat 后面的宾语可以是人，所以应该选(b)。

9. (a)

只有选(a)grow 才能使这个句子同前面的句子意思相同。grow 可以作及物动词也可以作不及物动词。grow 作及物动词时，意思是"种植"、"栽培"，如前面的句子 Joe grows more flowers(乔种植更多的花)。grow 作不及物动词时，意思是"生长"、"产生"。这个句子若选 grow，More flowers grow in his garden(他的花园里生长更多的花)同前面的句子意思最接近。而(b)grow tall、(c)grow up 和(d)grow big 意思都不够准确。

10. (d)

只有选(d)interested 这个句子在意思上才讲得通。be interested in... 是固定短语(对……感兴趣)，主语一般是人。(a)interesting(有趣的)作表语时主语应该是物，如前一个句子 Joe's garden is interesting；(b)interest(*n*. 兴趣，利益)不能作表语；(c)interestingly(有趣地)也不能作表语。

11. (b)

(a)a hard work 不合乎语法，因为 work 作"工作"讲时是不可数名词，不能在它前面加不定冠词 a；(c)hard job 也不符合语法，因为 job 是可数名词，前面应该加不定冠词 a；(d)hardly a job 在意思上讲不通，不符合题义；只有(b)a hard job(一项艰苦的工作)最合乎语法和题义。

12. (b)

(a)very(非常)不符合题义，它也不能放到句尾。(c)and

放在句尾没有任何意义。(b)also 和(d)either 都有“也”的意思,但 either 只能用于否定句的句尾,also 可以用于肯定句中,它可以放在谓语动词前也可以放在句尾。因此,应该选(b)。

4 句子结构答案

Bill Frith's *garden is larger than Joe's*.

Lesson 9
A cold welcome
冷遇

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

We went to the Town Hall on New Year's Eve. There were a lot of people there. The Town Hall clock would strike twelve in twenty minutes' time. It stopped at five to twelve. It refused to welcome the New Year. Then the crowd began to laugh and sing. (49 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. 1. We went to the Town Hall on Wednesday evening/New Year's Eve.

2. The clock would strike twelve in twenty minutes' time.

3. The clock stopped at five to twelve.

B. 1. in　2. On　3. during/in　4. in　5. at

6. on...in　7. in　8. at...in　9. until

C. (sample answers)

1. The match will begin at 3 o'clock.

2. They bought their house in 1980.

3. The shop is closed from one till two.

4. The children went to school in the morning.

5. He'll finish school in two years' time.

6. Let's go for a walk in the evening.

7. He went to church on Sunday.

注解：

1. 注意：表示时间的短语可由以下介词引导：

   at：用在钟点前，如 at 9 o'clock、at half past one。

   还可以用在 night、midnight、noon 前面。

2. in：用在年和月份前面，如 in 1945、in January。

   用在季节前面，如 in spring、in winter。

   用在上午、下午、傍晚前，如 in the evening。

   用在表示一段时间的词组前，如 in half an hour（半小时以后）、in two weeks（两周以后）。

3. on：用在具体日期前，如 on April 24th。

   用在星期前，如 on Monday，on Sunday。

4. 其他引导时间短语的介词如：from... till（从……到……）、during（在……期间）、until（直到……）。

（请参见学生用书第 45 页关键句型）

难点练习答案

A. 1. No, I haven't any/have no money.

2. No, I didn't go anywhere / went nowhere in the holidays.

3. No, I didn't buy anything / bought nothing this morning.

4. No, there wasn't anybody/was nobody present when the accident happened.

B. He has no hobbies. He goes nowhere. He sees nobody. He is interested in nothing—except food!

（请参见学生用书难点第 46 页）

3 多项选择练习

1．(b)

根据课文内容第 1～2 行 It was the last day of the year... 和第 8 行 The big clock refused to welcome the New Year，(b)最符合课文内容。其他 3 个选择都不正确。

2．(b)

根据课文第 4 行 ... at five to twelve，the clock stopped，钟是在午夜前停的，但人们是在午夜后才意识到这一点(It's two minutes past twelve! 第 6～7 行)，所以(b)正确。

3．(d)

the evening 前需要有介词 in 才能构成表示时间的短语。因此应该选(d)，其他 3 个选择都不符合语法。

4．(a)

people 是集体名词，虽然形式是单数，但意思是复数的(人民或人们)，作主语时谓语动词要用复数形式。(b)was、(c)is 和(d)be 都不能用在 people 后面作谓语动词，只有(a)were 可以，因此应该选(a)。

5．(a)

这个问句的回答是一个表示时间的短语，因此需要一个针对时间提问的疑问词。只有(a)When 是针对时间提问的，而其他 3 个选择都不是问时间的。

6．(b)

在表示钟点的时间短语前要用介词 at，所以只有(b)at 是正确答案。

7. (b)

从回答中可以看出，这个疑问句需要一个能够针对nothing提问的词，而且要能够在疑问句中充当主语。(a)nothing可以作主语，但一般不用在疑问句中；(c)any是量词，不能作主语；(d)a thing可以作主语，用在这个问句中意思虽然通顺，但不符合英语的习惯用法；(b)anything是不定代词，可以作主语，而且只能在疑问句中作主语，所以(b)是最正确的答案。

8. (d)

(a)hit、(b)beat、(c)knock和(d)strike这几个动词都有"敲"、"打"、"击"的意思，但是只有strike有"(钟表)敲鸣"、"报时"的含义，因此最佳选择应该是(d)。

9. (b)

表示钟点的短语"几点过几分"中只能用介词past。所以只有(b)past是正确答案。

10. (b)

只有(b)an hour是正确答案，其他选项都不符合事实。

11. (d)

根据生活常识应该选(d)watch(手表)，这个句子的意思是"大多数人带手表"，这是事实。而选(a)an alarm clock(闹钟)或(c)a clock(钟表)都与事实不符，人们不可能总随身带着闹钟或钟。而选(b)an alarm(报警器)更不符合事实。

12. (c)

只有选(c)didn't want to(不想)才能使这个句子的意思同前面的句子It refused to...的含义接近。(b)wanted to(想要)和(d)wished to(希望)都与前面句子意思相反。(d)denied it(否认，拒绝接受)也同前一句意思不够接近。

4 句子结构答案

On *Wednesday evening*, *we went to the Town Hall*.

Lesson 10
Not for jazz
不适于演奏爵士乐

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

We own an old clavichord. It was made in 1681. My grandfather bought the instrument many years ago. A visitor damaged it recently. She tried to play jazz on it! She broke two of the strings. A friend of my father's is repairing it now.

(45 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. 1. Our old musical instrument is called a clavichord.
2. It was made in Germany.
3. It is kept in the living room.
4. It was bought many years ago.
5. It was damaged recently.
6. Two of the strings were broken.
7. My father was shocked.
8. We aren't allowed to touch it.
9. The clavichord is being repaired.

注解：

主动语态和被动语态都是指动词的形式而言。

在主动句中，动词的主语是执行动作的人或物：

John cooked the food last night.

约翰昨天晚上做了饭。

在被动句中，动作是对主语执行的：

The food was cooked last night.

饭是昨天晚上做的。

被动语态的形式是由相应的 be 动词加动词的过去分词构成。

难点练习答案

A. 1. of 2. in 3. from

注解：

be made of...表示用某种材料制成。

be made in...表示产地。

be made from...表示用数种材料制成。

B. 1. He borrowed *a record of mine*.

2. She showed me *a picture of John's*.

3. It was *an idea of hers*.

4. *A letter of yours* was found on my desk.

5. *Some friends of theirs* came to see me.

注解：

双重所有格是表示某人所拥有的一类东西中的一个或一部分，如 He is one of my friends 可以改成双重所有格形式 He is a friend of mine (mine = my friends)。

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

根据课文第 3 行 It has belonged to our family for a long time. 只有(a)has been in the family for a long time 是正确的,其他 3 个选择均不符合课文内容。

2. (d)

根据课文中第 5~6 行 She struck the keys too hard and two of the strings were broken, 只有(d)She hit the keys too hard 最符合课文内容。(a)She played jazz on it 是事实,但是不能具体说明钢琴损坏的原因;(b)She played it 更不能说明钢琴损坏的原因;(c)She cut the strings 与事实不符。

3. (d)

本句需要选同前面句子中的 is kept 相应的主动语态形式。(a)kept 是过去式、(b)have kept 是现在完成时形式、(c)are keeping 是现在进行时形式。这 3 个选择都在时态上与 is kept 不符。只有(d)keep 是一般现在时形式,与 is kept 的时态一致,因此正确答案是(d)。

4. (c)

本句需要选名词的所有格形式。(a)families 是复数形式,而不是所有格形式;(b)families' 是所有格形式,但不应该是复数;(d)familys' 写法错误;只有(c)family's 是所有格形式,最符合标准。

5. (b)

(a)since、(c)from 和(d)by 都不能用来引导表示一段时间的短语,都不能用在 many years 前。只有(b)for 可以引导表示一段时间的短语。因此(b)是惟一的答案。

6．(c)

这个问句的回答是 Grandfather did，是一般过去时，需要为疑问句选一个过去式的动词。(a) buy 是现在式；(b) was bought 是过去式，但语态不对；(d) did buy：用 Who 提问时不应该用助动词 did；只有(c) bought 是过去式，最符合语法。

7．(a)

本句需要选一个能够进一步说明前面句子中的 are not allowed to 的词。(b) mustn't to 不合乎语法，must 后面不能有带 to 的动词不定式。(c) haven't to 不合乎语法，在意思上讲不通。(d) don't have to 虽然合乎语法，但意思不合乎题义。have to 是“必须”、“不得不”的意思，其否定形式是“不必”的意思。只有(a) mustn't(不应该)最合乎语法，其意思也最符合题义。

8．(c)

(a) told、(b) said 和(d) spoken 都有“说”、“讲”的意思，都不符合题义，只有(c) called(称作，叫作)最合乎题义。

9．(a)

只有选(a)这个句子的意思才接近前一句的含义。而(b) hold(握着)、(c) lift(提起)和(d) carry(拿着)都不合题义，因此(a) have 是正确答案。

10．(c)

要找出与前面句子中的 damaged(损伤，损坏)意思相近的词。(a) hurt(伤害，使伤心)一般指精神上的、情感上的或指对身体某一部位的伤害，不是 damage 的同义词；(b) pained(使疼痛，使痛苦)不是 damage 的同义词；(d) destroyed(毁坏，摧毁建筑物等)不是 damage 的同义词；只有(c) broke(打碎，损坏)同 damage 的含义最接近。

11．(c)

该句需要找出与前面句子中的 recently(最近)意义相同的词。(a)late(迟，晚)、(b)lastly(最后)和(d)finally(最终)都不是 recently 的同义词，只有(c)lately(最近)是它的同义词。

12．(a)

(b)making(制造)、(c)doing(做)，(d)building(建造)这 3 个词都不太合乎题义。只有(a)mending(修理)最符合题义。因为 clavichord 是"古钢琴"的意思，正在制造(making)这架古钢琴不太合乎逻辑。更不应该说建造(building)这架古钢琴，而做(doing)这架古钢琴在意思上讲不通，所以只能是正在修理(mending)这架古钢琴。

4 句子结构答案

The instrument *was bought by my grandfather many years ago*.

Lesson 11
One good turn deserves another
礼尚往来

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

I was having dinner at a restaurant. I saw Tony Steele after a while. He always borrows money from his friends. Tony sat at my table. I asked him to lend me twenty pounds. He gave me the money at once. He wanted me to pay for his dinner. (49 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. a. he *is* now *working*(1.2)

b. he *gets*(1.3); he always *borrows*(1.3); never *pays* it *back*(1.4)

c. *came in*... *worked*(11.1-2); Tony *saw*(1.4); *came* and *sat*(1.4); I *asked* him(1.6); he *gave* me(1.7); Tony *said*(1.8)

d. He *has* never *borrowed*(1.5); I *have* never *borrowed* (1.7)

e. I *was having*(1.1); he *was eating*(1.6)

C. 1. gets...got

2. have not had

3. was writing... talked/were talking

4. am typing

5. passed/were passing

注解：

复习第 2～10 课的关键句型。

一般现在时请参见第 2 课。

一般过去时请参见第 3 课。

现在进行时和过去进行时请参见第 7 课。

D. The Taj Mahal *was built*... after he *became/had become* ruler, his wife... *died*. The Taj Mahal *was built* in her honour. Experts *were called* in... The Taj Mahal, which *was begun* in 1632 and (*was*) *completed* in 1654, *cost* a fortune... it *has been visited* by...

注解：

主动语态与被动语态请参见第 10 课关键句型。

难点练习答案

a.

A. 1. The officer ordered *the men to fire at the enemy*.

2. He wants *his wife to wear this dress*.

3. She wants *us to explain it*.

4. I cannot allow *him to enter the room*.

B. (sample sentences)

1. He asked *me to help him*.

2. We preferred *her to stay at home*.

3. He taught *me to speak English*.

4. My mother wished *me to collect the laundry*.

5. Do you want *her to visit you*?

注解：

有些动词的后面用动词不定式作宾语时，往往要在动词后面先加上一个名词或代词意思才完整：

I asked *him* to lend me twenty pounds.

我向他借 20 英镑。

She taught *her son* to read.

她教儿子读书。

b.

1. salary　2. lent...salary/wages　3. borrowed
4. wages　5. wages

注解：

容易混淆的词：

1. salary 和 wages

salary 薪水，工资(指按月领取的)

sages 工资，常用复数(指按小时，按日计工的，每周领取的)

2. borrow 和 lend

borrow 借来，借入(同介词 from 连用)

borrow sth. from sb. 向某人借某物

lend 借给，借出(与介词 to 连用)

lend sth. to sb. 把某物借给某人

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第 6～7 行 I asked him to lend me twenty pounds...he gave me the money immediately，应该选(b)，而其他 3 个选择均不符合课文内容。

2. (b)

根据课文第 8~9 行 ‘I have never borrowed any money from you, . . . so now you can pay for my dinner!’ 只有 (b) the writer hasn't ever lent him any money before 是正确答案，而其他 3 个选择都与课文不符。

3. (b)

(a) was going 时态不对，go into 不表示延续时间很长的一个动作，不应该是进行时；(c) has gone 时态不正确，表示过去发生的动作，不应该用现在完成时；(d) did go 形式不对，只有在疑问句或表示强调的句子中，才能用这种形式；只有 (b) went 最符合该句的时态要求。

4. (a)

(b) a year ago（一年前）、(c) since last year（自去年以来）与 (d) for a year（有一年的时间）这 3 个表示时间的短语都不能用在现在进行时中。只有 (a) at the moment 可以同现在进行时连用，因此惟一的正确答案是 (a)。

5. (b)

这个句子是现在完成时，需要一个相应的时间短语。(a) Last week 不能作现在完成时的时间状语；(c) Since 后面缺少表示时间的名词；(d) A week ago 也不能作现在完成时的时间状语；只有 (b) Up till now（到目前为止）能同现在完成时连用，所以应该选 (b)。

6. (c)

问“多少钱”需要用表示不可数的疑问词提问。(a) How many（多少）是对可数的事物或人提问的；(b) How 不能对名词（钱）提问，只能问方式或状态；(d) How few 也不能对钱提问，只能修饰可数名词；只有 (c) How much（多少）是针对不可数的事物提问的，问“多少钱”时只能用 How much 提问，所以应该选 (c)。

7. (c)

(a)want to 不合乎题义；(b)want 语法不对，也不符合题义；(d)you want to 语序错误；只有(c)want you to 最合乎语法和题义。

8. (a)

只有选(a)good 才能使这个句子同前面的句子 He gets a good salary 的意义相同，而(b)well、(c)fine、(d)beautiful 都与前面句子的意思不符。

9. (c)

这个句子中的 salary 是指按月领取的工资。(a)day、(b)year和(d)week 都不符合题义。只有(c)month 合乎 salary 的要求。

10. (c)

本句需要选出与前面句子中的 pay back(偿还借款)意思相同的动词短语。(a)pay it again(再次付款)词义不符；(b)pay it(付钱，付清)意思不明确；(d)pay it once more 同(a)意思相同；只有(c)repay it 有"偿还欠款或债务"的意思，同 pay back 是同义词组，因此应该选(c)。

11. (b)

(a)other 前面应该有定冠词，不符合题义；(c)extra 意思正确，但是前面缺少不定冠词；(d)a different(不同的)不符合题义；只有(b)another(另一个，再一个)最符合句子的含义。

12. (d)

要找出同前面句子中 immediately(立即，立刻)的意思相同的词。(a)soon(不久)不是 immediately 的同义词；(b)in a hurry(匆忙)也不是 immediately 的同义词；(c)once more(再一次)意思相差更远；只有(d)at once(马上，立刻)是 immediately 的同义词。

4 句子结构答案

To *my surprise, he gave me the money immediately.*

Lesson 12
Goodbye and good luck
再见，一路顺风

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

We shall meet our neighbour, Captain Charles Alison, at Portsmouth Harbour early tomorrow morning. He will be in his small boat, *Topsail*. He will leave at eight o'clock. We shall say goodbye to him. He will take part in an important race across the Atlantic. (45 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *will sail*(1.1); *shall meet*(1.2); *will be*(1.3); *will set out*(11.4-5); *shall have*(1.5); *shall see*(1.5); *shall say*(1.6); *will be*(1.6); *will take part*(1.7)

C. I *shall go* to the theatre... Reg and I *shall see* the first performance...the producer *will give* a short speech. He *will speak* to...The play *will be* very...people *will enjoy* it very much.

注解：

本课关键句型是"I'll see you tomorrow."

一般将来时表示将来要发生的事情。一般将来时是由助

动词 shall 或 will 加上原形动词构成，shall 常用在第一人称的代词 I 或 we 的后面；而 will 则可以用于所有人称，在书写和口语中常可缩略为-'ll。如课文中的句子：

We'll meet him at the harbour early in the morning.

He will be away for two months.

（请参见学生用书第 57 页关键句型）

难点练习答案

1. He *is not back yet*. He *will be back* in ten minutes.
2. A new play is *on* at the Globe Theatre.
3. When the concert *was over*, we went home.
4. They will *set out/off* very early tomorrow morning. (Here *be off* is also possible.)
5. You can't take the exam yet. You are not *up to it*.
6. He will be *away* from home for two months.
7. She swam across the English Channel and *set up* a new world record.

注解：

注意动词 be 和 set 与不同的副词连用，意思各不相同：

be back 回来

be on 上映，上演

be over 结束，过去

set out 动身，出发

set off 出发，启程

be not up to 不能胜任，不能做

be away 离开

set up 创造（纪录等）

3 多项选择练习

1.(c)

根据课文第3～4行 *Topsail* is a famous little boat. It has sailed across the Atlantic many times,只有(c)能够说明为什么 *Topsail* is famous,而其他3个选择都不符合逻辑。

2.(c)

根据课文最后一句 He will take part in an important race across the Atlantic,只有(c)will be in the race across the Atlantic同这句话意思相同,而其他3个选择课文中都没有提到。

3.(a)

本句是个关系从句,需要一个相应的关系代词引导。(b)whose his不合乎语法,这两个词不能用在一起;(c)his不是关系代词;(d)of whom不合乎题义;只有(a)whose是关系代词,符合题义,所以应该选(a)。

4.(d)

本句中的Portsmouth是一个地名(港口),在某个地方一般要用介词in或at。at是指在小的地点或空间,因此只能选(d)at。其他3个选择(a)to、(b)from、(c)on均不能表示在某个地点。

5.(d)

只有(d)the name of which符合语法,其他3个选择均有语法错误。

6.(a)

要选出与前面句子中的plenty of(足够的)意思相同的词。(b)almost enough(几乎是足够的)意思不够准确;(c)less than enough(不充足的)意思相反;(d)hardly enough(几乎不够)意思相反;只有(a)enough(足够)是

plenty of 的同义词。

7. (d)

(a)say him goodbye 不符合语法;(b)tell him goodbye 和(c)tell goodbye to him 都不符合习惯用法,意思也讲不通;只有(d)say goodbye to him 最符合语法。

8. (a)

只有(a)near 才符合题义。(b)a long way from 和(c)in a different town from 都与题义相反。(d)next door(隔壁)后面缺少介词 to,不合乎语法。

9. (c)

只有(c)often(经常)最接近前面句子中的 many times 的含义,而其他 3 个选择(a)sometimes(有时)、(b)always(总是)和(d)usually(通常)在意思上都不够接近 many times。

10. (d)

前面的句子中的词组 set out 是"出发"、"启程"的意思,只有(d)the journey begins(旅程开始)最接近 set out 的含义,而其他 3 个选择(a)the trip ends、(b)the journey ends 和(c)voyage stops 都有"旅行结束"的意思,正好和题义相反。

11. (a)

只有选(a)be 才最符合前面句子 He will take part in a race 的含义,而其他 3 个选择(b)take place、(c)act、(d)do 意思都不够准确。

12. (a)

只有(a)an ocean(大洋)与事实相符,而(b)a sea(海)、(c)a river(河)、(d)lake(湖)都不是事实。

4 句子结构答案

We'll meet him at the harbour early in the morning.

Lesson 13
The Greenwood Boys
绿林少年

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The Greenwood Boys are pop singers. They will be coming here tomorrow. Most of the young people in the town will be meeting them at the station. They will give performances. The police will be trying to keep order as usual.

(42 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *will be arriving* (1.2); *will be coming* (1.3); *will be meeting* (1.4); *will be singing* (1.5); *will be staying* (1.6); *will be trying* (1.8)

C. 1. I'*ll be ironing* the clothes.
   2. The train *will be arriving* in a few minutes.
   3. We'*ll be seeing* you in the morning.
   4. We'*ll be watching* the match.
   5. He'*ll be correcting* exercise books.

注解:

本课的关键句型是"What will you be doing tomorrow?"

将来进行时由 will/shall be + 现在分词构成。将来进行时通常用于表示将来正在进行的动作：

They will be arriving here tomorrow.

他们明天要到达此地。

The Greenwood Boys will be staying for five days.

“绿林少年”将在此逗留 5 天。

注意：有时将来进行时和一般将来时所表述的含义是一致的：

They will arrive here tomorrow.

They will be arriving here tomorrow.

他们明天将到达此地。

难点练习答案

1. It's George's.
2. It's Jean's.
3. It's that woman's.
4. I like Keats' poetry best.
5. They're the children's.
6. They're the soldiers'.
7. I'll leave in six hours' time.
8. There was a hundred pounds' worth of damage.

(名词所有格形式请参见学生用书第 62 页难点)

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第 3～4 行 They will be coming ... and most of the young people in town will ...，只有(b) mainly the young people 与课文内容相符，而其他 3 个选择均不符合

课文内容。

2. (d)

根据课文第 7～8 行... the police will have a difficult time. They will be trying to keep order，只有(d) to prevent trouble(防止麻烦)最符合课文的含义，它说明警察去那儿的目的，而其他 3 个选择都表示原因，不能准确表达课文的含义。

3. (b)

需要选择同前面句子中的 most of(大多数)意思相近的词或短语。(a)A lot(许多)后面应该有 of，与 most of 意思不同；(c)Some(一些)不是 most of 的同义词，语法上也讲不通；(d)Many(许多)也不是 most of 的同义词，且有语法错误；只有(b)Nearly all(几乎所有的)同 most of 的意思最接近，也最合乎语法。

4. (c)

只有(c)long will they be 最符合语法和题义。(a)long they will be 不是疑问句形式，不合乎语法规则；(b)they will be 不合乎语法，也不符合题义；(d)long they be 不合乎语法。

5. (a)

只有(a)in 才最接近前面句子中的 during 的含义，而其他 3 个选择(b)on、(c)for 和(d)while都在意思上讲不通。

6. (b)

只有(b)as usual(通常)才能使这个句子意思完整、语法正确。而其他 3 个选择均不符合英语惯用法和语法。

7. (b)

这个句子的主语 police(警察)是表示复数意义的名词，因此它后面的谓语动词应该是复数形式的。(a)is 和(d)was都是第 3 人称单数形式；(c)will 不能同现在分词

构成谓语动词；只有(b)are是复数形式，最符合语法规则。

8. (c)

这是以So引导的从句，要和前面的句子They are pop singers(流行歌手)构成因果关系。(a) they are folk singers(他们是民间歌手)与前一句意思不符；(b)they are public singers(他们是公众歌手)意思也不正确；(d)no one likes them(没人喜欢他们)不能与前一句构成因果关系；只有(c)everyone likes them(人人都喜欢他们)能同前面句子构成因果关系，符合逻辑。

9. (a)

本句需要选同前面句子中的At present(目前，现在)意思相同的词或词组。(b) for a short time(短时间)、(c) in future(将来)、(d)all the time(一直，始终)这3个选择均不符合题义。只有(a)now与at present是同义词。

10. (a)

只有(a)to cities, towns and villages最接近前面句子中的all parts of the country(全国各地)，而其他3个选择(b)only to towns、(c)only to villages和(d)only to cities意思都不够完整。

11. (a)

只有(a)recitals(表演，演出)同前一句中的performances意思相同，而其他3个选择(b)executions(演奏，扮演)、(c)plays(剧本，戏剧)、(d)songs(歌)意思都不够准确。

12. (d)

本句需要选出同前一句中occasions(场合，特殊时刻)的意思相近的的词。(a) situations(形势，处境)、(b)conditions(条件)、(c) places(地方)这3个词都与occasion的含义不同，只有(d)times与occasions意思最接

近，因此(d)是正确答案。

4 句子结构答案

They will be coming *by train* and *most of* the young people *in the town* will be meeting them *at the station*.

Lesson 14
Do you speak English?
你会讲英语吗?

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer gave a lift to a young man in the south of France last year. They greeted each other in French. Apart from a few words, the writer doesn't speak any French. They sat in silence. At the end of the journey the young man asked, 'Do you speak English?' He was English himself. (55 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. 1. I drove on to the next town after I had left a small village.
   2. I said good morning to him in French as soon as he had got into the car.
   3. I had nearly reached the town, when the young man said: 'Do you speak English?'

C. 1. After she had written the letter, she went to the post office.
   2. After he had had dinner, he went to the cinema.
   3. When I had fastened my seat belt, the plane took off.

4. We did not disturb him until he had finished work.

5. As soon as he had left the room, I turned on the radio.

6. He had been very ill before he died.

D. 1. regretted　　2. had begun/began　　3. arrived

注解：

本课的关键句型是"After he had finished work, he went home."

过去完成时是由 had + 过去分词构成。过去完成时表示过去某时或某个动作发生之前已经完成的动作或情况，即"较早的过去"。它的主要用法是表示过去发生的两个事件中哪一个发生在前，常常可以用 after, as soon as, when 等连词把两句话连在一起，如课文中的句子：

After I had left a small village..., I drove on to the next town.

As soon as he had got into the car, I said good morning to him...

（请参见学生用书第 65 页关键句型）

难点练习答案

1. Except for　　2. both of　　3. Apart from

4. asked...ask for　　5. neither of...asked

（请参见学生用书第 66 页难点）

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第 3 行 I stopped and he asked me for a lift，只有 (b) he wanted a free ride in the car 最符合课文内容，而其他 3 个选择均与课文内容不符。

2. (c)

根据课文最后一句话，可以判断(c)they each thought the other was French 是正确答案。(a)neither of them spoke French 虽然符合课文内容，但作者并不知道搭车人也不讲法语；(b)neither of them spoke English 和(d)they each thought the other was English 都与课文内容不符。

3. (a)

本句是一般过去时形式的疑问句，需要选正确的动词形式。(b)drove 不符合语法，因为已经有助动词 did 提问了，就不应该用过去式形式；(c)driven 和(d)driving 也不符合语法；只有(a)drive 最符合语法规则。

4. (c)

只有(c)just after 可以替换前一句中的 as soon as。而其他 3 个选择(a)before、(b)a long time after、(d)a moment before 均与 as soon as 意思不同。

5. (d)

只有(d)said(说)最符合题义。(a)spoke(讲某种语言，同……说话，后面应有 to)、(b)talked(谈话，谈论)与(c)told(讲述，告诉)这 3 个词的词义都不符合题义和习惯用法。

6. (b)

(a)many(许多)和(c)plenty of(充足的)都不能用来修饰某种语言，因此不能选。(b)much(很多)和(d)a little 都可以用在某种语言前面，但 a little 不能用在否定句中，不可以说 I don't know a little French。只有(b)最合乎语法和题义。

7. (c)

只有(c)both didn't speak 语法正确，而其他 3 个选择都有语法错误。

8. (b)

前一句中的短语 on the way 是“在路上”的意思，只有(b)during the writer's journey(在作者旅途中)同这个短语意思最接近，而另外 3 个选择(a)before the writer's journey、(c)after... journey 和(d)a long time ago 都与它的意思不符。

9. (c)

本句需要选出与前句中的 waved to(向……招手)意思相同的词。(a)saluted(向……致意/致敬)词义不够接近；(b)greeted(问候，向……打招呼)词义也不够准确；(d)nodded(点头)表示同意或打招呼，词义相差更远；只有(c)signalled(用手势等动作向……示意)意思同 waved to 相同，因此(c)是正确答案。

10. (b)

本句是要进一步说明前一句的含义 He asked for a lift(他提出要搭车)。他的身份应该是什么？(a)tramp(徒步旅行者)意思不够准确，因为徒步旅行不应该搭车；(c)passenger(乘客，旅客)是坐火车、汽车、飞机的，也不应该搭车；(d)foreigner(外国人)更不符合题义；只有(b)hitch hicker(边走边搭车旅行的人)最能准确表达这句话的含义。

11. (b)

需要找出前一句中 replied(回答)的同义词。(a)responded(回答，答复)作及物动词时后面要用 that 引导的宾语从句，如要表示对人或某种建议作出答复，则要用 to；(c)returned(回答，返回)词义不同于 replied；(d)remarked(评论，议论，注意到)词义不符；只有(b)answered(回答)与 replied 意思相同，而且这两个词经常可以互相替换。

12. (b)

只有选(b)almost 这个句子的意思才通顺,而其他 3 个句子都讲不通,也不符合语法。

4 句子结构答案

I do not *know any French at all*.

Lesson 15
Good news
佳音

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Mr. Harmsworth wanted to see me. I felt very nervous about this. I went into his office. He said that business was bad. The firm could not pay such large salaries. Twenty people had left already. He did not ask me to leave as well. He offered me an extra £1,000 a year. (53 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. 1. a. The secretary told me that Mr. Harmsworth would see me.
   b. 'Mr. Harmsworth will see you.'
2. a. Mr. Harmsworth said that business was very bad.
   b. 'Business is very bad.'
3. a. Mr. Harmsworth told me that the firm could not afford to pay such large salaries.
   b. 'The firm cannot afford to pay such large salaries.'

B. 1. told ... would come/would be coming
2. said ... (had) cut

3. told ... had *never* played
4. did *he* say ... had done/would do
5. did *he* tell ... (had) bought/would buy
6. said ... could not
7. said ... (had) worked
8. told ... wrote/writes/had *never* written
9. did *you* say ... were/had been
10. said ... would wait

注解：

本课的关键句型是"He said that... He told me..."

当把某人所说的或说过的话告诉另外一个人时，应当用间接引语。引述动词(say, tell)可能是现在时，也可能是过去时(最常用)，间接引语的时态往往受引述动词的影响。有时间接引语中的人称和时间状语也要作相应的改变。

直接引语：

'I can see him now,' the boss says/said.

"我现在可以见他，"老板说。

间接引语现在时：

The boss says that he can see you now.

老板说他现在可以见你。

间接引语过去时：

The boss said that he could see you now.

（译文同上）

（请参见学生用书第69页关键句型）

难点练习答案

1. study　2. office　3. nervous　4. afford
5. irritable

注解：

study 书房，学习或藏书的房间

office 办公室，工作的房间

offord *v*. 买得起（后面可以用钱或物作宾语）

nervous 紧张不安（由于害怕或恐惧）

irritable 易怒的（指人的脾气、性情）

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

   根据课文第 5～7 行 I knew my turn had come ... I said in a weak voice，可以判断(d)he thought he would lose his job 最符合课文的原义，也最符合这一句子的因果关系。其他 3 个选择虽然与课文内容相符，但不合乎逻辑。

2. (b)

   只有(b)was surprised to receive some extra money 是课文所暗示的情形，而其他 3 个选择均与课文内容不符。

3. (c)

   本句是直接引语，需要用一般将来时态。(a)would 是过去将来时形式的助动词，时态不正确；(b)shall 是一般将来时形式的助动词，但只能用于第 1 人称单复数；(d)could是情态助动词 can 的过去式，时态也不正确；只有(c)will 是一般将来时形式的助动词，最符合语法。

4. (b)

   这个疑问句是针对人的心理状态提问的，回答是 Very nervous(非常紧张)。只有(b)How 是对状态提问的，最符合题义，而(a)What、(c)How much 和(d)Which 都不能对状态提问。

5. (c)

(a)so 只能修饰形容词或副词,不能修饰名词 salaries;(b)such a可以修饰名词,但只能修饰单数可数名词;(d)a such 不符合语法;只有(c)such 能修饰复数名词。

6. (d)

这个疑问句是对所有格形容词提问的,因此需要一个能对所有格形容词提问的疑问词。(a)Which 可以对定语提问,但不能对所有格形容词提问;(b)To whom 和(c)Whom都只能对宾语提问;只有(d)Whose 是对所有格形容词提问的,所以应该选(d)。

7. (a)

只有(a)in 才能同它后面的名词 a weak voice 构成一个表示方式的短语,意思是"用微弱的嗓音说话",而(b)with、(c)on 和(d)under 都无法与 a weak voice 构成符合惯用法的短语。

8. (d)

只有选(d)speak to,才能使这一句同前一句 Mr. Harmsworth wanted to see me 的意思吻合,而另外3个选择(a)watch、(b)look at、(c)look for 都与前一句意思不符。

9. (c)

(a)angry(生气的)、(b)cross(发火的,易怒的)与(d)ill(生病的)这3个选择都不可能是 I felt nervous(紧张)的原因。只有(c)anxious(忧虑的,焦急的)才能是紧张的原因,所以应该选(c)。

10. (c)

本句是对前一句的解释或说明,It's your turn 是"轮到你了"的意思。只有(c)You're next(下一个是你)同 It's your turn 的含义最接近,而其他3个选择(a)It's your

line、(b)It's your row、(d)It's your chance 都在意思上同前一句不符，因此(c)是正确答案。

11. (c)

前一句中的 interrupt 是"插话"、"打断某人的谈话"的意思。(a)speak(讲)、(b)talk(谈论)与(d)cut off(切断，割掉)这 3 个选择都与 interrupt 的含义不同，只有(c)talk while I'm talking 最能解释 interrupt 的含义，因此应该选(c)。

12. (b)

只有(b)more 同前一句中的 extra(额外的，多余的)的意思最接近，而其他 3 个选择(a)less、(c)over、(d)up 都与 extra 意思不符。因此只有(b)是正确答案。

4 句子结构答案

The firm couldn't *afford to pay such large salaries*.

Lesson 16
A polite request
彬彬有礼的要求

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Traffic police usually give you a ticket if you park your car in the wrong place. The writer found a polite note on his car during a holiday in Sweden. The traffic police wanted him to pay attention to their street signs. No one can fail to obey a polite request. (50 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. The word *if* has been used four times.

C. 1. rains 2. will *never* pass 3. is 4. will get
5. enjoys 6. is

D. ...if I *listen* to the radio... If I *do* something wrong, *don't shout* at me. If the house *is* untidy, *don't blame* me. If you *want* me to do something, *don't forget* to say 'please'. If I *am playing* a nice game, *don't send* me to bed. If I *ask* for something... If it *is* cold *don't put* the cat out...

注解：

本课的关键句型是条件句"If you open the door, you will get a surprise."

条件句主要是用来询问或谈论十分可能发生的事情。条件句中的 if 从句用现在时，主句用将来时 will。如课文中的前两句：

If you park your car in the wrong place, a traffic policeman will soon find it.

如果你把车停错了地方，交通警很快就会发现。

You will be very lucky *if* he lets you go without a ticket.

如果他没给你罚款单就放你走了，算你走运。

难点练习答案

1. pay attention　2. remind　3. are knocking
4. look after　5. Remember me

注解：

1. pay attention(注意)与 look after(照看)这两个词组意思不同，不能互换。
2. remind(提醒某人……)与 remember(记住，不要忘记)这两个词意思不一样。
3. police(警察)虽然形式是单数，但意义是复数的，因此后面的动词也应该是复数形式 are knocking 而不能是 is knocking。

3　多项选择练习

1. (a)

根据课文第 3～4 行 Traffic police are sometimes very

polite，只有(a)occasionally very polite同这句话的意思相近。其他3个选择均与课文内容不符。

2．(a)

根据课文第4～5行 During a holdiay in Sweden，I found this note on my car，只有(a)parked his car in the wrong place and received a polite note from the police 与课文实际内容相同，而其他3个选择都与课文内容不符。

3．(d)

以 if 引导的条件句是现在时，主句应该用将来时 will。(a)will 时态正确，但不符合题义，应该用否定形式；(b)wouldn't 和(c)didn't 都不符合时态要求；只有(d)won't最符合时态和题义。

4．(a)

只有(a)go合乎语法，因为动词 let 作谓语时后面只能跟不带 to 的动词不定式。其他3个选择(b)to go、(c)going和(d)have gone 都不符合语法。

5．(b)

本句是前一句子 We welcome you to our city 的另一种表达方式。只有选(b)are welcome 才能使这一句子同前一句意思相同。welcome 既可以作动词，也可以作形容词。作动词时是"欢迎"的意思，它后面一定要带宾语。作形容词时，常作表语意思是"受欢迎的"。因此只有(b)are welcome 最符合语法。其他3个选择(a)welcome、(c)have welcomed 和(d)are welcoming 后面都缺少宾语，也不合题义。

6．(a)

No parking 是"禁止停车"的意思，只有(a)don't leave your car here 同它的意思最接近。而其他3个选择(b)without parking、(c)don't stop、(d)There's no room to

park here 意思都不够贴切。

7. (d)

为了说明前一句 This note is only a reminder(这张字条只是一个提醒)的强调语气词 only(只是,仅仅是),只有选(d)nothing more 意思最接近,其他 3 个选择(a)nothing、(b)no one、(c)nothing extra 意思都不正确。

8. (a)

只有(a)district(区)与前一句中的 area(地区)意思最相近,而(b)country(国家,乡村)、(c)surrounding(周围环境)与(d)kingdom(王国)这 3 个词都同 area 的意思不同。

9. (d)

本句需要对前一句 You will enjoy your stay(你会过得很快乐)作进一步的解释。只有选(d)It will please you(它会使你快乐)这个句子才同前一句的意思相同。注意:enjoy 是"享受……乐趣"、"喜欢"、"喜爱"的意思,它的主语一般是人。sb. enjoys sth. 表示"某人喜欢某事物"。please 是"使高兴"、"使喜欢"的意思,它的主语通常是物(但也可以是人)。sth. pleases sb. 表示"某事物使某人高兴",这句话主语变成了 it,所以选(d)please 词义是最正确的。而(a)amuse(使欢乐,使娱乐或消遣)意思不够准确;(b)enjoy 不能用 it 作主语;(c)laugh at(嘲笑)词义不符。

10. (d)

本句是要说明前一句中的 stay(停留,逗留时间)的。只有选(d)remain(停留,呆在某地)才能使这一句子符合前一句的含义。而其他 3 个选择(a)rest(休息)、(b)prevent(阻止)、(c)sit(坐)都不符合题义。

11. (d)

前一句中的 reminder 是"提示"、"提醒"的意思。只有选

(d)you to remember 才能解释 reminder 的含义。而其他3个选择(a)you remind(使……想起)、(b)your souvenir(你的纪念品)和(c)your remembrance(你的记忆/回忆)既不符合题义又不符合语法。

12. (a)

(b)deny(否认,否定)不符合题义;(c)resist(抵抗,反抗)也不合乎题义;(d)withdraw(缩回,收回)更不符合题义;只有(a)refuse(拒绝,不愿做)最符合题义,才能同前一个句子 You cannot fail to obey it(你不能不服从它)的意思吻合。

4 句子结构答案

If *you park your car in the wrong place, a traffic policeman will soon find it.*

Lesson 17
Always young
青春常驻

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

My aunt Jennifer is an actress. She is over thirty years old. She often appears on the stage as a young girl. Jennifer will act the part of a girl of seventeen in a new play soon. She never tells anyone how old she really is. (46 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. She *must* be (1.1); Jennifer *will have to* take (1.3); she *must* appear (1.4); she *had to* wear (11.5-6); it *must* be terrible (11.7-8)

C. 1. *You must/will have to* see a doctor.
   2. *Must you/Do you have to* make so much noise?
   3. She said *we must/had to/would have to* stay here.
   4. *I must/have to* have some help.
   5. *I've had to* go out last night.

注解:

must、have to 和 have got to 这 3 个情态助动词都有"必须"的意思,就它们所表达的意义而言,一般可以互换,但彼此

的含义是有差别的。

1. must 常常用来表示不可推卸的责任，这种义务在说话人看来是没有选择余地的，表示说话人认为自己有权做某事，强调说话人主观上必须做某事：

We really must do something about the weeds in this garden.

我们确实必须除去花园里的杂草了。

2. have to 和 have got to 意义相同而且可以互换，主要强调外在的原因，即客观上必须做某事，表示"不得不做"的含义：

We have (got) to take the final examination by the end of this term.

这学期期末我们必须参加期末考试。(即：学校规定我们要这样做)

3. have to 这个短语可以与更多的时态连用：

We shall have to leave early tomorrow.

我们明天要早动身。

Jennifer will have to take part in a new play soon.

詹妮弗很快又要参加一个新剧的演出。

4. 在过去时的句子中 must 要改成 had to：

She had to go shopping yesterday.

她必须昨天去买东西。

5. must 也用来表示推测：

He must be a fool.

他一定是个白痴。

She must be at least thirty-five years old.

她至少有 35 岁了。

难点练习答案

A. 1. in the position of

2. because

3. At the time when

(请参见学生用书第 78 页难点 a)

B. 1. grow　2. suit　3. costume　4. dress

注解:

1. grow (指人,事物)发育,生长,长大

grow up (指人,动物)长大,成人,成熟

Trees take a long time to *grow*.

树木需要很长时间才能长高/大。

2. suit 一套衣服

costume 服装(指演剧,或各种表演或晚会穿的)

dress 女人的外衣或连衣裙等

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第 1~2 行 She must be at least thirty-five years old. In spite of this, she often appears on the stage as a young girl,只有(d)She is too old to appear on stage as a young girl 是课文所暗示的情况,而(a)、(b)和(c)均与课文实际内容不符。

2. (b)

课文第 1 行有 She must be at least thirty-five years old(她至少也有 35 岁了),这只是一个推测,并没有告诉读者她的确切年龄有多大,因此(a) We know exactly how old Jennifer is 与课文内容不符;(c) Jennifer is thirty-five years old 也与课文内容不符,因为课文中没有交待她确

切的年龄是 35 岁；(d)Jennifer is over thirty-five years old 也不够准确，因为作者推测她至少有 35 岁，可能超过 35 岁了，也可能正好 35 岁；只有(b)We do not know exactly how old Jennifer is 是正确答案。

3．(b)

这个句子是对前一句作出肯定的陈述，只有(b)is 才是最合乎题义和语法的：In my opinion she *is* (at least thirty-five years old)．而(a)has 后面不能跟年龄，因此不符合语法；(c)can 是情态助动词，意思是“能”、“可以”，不符合题意；(d)must 是情态助动词，可以用来表示推测，但在后一句话中应明确表示个人的看法，而不是众人的推断。因此(b)是正确答案。

4．(d)

从后一句的回答中可以看出，前一个疑问句应针对年龄提问，因此只有(d)How old 是正确答案。

5．(c)

介词 in 有时可以用来表示穿什么服装或穿什么颜色的衣服。这句话只有选(c)in 意思才正确。而(a)with、(b)on、(d)by 都不符合语法。

6．(c)

只有(c)has to do 与前一句中的 must 意思相同又符合第 3 人称单数 she 的要求。因此只有选(c)has to do。而(b)have to do 不能用于第 3 人称单数；(a)has done 和(d)had done 都不符合题义。

7．(b)

be necessary for sb. to do sth. 等于 sb. must/have to do sth.，只有(b)necessary 才能使这一句同前面句子的意思相同，而其他 3 个选择(a)certain、(c)important、(d)impossible均不符合题义。

8. (a)

(a) is presented 有“参加演出”的意思，只有选(a) is presented 才能使这句话同前一句 She often appears as a young girl(她常扮演小姑娘)的意思相吻合。而(b)points(指出，指出)词义不符；(c)shows(展示，表现)常作及物动词；(d)seems(似乎是，好像)词义不对。因此(a)是正确答案。

9. (a)

(b)game(游戏，比赛)、(c)toy(玩具)、(d)match(比赛)这3个选择均不符合题义，只有(a)play(剧本，戏剧)符合题义。

10. (c)

前面的句子 Jennifer will take part in the play 的意思是“詹妮弗要参加这个剧的演出”，而不是参与写作或创作这个剧本，因此不能选(a)will write 和(d)will produce，而(b)won't be in 与题义相反。只有(c)will be in 最符合题义。

11. (a)

socks 为男女用短袜，stocking 为女用长筒袜。只有(a)socks instead of stockings 最符合生活常识，而其他 3 个选择(b)、(c)和(d)都不正确。

12. (d)

只有(d)an adult(成年人)才能与前一句中的 grow up(长大，成人，成熟)意思相符。而其他 3 个选择(a)very old(很老)、(b)an adolescent(青少年)、(c)teenager(13 岁到 19 岁的青少年)意思都不准确。

Lesson 18

He often does this!

他经常干这种事！

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer had lunch at a village pub. She could not find her bag after her meal. She could not pay the bill. The landlord soon found it for her. His dog had taken it into the garden.

(38 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. 1. I looked for my bag after I had had lunch at a village pub.

2. I had left my bag on a chair beside the door.

3. The landlord asked me: 'Did you have a good meal?'

4. I answered: 'I can't pay the bill because I haven't got my bag.'

5. The dog had taken the bag into the garden.

C. Sentences 2,3,5,7,8,10,11

注解：

注意 have 的多种用法：

1. have 作助动词同动词的过去分词构成完成时态：

After I had had lunch at a village pub, I looked for my bag.

2. have 作及物动词，表示"拥有"，在口语中经常同 got 连用，构成惯用法，表示"有"，got 没有实际意义：

He has a lot of money.

He has got a lot of money.

他有很多钱。

3. have 作行为动词，可以表示 eat、drink、enjoy、take 等含义：

have a bath 洗个澡

have a good time 玩得痛快

have a cup of tea 喝杯茶

难点练习答案

A. 1. back　2. away　3. in　4. in

注解：

give back 还给

give away 送出，把……送给(某人)

give in 交上，投降

B. 1. Besides　2. beside

注解：

besides *prep*. 除……外

beside *prep*. 在……旁边/身边

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第 1—2 行 I had left it on a chair beside the door and now it wasn't there，只有 (b) had her bag with her

when she went to the pub 与课文实际内容相符，而(a)、(c)与(d)均与课文内容不符。

2. (d)

根据课文最后两段可以推测，只有(d) knew that the writer could pay her bill 符合课文的含义，这正是课文所暗示的老板当时的心态，而其他3个选择均与课文内容不符。

3. (b)

前一句中的 had lunch 是"吃过午饭"的意思，只有(b)eaten(吃了)同它的意思相同，而其他3个选择(a)paid for(付钱)、(c) kept(保持)、(d) bought(买)都同 had 意思不同，因此(b)是正确答案。

4. (d)

只有选(d) there，才能使这一句话同前面的句子 She couldn't find her bag 意思相符。而其他3个选择(a)their (*adj*. 他们的)、(b) theirs(*possessive pron*. 他们的)与(c)they're(他们是)都不符合题义和语法。

5. (b)

只有选一个引导时间状语从句的连词才能使这个句子通顺并符合逻辑。(a)Because(因为)是引导原因状语的；(c)But(但是)是表示转折的；(d)Even if(虽然，是引导让步状语的。这3个选择均不符合题义。只有(b)While 是引导时间从句的，因此只有(b)是正确答案。

6. (c)

只有(c)own(拥有)同前一句中的 have got 意思相同，而(a)get(得到，获得)、(b)buy(买)与(d)owe(欠，负债)这3个选择均与 have got 词义不等。因此(c)own 是正确答案。

7. (d)

根据前一句 My dog had taken it into the garden(我的狗把它带进花园里去了),这一句选(d)in 才最符合逻辑。其他 3 个选择(a)to、(b)into、(c)at 都不合乎题义。

8. (c)

前一句中的 look for 是"寻找"的意思,寻找某物的目的是为了找到,因此只有(c)tried to find 才符合题义。而(a)tried to look after(设法照看)、(b)tried to look at(设法看)、(d)tried to see(设法看见)都不符合逻辑。

9. (a)

只有(a)put 才能使这个句子同前一句 I had left it on the chair 意思相吻合并符合逻辑,而其他 3 个选择(b)let(让)、(c)allowed(允许)与(d)permitted(许可,允许)都不符合题义。

10. (c)

只有(c)next to 同前一句中的 beside(在……旁边)意思相同。(a)near(在……附近)意思不够准确;(b)far from(离……很远)与 beside 意思相反;(d)besides(除……外)词义不对。所以(c)是正确答案。

11. (c)

只有(c)came back 与前一句中的 returned(回来)词义相同,而(a)turned(转过去)、(b)turned back(转回,折回)与(d)turned round(旋转,转向)这 3 个选择都不准确。

12. (b)

只有(b)returned it 才能使这一句子同前一句 He gave it back to me(他把它还给了我)的意思相同,而其他 3 个选择(a)turned it、(c)turned it back 与(d)turned it round 均不符合题义。

'*Did you have a good meal?*' he asked.

Lesson 19
Sold out
票已售完

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The play was going to begin at any moment. I asked for two tickets. There were none left. Susan and I were disappointed. Just then, a man hurried to the ticket office. He returned two tickets. They were for next Wednesday's performance. I bought them. (44 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *may* begin (1.1); *may* have begun (1.2); *May* I have (1.3); *Can* I return (1.8); *Could* I have (1.11); I *might* as well have (1.13)

注解:

注意情态助动词 can 和 may 的用法:

1. can/could 的含义是"能力":

I can type.

我会打字。

may/might 的含义是"允许":

You may leave early.

你可以早走。

2. 在表示一般性的请求时,can 和 may 通常可以互换:

May I have two tickets please?

我可以买两张票吗?

Can I return these two tickets?

我可以退掉这两张票吗?

Could I have those two tickets please?

我可以买那两张票吗?

3. may/might 表示推测,意思是"可能"、"也许":

It may have begun already.

也许已经开演了呢。

He may come tomorrow.

他也许明天来。

4. may/might 可以同 as well 连用,表示"还是"的意思。如课文最后一句:

'I might as well have them,' I said sadly.

"我还是买下为好,"我垂头丧气地说。

I haven't got anything to do, so I may as well come with you.

我无事可做,还是和你一起去吧。

难点练习答案

1. I *have not* seen...
2. There *aren't*...
3. He *does not*... *you are*...
4. She *didn't* tell...she *hadn't*...
5. I *shan't* stay...
6. He *won't* do... *he's* told
7. *When will* I...

8. *What have* you... *You have* broken...

9. *He is*... *He has* just come...

10. I *can't* understand... he *has not*...

11. You *must not* believe...

12. I *was not*... You *were not*...

13. That *man has* been...

14. They *had not* seen...

注解:

注意动词 be、have 和一些助动词、情态助动词在句子中的缩略形式:

haven't = have not

aren't = are not

doesn't = does not

didn't = did not

shan't = shall not

won't = will not

'll = will

've = have

's = is

can't = cannot　hasn't = has not

mustn't = must not

wasn't = was not　weren't = were not

's been = has been

hadn't = had not

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

根据课文第 5～6 行苏珊和售票处姑娘的对话:'I'm

sorry, we've sold out,' the girl said. 'What a pity!' Susan exclaimed,只有(a)they had all been sold 与课文内容相符,而其他3个选择均与课文实际内容不符,所以(a)是正确答案。

2. (d)

根据课文最后一行'I might as well have them,' I said sadly("我还是买下为好,"我垂头丧气地说),只有(d)wasn't too pleased to get tickets for next Wednesday's performance 最能反映作者当时的心情,而其他3个选择均与课文实际内容不符,因此(d)是正确答案。

3. (c)

前一句 The play may begin at any moment(剧马上就要开演了)是对将要发生的事情的推测,只有(c)hasn't begun yet(它还没开演呢)是合乎逻辑的,也与前一句的内容相符。而其他3个选择:(a)has begun(已经开演了)不符合逻辑;(b)won't begin for a long time(好长一段时间后才开演)与课文原意不符;(d)begun a long time ago(很久前就开演了)更不符合题义和时态。

4. (c)

这是一个疑问句,需要用疑问句的语序,即主谓倒置,(a)You must give me、(b) You have got to give me 与(d)You may give me 这3个选择都是陈述句语序,只有(c)Could I have 是疑问语序,并且 could 同前一句中的 may 一样都是表示"请求"的,因此应该选(c)。

5. (d)

动词 let 后面只能跟不带 to 的动词不定式才合乎语法,即 let sb. do sth.。(a)having 是现在分词,不符合语法;(b)to have 中动词不定式不应该带 to,也不合乎语法;(c)had是动词的过去式,也不符合语法;只有(d)have 是

不带 to 的动词不定式，因此应该选(d)。

6. (b)

这个句子的时间状语 next Wednesday(下星期三)是表示将来的时间，因此需要用将来时态。(a)was 是过去时，不合乎语法；(c)shall be 是将来时，但 shall 只能用于第 1 人称，而本句主语是第 3 人称；(d)has been 是现在完成时，时态不正确；只有(b)will be 是将来时，最符合时态和人称的要求，因此应该选(b)。

7. (c)

前一句子 I might as well have them(我还是把它们买下吧)，表示说话人不情愿或勉强这样做。(a)very pleased (非常高兴)、(b)very glad(很高兴)与(d)delighted(极为高兴)都与这个句子的含义相反，只有(c)not very glad 符合题义，因此应该选(c)。

8. (b)

只有(b)went there quickly 与前一句中的 hurried to (匆匆赶到)的意思相同。而(a)went there(去那儿)意思不准确；(c)went there slowly(慢慢走到那儿)与 hurried to... 意思相反；(d)didn't go there(没有去那儿)更不符合题义。

9. (c)

只有(c)sorry(遗憾)才与前面的 What a pity(真可惜)意思相符，而其他 3 个选择都与其含义相反，因此(c)是正确答案。

10. (a)

只有(a)give them back 与前面的 returned(还给)的意思相同，而其他 3 个选择(b)give them in(交上它们)、(c)give them up(放弃它们)与(d)give them off(发放它们)都没有"归还"的含义。

11. (c)

只有(c)Of course(当然)同前一句中的 Certainly 是同义词,而其他 3 个选择(a)Off course、(b)course、(d)Surely not 都不正确。

12. (c)

只有(c)now 才能使这个句子同前面句子 Do you still want them? (你还想要它们吗?)的意思吻合。而(a)yet、(b)even 与(d)more 都不符合题义和语法。

4 句子结构答案

I might *as well have them*.

Lesson 20
One man in a boat
独坐孤舟

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Fishing is the writer's favourite sport. Some unlucky fishermen catch old boots and rubbish. The writer is not so lucky. He never catches anything. He is not really interested in fishing. Sitting in a boat and doing nothing at all is the only thing that interests him. (47 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *Fishing*(l.1); *catching*(ll.1-2); *catching*(l.3); *having spent*(l.5); *fishing*(l.6); *fishing . . . sitting*(l.8); *doing* (l.9)

C. 1. He went out of the restaurant *without paying* the bill.
   2. She bought a pair of boots *instead of getting* a pair of shoes.
   3. She was afraid of *spending* the night alone.
   4. *After hearing/having heard* the news, she fainted.
   5. Think carefully *before answering* my question.
   6. *On seeing* the plane coming towards me, I dashed for

cover.

注解：

本课的关键句型是动名词。动名词是由动词 + -ing 构成的：

1. 动名词可以作句子的主语：

   Fishing is my favourite sport.

   钓鱼是我最喜爱的一项运动。

2. 动名词可以作句子的宾语：

   You must give up *fishing*.

   你别再钓鱼了。

3. 动名词短语可以作介词的宾语，在句子中相当于一个状语从句：

   After *having spent* whole mornings on the river, I always go home with an empty bag.

   我总是在河上呆上整整一上午，然后空着袋子回家。

   He sat there without *saying anything*.

   他默默无语地坐在那里。

难点练习答案

1. realized　　2. It's...understand...its　　3. exciting

4. interesting　　5. exciting　　6. interested

注解：

1. realize *vt*. 意识到

   understand *vt*. 懂，听懂，理解

2. It's = It is

   Its *possessive pron*. 它的

3. exciting *adj*. 激动人心的（常用来指事物，而不指人，可以作表语和定语）

excited *adj*. 激动的;有被动的含义,用来指人

4. interesting *adj*. 有意思的,有趣的

interested *adj*. 感兴趣的(常与介词 in 连用,作表语,主语是人而不能是物)

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第 4 行 I never catch anything—not even old boots,只有(b)never catches anything 与课文实际内容相同,而其他 3 个选择均与课文内容不符。

2. (c)

根据课文最后一句 I am only interested in sitting in a boat and doing nothing at all! 只有(c)doing nothing 是正确答案,而其他 3 个选择都不符合课文内容。

3. (b)

本句是对主语提问的,回答是 Fishing。(a)Who(谁)是对主语提问的;(c)Whom(谁)是对宾语提问的;(d)Whose(谁的)是对定语提问的;只有(b)Which 是对作主语的事物提问的,因此是正确答案。

4. (b)

本句是带 never 的否定句,只有(b)anything 可以用在否定句中。而(a)nothing 若用在否定句中,就会使原句变成肯定意义的句子,不符合题义;(c)something 只能用于肯定句中;(d)everything 也不能用于否定句中。

5. (c)

前面句子 I am even less lucky 中的 less(不及)是表示否定意义的比较级,只有(c)not so 是表示否定意义的,而其他 3 个选择(a)more、(b)as 和(d)so 都没有否定的意思。

6. (b)

只有(b)an empty bag 最符合语法。而其他 3 个选择均有语法错误。(a)a empty bag 中 empty 是以元音开头的，前面不能用 a 而应该用 an；(c)empty bag 中 bag 是可数名词，需要用 an 修饰；(d)one empty bag 不符合惯用法，单数可数名词前通常用不定冠词 a 或 an 修饰，除非表示强调才用 one 修饰。因此应该选(b)。

7. (c)

只有(c)all 才能使这个句子同前一句 I am only interested in doing nothing 的含义吻合，all 等于 the things that，可以替代 doing nothing。而其他 3 个选择中(a)only 和(d)the only 不符合语法且(b)the one 不符合题义。

8. (a)

只有(a)the one I like best 才能解释前一句中的 my favourite sport(我最喜爱的一项运动)，而(b)prefer、(c)my best 与(d)the best 都不符合题义。

9. (c)

只有(c)tries to catch (设法捕获)才是 a fisherman(钓鱼人)通常做的，而其他 3 个选择(a)buys(买)、(b)sells(卖)与(d)keeps(保存)都不符合题义，因此应该选(c)。

10. (c)

只有(c)catches(fish)有“钓鱼”的意思，而其他 3 个选择(a)holds(握，拿)、(b)takes hold of(抓住，捉住)与(d)takes(拿，带)都不能同 fish 构成固定短语，表示钓鱼。

11. (d)

只有(d)go home 是固定短语，意思是“回家”。(a)to home 不符合惯用法，不能说 go to home；(b)to house 和(c)to the house 也不符合惯用法。

12. (a)

只有(a)stop同前面的give up(放弃,停止)意思相近,而其他3个选择(b)begin(开始)、(c)surrender(投降)与(d)end(结束)都不符合题义。

4 句子结构答案

I often fish for hours *without* catching anything.

Lesson 21
Mad or not?
是不是疯了?

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer is slowly going mad. He lives near an airport. Passing planes can be heard night and day. Most of his neighbours have left their homes. He has been offered money to leave. He is determined to stay. Everyone says he must be mad. They are probably right. (49 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. ...passing planes *can be heard* (1.2); The airport *was built* (1.2); it *could not be used* then (1.3); a hundred people *must have been driven away* (11.4-5); this house *will be knocked down* by a passing plane (11.6-7); I *have been offered* a large sum of money (1.7)

C. 1. A message will be sent immediately.
   2. All these goods must be sold.
   3. I told you the parcel would be received in time.
   4. The letter has to be delivered by hand.
   5. Your letter must have been lost in the post.

注解：

本课关键句型是被动语态，关于被动语态的构成和用法请参见第 10 课关键句型。

在主动语态中，主动词的主语是执行动作的人或物，而在被动语态中，动作是对主语执行的：

People can hear passing planes night and day.

人们日夜都能听到过往的飞机声。

Passing planes can be heard night and day.

过往的飞机日夜都能听到。

难点练习答案

A. (sample answers)

The dog *drove* the sheep *out* of the field.

The police *drove* the crowds *back*.

I *drove* my car *into* the garage.

注解：

drive . . . out of . . . 把……赶出……

drive back 把赶回，撵回

drive into 驶进，赶进

B. 1. home   2. houses   3. house   4. home

注解：

home(家)可以作名词，也可以作副词，作名词时同介词 at 连用表示“在家”，前面不需要任何冠词。作副词时常与动词 get、come、go 连用。

house(房子，房屋)是可数名词，前面需要冠词或数量词修饰。

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

根据课文第 3～4 行 Last year, however, it came into use, 只有(c)came into use recently 比较接近课文的实际内容，而其他 3 个选择均不符合课文内容。

2. (d)

根据课文第 8 行...but I am determined to stay here, 只有(d)has refused to leave his house 与课文内容相符，其他 3 个选择都与事实不符。

3. (c)

只有选(c)can hear 才能使这个句子同前一句 Passing planes can be heared night and day 的含义相同，只是语态不同。而其他 3 个选择(a)can heard、(b)can to hear 与(d)can be heared 都不符合语法，在意思上都讲不通。

4. (d)

只有(d)possible 才能使这个句子同前一句 It couldn't be used then 意思接近。(a)able(能)需要人作主语，而本句的主语 it 是形式主语；(b)allowed(允许)不符合题义；(c)impossible(不可能的)与题义相反。

5. (a)

前面句子 Over a hundred people must have been driven away 中的 must 表示说话人的一种主观推测。(b)I'm sure(我确信)语气比较肯定，不表示推测；(c)Certain(肯定的)是形容词，缺主语与谓语，不符合语法和题义；(d)Of course(当然)表示“肯定”的意思，也不够准确；只有(a)I think(我想，我认为)表示推测，因此应该选(a)。

6. (c)

只有(c)are some left 才能使这个句子比较接近前一句 I

am one of the few people left，因为 few(少数几个)同 some(一些)意思比较相近。(a)are none left(一个没剩)不等于 the few;(b)is one left(剩下一个)也不等于 the few;(d)are a lot left(剩下很多)与 the few 意思相差更远。因此只有(c)是正确答案。

7. (b)

这是一个疑问句，需要主谓倒置语序。(a)you have been offered、(c)you have offered 与(d)they offered you 这 3 个选择都是陈述句语序。只有(b)have you been offered 是疑问句语序，因此应该选(b)。

8. (b)

只有(b)give(给)同前面的动词 offered 词义相近，而(a)serve(服务，服侍)、(c)take(拿，带)与(d)make(做，制造)这 3 个选择都与 offered 意思不同。

9. (a)

(b)number 只能修饰人，不能修饰不可数名词 money;(c)some不符合语法，意思不成立;(d)piece 只能修饰不可数名词，但不能修饰 money。只有(a)amount(很多，一大笔)表示金额，可以修饰 money。

10. (d)

只有(d)am going to 才比较接近前一句 I am determined to stay here(我决定留在这里)的含义。其他 3 个选择中：(a)am will to 不符合语法;(b)want to(想要)与 be determined to 的含义有些差距;(c)may(可以)词义更不正确。

11. (c)

只有(c)Perhaps 才能与前一句中的...they are probably right(……他们可能是对的)的意思相吻合，表示“可能”、“也许”(不肯定的推测)，而(a)Of course(当然)、(b)It's

certain(肯定)与(d)It's sure(一定)这 3 个选择都带有肯定的意思,因此应该选(c)。

12. (c)

只有(c)correct(对的,正确的)这个句子才通顺,而(a)just(公正的)、(b)fair(公平的)与(d)equal(平等的,相等的)这 3 个选择都不符合题义,因此只有(c)correct 是正确答案。

4 句子结构答案

The airport *was built years ago*, but for some reason it *could not be used then*.

Lesson 22
A glass envelope
玻璃信封

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Jane crossed the Channel last year. She threw a bottle into the sea. It contained a piece of paper with her name and address on it. Ten months later, she received a letter from a girl in Holland. They write to each other regularly now. They send their letters by post. (51 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

1. from

   withdraw ... from 从……提取,收回

2. on

   comment on 评论

3. in

   include in 包括,在……中

4. on

   congratulate sb. on sth. 为某事向某人祝贺

5. from

   protect ... from 保护,使……免于

6. from

emerge from 从……出现

7. of

dream of / about 梦想,幻想

8. on

rely on 依靠

9. from

prevent sb. from doing sth. 阻止某人做某事

10. in

interested in 对……感兴趣

11. on...in

count on 依赖　help sb. in 帮助某人

12. of

beware of... 谨防,注意,当心

13. in

persisted in 坚持

14. on

insist on 坚持

15. of

get rid of 摆脱,排除

16. of

hear of (通常用于问句或否定句中)获知……消息

17. from

separate... from 把……分开

18. of...on

cure...of 治愈　operate on 动手术,开刀

19. on

depend on 依靠

20. of...of

accuse . . . of. . . 控告　suspect . . . of 对……猜疑/怀疑

21. of

think of 思考，考虑

22. of/from

expect . . . of/from 期望

23. of

smell of. . . 闻到

24. from

differ from 与……不同/不一样

25. in

invest . . . in 投资

26. on

based on 在基础上

27. on

lean on 依靠于

28. from

suffer from. . . 受……之苦

29. on

embark on 从事，开始

30. in

believe in 信仰，相信

31. from

be dismissed from 被解雇

32. on

experiment on 做试验，尝试

33. on

concentrate on 集中于

34. on

pride (oneself) on 为……感到自豪

35. in

fail in 不成功

36. from

escape from 从……逃出

37. on

economize on 节约,节省

38. on

live on 靠……为生

39. in

be employed in 被雇用,受聘于

40. of

consist of 由……组成

41. on

act on 遵守,按照

42. on

write on 在……上写,写……的事

43. of

boast of 夸耀

44. in

encourage ... in 鼓励

45. in

instruct in 指教,教导

46. in

be involved in 使卷入

47. from

prohibit from 不准许,禁止

48. of

assure ... of 让……放心,使……确信

49. of

approve of 赞成

50. of

despair of 失望,丧失信心

51. on

perform on 上演,扮演

52. of

warn ... of 警告……有危险

53. from

borrow from 从……借

54. in

delight in 喜欢,乐于

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第 4～5 行 She threw the bottle into the sea. She never thought of it again，只有(d) She didn't expect anyone to find the bottle 是课文所暗示的内容,其他 3 个选择均不符合课文实际内容。

2. (b)

根据课文第 6 行 Both girls write to each other regularly now,只有(b)correspond in the normal way now 与课文实际内容相符,correspond = write to each other,其他 3 个选择均不是课文提及的内容。

3. (d)

本句中的动词 dreamed(梦想)可以同介词 of 或 about 连用,也可以跟 that 引导的从句作宾语,但不能跟动词不定式。(a) to receive 是动词不定式,不合乎语法;(b) to receiving 有语法错误,应该是 dream of receiving;(c) of

receive 有语法错误，应该是 of receiving；(d) that she would receive 是 that 引导的从句，可以作 dreamed 的宾语，因此应该选(d)。

4. (d)

只有(d)the same age as(与……年龄相同)是正确的表达方式；而(a)the same age with 不合语法，same 不应该同 with 连用而应同 as 连用；(b)the same age 后面缺 as，不正确；(c)as old 后面也应该有 as 才合乎语法。

5. (b)

这个句子是一般过去时形式的疑问句，所以填的动词应是动词原形，因此只有(b)throw 是正确答案。

6. (d)

只有(d)about 才能同 thought 构成短语动词表示“考虑”，而(a)for、(b)to 与(c)at 都不是正确的表达方式。

7. (a)

只有(a) to one another(互相)最符合语法和惯用法。(b)the one to the other 虽然语法上能讲得通，但意思不够通顺；(c) each to other 不符合语法，应该是 to each other；(d)to other 不符合语法。

8. (c)

只有(c)trip(旅行)才是正确的表达方式，与前面的 were travelling 的意思相符。(a)sail(航行)不合题义；(b)travel 不是正确表达方式，可以是 went on a journey/trip；(d)run(跑)不是正确表达方式，也不合题义。

9. (d)

只有(d)sheet(张)是正确的表达方式，而其他 3 个选择(a)lump(块，团)、(b)bar(条，棒)与(c)tube(管子)都不能与 paper(纸张)连用。

10．(a)

只有(a)frequently(经常)同前面的 often 意思相同。(b)occasionally(不时地)、(c)sometimes(有时)与(d)now and again(时而,不时)这 3 个选择都与 often 意思不同。

11．(b)

(b)stamps(邮票)才符合逻辑。(a)sweets(糖)、(c)apples(苹果)与(d)sugar(方糖)这 3 个选择都不符题义。

12．(b)

只有(b)more quickly(较快地)同前一句中的 faster 意思相同。(a)sooner(不久地,较早地)、(c)hurriedly(较匆忙地)与(d)shorter(较短地)这 3 个选择都与 faster 的意思不同。

4 句子结构答案

Last year, we were travelling across the Channel and Jane put a piece of paper with her name and address on it into a bottle.

Lesson 23
A new house
新居

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

My sister will come to England next year. She will get a surprise if she comes. We have a new house in the country. I have invited my sister to stay with us. It is a very modern house. It has got many large rooms and a lovely garden.

(49 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

C. 1. wrote 2. had finished 3. breaks
4. shall/will go

注解:

1. 以 after 引导的从句是过去完成时,主语应该是一般过去时 wrote,以表示两个动作前后顺序,即主句动作发生在从句动作之后。
2. 主句是一般过去时,从句应该是过去完成时 had finished,表示从句动作发生在主句动作之前。
3. 在条件句中,if 从句应该用现在时 breaks、主句用将来时。

4. 在条件句中，if 从句用现在时，主句应该是将来时。

D. 1. told...would

2. told...had lost

3. said...did not like

注解：

1. 主句中动词是过去时，间接引语中可以是过去将来时。
2. 主句动词用过去时，间接引语可以用过去完成时，转述过去已经发生的事情。
3. say (*vt*.)只能带一个宾语，而 tell (*vt*.)需要带直接宾语和间接宾语，本句因为只有一个 that 从句作宾语，所以应该用 said。主句动词用过去时，间接引语也可以用过去时转述一件事情。

难点练习答案

1. It	2. There	3. There	4. there	5. It
6. It	7. There	8. it	9. there	10. it

注解：

1. There is/are 表示某个地方有某物。
2. It is 表示"它是"，it 可以指时间、天气等，也可以作形式主语。

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

根据课文第 3～4 行 We are now living in a beautiful new house in the country. Work on it had begun before my sister left 可以判断只有(a)when she sees the writer's new house 符合课文的实际情况，其他 3 个选择均与课文不符。

2. (a)

根据课文第 7～8 行 It is a very modern house, so it looks strange to some people，只有(a)it is modern 与课文内容相符，其他 3 个选择(b)it is new、(c)it is large 与(d)it is old 都与课文实际内容不符。

3. (a)

这是一个条件句，if 从句应该用一般现在时，所以应该选(a)comes。(b)came、(c)has come 和(d)will come 都不是一般现在时，都不符合语法。

4. (c)

(b)beautiful house new 语序不对，不合乎语法，形容词不应放在它所修饰的名词后面。(d)new house beautiful 语序也不正确，不合乎语法。(a)new beautiful house(新的，美丽的房子)虽然合乎语法，但词义不够通顺。形容词的一般词序是品质在尺寸、新旧、颜色之前。房子首先是新的(new house)，美丽的(beautiful)应该修饰 new house。(c)beautiful new house(美丽的新房子)最符合语法，词义也最通顺。

5. (c)

本句的主语是物 the house，而不是人，因此需要用被动语态。(a)has completed 是主动语态完成式，不合乎语法；(b)completed 是主动语态过去式，也不符合语法；(d)has been completed 是被动语态，但时态不对，因为句子中已有表示过去的时间状语 five months ago，所以不应该用现在完成时，而应该是一般过去时；(c)was completed 是被动语态过去式，最符合语法。

6. (a)

只有(a)said to her 同前面句子中的 told her 意思相同，也合乎语法，是正确答案。(b)said her 不符合语法，her 作

间接宾语时前面应该有介词 to;(c)told to her 不符合语法,因为 tell 是及物动词;(d)told 不符合语法,缺少宾语。

7. (d)

(a)They have 因前面句子中的主语是单数 The house 因此该用 It has;(b)They are(他们是)不合乎题义;(c)There have 不合乎语法,表示某地"有"什么应该用 There is/are;只有(d)There are 表示"有"、"存在"最符合题义。

8. (d)

只有选(d)received 才能同前一句 I had a letter yesterday 的意思吻合。(a)sent(送,寄出)、(b)took(拿,带走)与(c)wrote(写)这 3 个选择都不合题义。

9. (b)

这个句子是将来时,需要表示将来的时间状语,只有(b)next才是表示将来的时间。其他 3 个选择中:(a)last 表示过去,而(c)the other 和(d)the last 都不符合英语惯用法。

10. (b)

只有(b)the city(城市)是同前一句中的 the country(乡村)相对应的词,而(a)Nigeria、(c)England 和(d)France 都是国名,都不是同 the country 相对应的词,因此应该选(b)。

11. (a)

只有(a)after 才能与前一句 Work on it had begun before my sister left 的意思一致。(b)without 和(c)behind 都是介词,后面不能跟从句,只能跟名词;(d)soon(不久)是副词,不合乎题义,也不符合语法,因为它不能引导时间从句。

12. (d)

只有(d)recently(最近)最符合题义。(a)lately(最后地)、(b)late(晚,迟)与(c)latest(late的最高级)这3个选择都不合乎逻辑。

4 句子结构答案

I told her that *she could stay with us*.

Lesson 24
It could be worse
不幸中之万幸

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

I had just lost £50. I felt very upset. I told the manager about it. He could not do anything. He began to complain about this wicked world. Just then a girl came in with the money. She had found it outside my room. There is still some honesty in this world. (52 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

难点练习答案

A. 1. received
2. on the
3. On the
4. believes
5. of
6. salary
7. lend
8. asked for
9. Apart from
10. an irritable
11. are
12. pay attention to
13. Remember
14. suit
15. grow up
16. beside
17. It's...exciting
18. understand
19. home
20. There is

（请参见第 2～23 课难点）

B. 1. What a wonderful garden (this is)!

2. What a lot of trouble he is causing!

3. What a tall building (it is)!

4. What a clever girl you are!

（请参见第 2 课难点）

C. 1. He handed *the prize to me*.

2. The waiter brought *the man a bottle of beer*.

3. I've ordered *you some soup*.

4. Bring *me that book* please!

5. She promised *the finder a reward*.

（请参见第 3 课难点）

D. 1. I *haven't any/have no* money.

2. I *didn't go anywhere/went nowhere* in the holidays.

3. There *wasn't anybody/was nobody* present when the accident happened.

（请参见第 9 课难点）

E. 1. It's *George's*.

2. It's that *woman's*.

3. I like *Keats'* poetry best.

4. They're the *children's*.

5. They're the *soldiers'*.

（请参见第 13 课难点）

F. 1. off 2. back 3. up

4. over 5. on 6. away

注解：

knock off 下班

be back 回来

give up 放弃

be over 结束

be on 上演，演出

G. 1. I put my hat *on*.

2. I took my coat *off*.

3. He put the fire *out*.

4. They cut the king's head *off*.

（请参见第6、7课难点）

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第2～3行'I left the money in my room,' I said, 'and it's not there now'，只有(b)someone had stolen his money符合作者的推测。其他3个选择都不正确。

2. (a)

根据课文的情节，只有(a)The writer had lost the money是正确的，符合课文的原义。(b)The girl had stolen the money不符合课文的情况，因为是这个女孩捡到了钱，而不是她偷了钱；(c)The manager had taken the money更与事实不符；(d)Someone had stolen the money与实际情况不符。

3. (a)

(b)were不符合语法，因为The money是单数不可数名词，故不能用were作谓语动词；(c)are也不合乎语法，因为它也不能作money的谓语动词；(d)has不符合题义，若选(d)此句意思讲不通；只有(a)was合乎语法。

4. (c)

只有(c)anything可以用在否定句中。(a)something不能用于否定句；(b)nothing若用在否定句中，双重否定会变

成肯定意义的句子，不合题义；(d)everything 一般不用于这种否定句中。

5. (a)

只有(a)interrupted 最合乎语法。(b)was interrupted 是被动语态，这个句子不应该是被动语态。(c)interrupting 是现在分词，不能作谓语。(d)was interrupting 是过去进行时，interrupt(打断)是表示一个瞬间动作，即敲门声是一下子打断了他的话，而不是正在打断。故应该用一般过去时，不应该用过去进行时。

6. (a)

(a)Outside (*prep*. 在……外)最符合逻辑，因为只有(a)能回答地点 where。(b)Out of (*prep*. 从……里面……)强调从里面向外，不合乎题义；(c)out 不是介词，因此不能同 the room 构成表示地点的短语；(d)without (*prep*. 没有)不表示地点，更不符合题义。

7. (c)

这是一个对定语(所有格)提问的疑问句。(a)To whom 是对宾语提问；(b)Who 是对主语提问；(d)Of whom 也是对宾语提问；只有(c)Whose(谁的)是对定语提问，所以应该选(c)。

8. (c)

只有(c)worried(着急，忧虑)同前一句中的 upset(不安)意思相近。(a)sick(有病的，恶心的)、(b)ill(有病的)与(d)tired(疲劳的，厌倦的)这 3 个选择都不合乎题义。

9. (c)

只有(c)He was sorry for the writer(他为作者感到难过或惋惜)才能解释前面的句子 The manager was sympathetic (表示同情的)。而其他 3 个选择(a)Everyone liked him (每个人都喜欢他)、(b)He liked everyone(他喜欢每个

人)与(d)He liked the writer(他喜欢作者)都与前句意思不符。

10. (b)

(a)losing(丢失)不正确。若选(a)主语应该是人,而不应该是 money;(c)going away(走开,离开)词义不对;(d)disappearing(消失,失踪)词义不够恰当;只有(b)missing(丢掉的,失去的)词义最准确,而且可以作表语。

11. (a)

只有选(a)an envelope(信封)最合乎逻辑和事实。(b)a packet(一包)、(c)some string(一些细绳)和(d)a pen(一枝钢笔)这3个选择都不符合实际情况。

12. (b)

只有选(b)honest(诚实的)最合乎逻辑。(a)honourable(光荣的,体面的)、(c)honoured(感到荣幸的,受到尊敬的)与(d)trusting(信任的)这3个词都不如 honest 合乎逻辑。

4 句子结构答案

He started *to complain about this wicked world but was interrupted by a knock at the door*.

测试2答案

关键句型练习答案

A. a. 1. I enjoyed the film yesterday.

2. My mother went to market.

3. (This morning) the children asked questions continuously in class (this morning).

4. (On Sundays) we stay at home (on Sundays).

5. (This morning) I borrowed a book from the library (this morning).

注解:

一个简单陈述句可以由6部分组成,但是并不是每个句子都有这么多组成部分。这6部分的顺序应该是:(Time)/Subject/Verb/Object or Complement/Manner/Place/(Time),即:(时间)/主语/动词/宾语或补语/方式/地点/(时间)。

b. 1. She *rarely* answers my letters.

2. The shops *always* close on Saturday afternoons.

3. We *never* work after six o'clock.

4. We *sometimes* spend our holidays abroad.

5. Do you *ever* buy CDs?

注解:

注意 rarely、always、never、sometimes、ever 这类副词在句子中的位置,它们通常应该放在谓语动词的前面。

B. a. are playing ... play ... is kicking ... is running

b. died ... left ... spent ... bought ... went ... stayed... listened ... lent ... kept ... lost

c. *I* have *just* received ... *He* has been *there* ... *he* has

already visited ... *He* has *just* bought ... *and* has gone

d. 1. What *did* you *buy* yesterday?

2. Up till now, he *has* never *lent* me anything.

3. *Have* you *burnt* those old papers yet?

4. He *fought* in Flanders in the First World War.

5. We *have* just *won* the match.

e. 1. was leaving/left ... arrived

2. was working/worked ... was sitting/sat

3. was walking/walked ... met

4. was reading ... heard

5. dropped

f. I *shall go* to the theatre ... Reg and I *shall/will see* the first performance ... the producer *will give* a short speech. He *will speak* to ... The play *will be* very successful and I think a great many people *will enjoy* it very much.

(请参见第 1～12 课关键句型)

g. 1. shall be ironing

2. will be arriving

3. *We*'ll be seeing

4. shall be watching

5. will be correcting

h. 1. *After* she had written the letter, she went to the post office.

2. *After* he had had dinner, he went to the cinema.

3. *When* I had fastened my seat belt, the plane took off.

4. We did not disturb him *until* he had finished work.

5. *As soon as* he had left the room, I turned on the radio.

i. The Taj Mahai *was built* in the seventeenth century ... A few years after he *became/had become* ruler, his wife ... *died*. The Taj Mahal *was built* in her honour. Experts *were called* in from many parts of the world ... The Taj Mahal, which *was begun* in 1632 and (*was*) *completed* in 1654, *cost* a fortune. Up to the present day, it *has been visited* by millions of people.

j. 1. told ... would come/would be coming
2. said ... (had) cut
3. told ... had *never* played
4. did he say ... had done/would do
5. did he tell ... (had) bought/would buy

k. 1. rains 2. will *never* pass 3. is
4. will get 5. enjoys

l. Fishing ... catching ... catching ... having spent ... fishing ... fishing ... sitting ... doing
(请参见第 13～21 课关键句型)

g. 将来进行时(请参见第 13 课关键句型)

h. 过去完成时(请参见第 14 课关键句型)

i. 被动语态(请参见第 10、21 课关键句型)

j. 间接引语(请参见第 15 课关键句型)

k. If 条件句(请参见第 16 课关键句型)

l. 动名词(请参见第 20 课关键句型)

C. a. 1. *You must/will have to* see a doctor.
2. *Must you/Do you have to* make so much noise?
3. She said we *must/would have to/had to* stay here.
4. *I must/have to* have some help.

5. *He had to* go out last night.

b. 1. *He must be* a fool.

2. *He must be* mad.

3. *She must be* over forty.

c. 1. *Can/May I* use your telephone?

2. *He may* telephone tomorrow.

3. *Can/May I* have two tickets please?

4. *The play may have* begun already.

5. *Can/May I* leave the table please?

(must 和 have to 的用法请参见 17 课关键句型;can 和 may 的用法请参见第 19 课关键句型)

D. a. *some* soap　*a* picture　*some* milk　*some* money

a woman　*a* window　*a* bus　*some* sand

some rice　*a/some* newspaper　*some* water

a cloud　*a* son　*some* coal　*a* secretary　*some* oil

b. ... to *a* house in Bridge Street. Yesterday *a* beggar ... for *a* meal and *a* glass of beer. In return for this, *the* beggar ... and sang (*some*) songs. I gave him *a* meal. He ate *the* food and drank *the* beer. Then he put *a* piece of cheese ... Later *a* neighbour ... His name is Percy Buttons ... in *the* street once *a* month ... asks for *a* meal and *a* glass of beer.

(请参见第 6 课关键句型)

E. 1. It is the *most unusual film* I have ever seen.

2. Mr. Jones is a *better* teacher *than* Mr. Brown.

3. This book is *more interesting than* that one.

4. She is *the laziest* pupil in the class.

5. The weather today is *worse than* it was yesterday.

(请参见第 8 课关键句型)

F. 1. in

in two years' time 两年后

2. On

On Saturdays 每星期六

3. during/in

during/in the week 在工作日

4. at

at the moment 此刻,现在

5. on ... in

on November 7th 11 月 7 日

in 1988 在 1998 年(在具体日期前用介词 on,在年、月前用介词 in)

6. in

in December 在 12 月份

7. at ... in

at night 夜晚, in the morning 上午

G. 1. in

includ in 包括

2. from

recieve ... from 从……收到,接收

3. on

rely on 依赖,依靠

4. of

think of 考虑,思考

5. in

be interested in 对……感兴趣

6. of

be tired of 对……感到厌倦

难点练习答案

A. 1. By the way　2. borrowed　3. ask　4. grown
5. Besides　6. its　7. yet　8. desk
9. It is　10. home

注解:

1. by the way 顺便问一句　on the way... 在……的路上
2. borrow 借来,借　lend 借出,借给
3. ask 问,询问　ask for 请求,要求,索要
4. grow 长大,生长　grow up 成长,长大(含有"长大成人"或"成熟"之义)
5. besides 除……外　beside 在……旁边
6. it's 它是　its 它
7. yet 还(常用于完成时态的否定和疑问句中)　still 仍然,还(可以用于各种时态,用于否定、肯定或疑问句中)
8. desk 书桌　office 办公室
9. it is 这是(it 作形式主语)　there is (某地)有,存在
10. house 房子,住宅　home 家(通常前面不用冠词)

B. 1. at
knock at 敲打
2. up
give up 放弃
3. on
be on 上映(电影)
4. out ... back
be out 出去　be back 回来
5. out
knock ... out 把……打昏

C. 1. Who knocked this vase *over*?

3. Put your jacket *on*.

5. The thieves woke the night watchman *up*.

注解:

2. look after(照看,照料)是固定短语,两个词不能拆开。

4. Bring it back: 因为宾语是代词 it,必须放在动词和副词之间。只有当宾语是名词时,才可以改变动词短语中副词的位置。

D. 1. The officer ordered *the men to fire at the enemy*.

2. He wants *his wife to wear this dress*.

3. She wants *us to explain it*.

4. I cannot *allow him to enter the room*.

5. She taught *her son to read*.

E. 1. She made me this dress.

2. I lent him my typewriter.

3. I showed George the letter.

4. Pass your mother that cup.

5. Johnny gave his sister the doll.

注解:

当间接宾语放在直接宾语前时,它前面的介词可以省略。

Lesson 25

Do the English speak Enlish ?

英国人讲的是英语吗?

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

I arrived at a railway station in London and asked a porter the way to my hotel, but he could not understand me. He understood me at last, but I could not understand his answer. My teacher never spoke English like that. The porter said that I would soon learn English. Each man speaks a different language in England. They understand each other, but I do not understand them. (69 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *and* (1. 1); *so* (1. 2); *not only* ... *but* ... *as well* (11.2-3); *and* (1.5); *but* (1.5); *neither* ... *nor* (1.6); *but* (1.7); *and* (1.8); *and* (1.8); *and* (1.9); *but* (1.10)

C. 1. I knocked at the door but he did not open it.

2. Both he and I went on holiday.

3. He must be either mad or very wise.

注解：

将几个简单句连在一起，组成并列句，通常可以用以下连词：and, but, so, yet, or, both ... and, either ... or, neither ... nor, not only ... but as well (also)等：

I did not know the way to my hotel, *so* I asked a porter.

我不知道去饭店的路，于是向一个搬运工打听。

I repeated my question several times *and* at last he understand.

我把问话重复了很多遍，他终于听懂了。

作文参考答案

1. Both my sister and I went shopping.
2. We not only got very tired but very hungry as well.
3. It was three o'clock and we could not get lunch so we had a cup of tea.

8 多项选择练习

1. (c)

(a) The writer didn't know any English 与课文实际内容不符；(b) The porter didn't speak English 也与实际情况不符；(d) The writer was a foreigner 虽然是课内涉及的内容，但不是作者不能听懂搬运工人讲话的真正原因，因为作者也懂英语；只有(c) The writer couldn't understand the porter's English 最符合课文的实际情况，是正确答案。

2. (b)

根据课文第 7～8 行 My teacher never spoke English like that! 只有(b) expected everyone in England to speak like

his teacher 最能道出作者的真实想法。(a)didn't think the porter was English 与事实不符，课文中没有这样的暗示；(c)doesn't think the English speak English 并不是作者的真实想法；(d)thinks that the English speak many different languages 虽然作者是这样说的，但不一定是他的真实想法。

3. (b)

只有选(b)is 最合乎语法。(a)are 不合语法，因为 English 作“英语”讲时是单数名词，不能跟复数的系动词 are；(c)was也不合乎语法，因为陈述一种语言的性质应该用一般现在时；(d)has(有)更不合乎语法，因为 has 不能作系动词。

4. (a)

这个疑问句是针对“次数”提问的，回答是 several times (几次)，只有(a)How many times(多少次)是问次数的；而(b)How many、(c)How much 和(d)How 都不是对次数提问的。

5. (b)

这是一个否定句，只有选(b)either 最符合语法。因为只有 either 可以用于否定句中表示“也不”。(a)neither(两者都不)一般不用于带否定词 not 的否定句中，它可以同 nor 连用；(c)too(也)只能用于肯定句中；(d)nor 不能单独使用，只能用 neither 连用，表示“既不……也不”。

6. (c)

本句中的 both 是“两个人”的意思，因此不能选(a)I 和(b)He，因为它们都是单数人称代词；(d)They(他们)可以是两个人，但若选(d)则同前面句子人称不一致，不合逻辑；只有(c)We(我们)最合乎语法和逻辑。

7. (d)

本句需要选一个关系代词作定语从句中的宾语。(a)who只能作定语从句的主语(指人);(b)whose 只能作定语从句中的定语;(c)whom 只能作定语从句中的宾语,指人而不能指物。而本句需要的是指物的关系代词;只有(d)which可以作定语从句中的宾语,指物。

8. (b)

本句需要选一个与前一句中的 several(几个)意思相近的词。(a)much(很多)不是 several 的近义词,也不能修饰可数名词;(c)only a few(只有少数)同 several 的意思不够接近;(d)three(3 个)太绝对化了,因为 several 虽可能是 3 个,但也可能多于 3 个;只有(b)a number of(一些,几个)同 several 的意思相近,所以(b)是正确答案。

9. (a)

该句需要选出同前一句中的 At last(最终)意思相同的词组。只有(a)in the end(最终)同 at last 意思相同。而(b)at least(至少)、(c)lastly(最后地)、(d)at the finish 不是正确的表达方式,这 3 个选择都不符合题义。

10. (a)

只有选(a)a foreigner(外国人),才能同前句 I come from abroad(我来自国外)的意思相吻合。(b)strange(陌生的,奇怪的)不符合题义;(c)overseas(国外的,海外的)是形容词,也可以作副词但不如 a foreigner 意思准确;(d)abroad(出国,在国外)是副词,I am abroad(我正在国外)与前一句意思不符。

11. (d)

只有选(d)taught(教)最正确。(a)learnt(学习)、(b)trained(培训)、(c)instructed(指导)这 3 个选择都不合乎题义。

12. (a)

只有(a)am not sure(不确信)同前面的 wonder(感到奇怪)的意思比较接近。(b)am sure(肯定，确信)、(c)wander(漫游)、(d)know(知道，懂)这 3 个词的意思都不合乎题义。

4 句子结构答案

I *did not know the way to my hotel*, *so I asked a porter*.

Lesson 26
The best art critics
最佳美术评论家

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer studies art and paints a lot of pictures. Many people do not really understand modern art. Paintings do not always have a meaning. They are sometimes pretty patterns. Young children not only appreciate modern paintings better than others but they notice more. The writer's young sister went into his room yesterday and examined his new picture. He had hung it upside down and she noticed this immediately.

(68 *words*)

作文参考答案

looked at ... but ... understand ... called ... neither ... nor

书信写作答案

第 3 个信头是正确的。注意:英文书信中,写信人的地址位于信纸的右上角,被称为"信头"。地址应该从小到大:街→市→郡或省→国家。地址后面总是接着写日期。

14 Crafton St.,	格拉夫顿大街 14 号
Croydon,	克莱敦市
Surrey,	萨里郡
England.	英格兰
24th April, 19 ____	19 ____年 4 月 24 日

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. These things always happen: I *paint*(1.1); people *pretend* that they *understand*(11.1-2); they... *tell*(1.2); We *like* (1.4); we *like*(1.5); I *think*(1.5); children... *appreciate* (11.5-6); They *notice*(1.7); she... *tells*(1.7); Do you *like*(1.11) (Note: Although the question *Do you like it?* 〈1.11〉 is asked at a particular moment, the meaning of *like* cannot be restricted to this moment.)

These things are happening now: What *are you doing*? (1.10); I'*m hanging*(1.11)

B. believe... are joking... don't know... know... believe... forget... looked... are *you* trying... believe... think... do *you* live... don't know

注解：

一般现在时描述经常发生的动作或陈述客观事实：

I get up at six every day.

我每天 6 点钟起床。

The earth goes round the sun.

地球围绕太阳转。

现在进行时描述目前正在进行或发生的动作：

'What are you doing?' she asked. 'I am hanging this picture on the wall,' I answered.
"你在做什么?"她问道。"我正把这幅画挂到墙上去,"我回答说。

难点练习答案

'Look!' she said, 'isn't that man drunk?'

'I think we should cross the road,' answered her husband.

'It's too late now,' she replied.

'Eh, you two. Look where you're going,' called the drunk. 'Can't you walk in a straight line?'

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)
根据课文第 3 行 Of course, many pictures are not about anything(当然,有很多画是什么"意思"也没有的),只有(a)you can't always 'explain' modern pictures(你是往往不能解释现代画的含义的)最能表达作者暗示的意思。而其他 3 个选择都不是作者的想法。
2. (d)
根据课文的最后两行'It's all right,' she said, 'but isn't it upside down?' I looked at it again. She was right! It was! 只有(d)noticed(注意到)最符合课文实际内容,其他 3 个选择均与事实不符。
3. (c)
本句是陈述一个事实,应该用一般现在时。谓语动词 pretend 是一般现在时,它后面的宾语从句也应该是一般现在时。(a)understood 是过去时,不符合语法;(b)are

understanding 是现在进行时，understand 是一个表示状态的动词，这种动词一般用进行时形式；(d) understands 是一般现在时，只能用于第 3 人称单数，而本句的主语是 They；只有(c) understand 是一般现在时，符合时态要求。

4. (b)

(a) what is it about 的语序不对，在间接引语中应该用陈述句语序；(c) what about it is 和(d) what about is it 语序混乱，意思不通；只有(b) what it is about 符合间接引语的语序，因此只能选择它。

5. (c)

在间接引语中一般疑问句应该用 if 或 whether 引导，句中采用陈述句语序。(a) weather（天气）、(b) that、(d) unless(除非)这 3 个词都不能引导间接引语中的疑问句，只有(c) if 能引导间接疑问句，因此应该选(c)。

6. (d)

(a) a new 有语法错误，应该将冠词去掉才正确；(b) one new 不正确，形容词 new 应该放在 one 前面；(c) new one 也不够正确，因为前面缺少冠词 a；只有(d) a new one 最符合语法，因此应该选(d)。

7. (d)

本句缺少一个系动词，因为句中的 right(对的)是形容词作表语。(a) had 和(b) has 都不能作系动词，因此不符合语法；(c) is 是系动词，但时态不能同前一句保持一致，也不正确。只有(d) was 是系动词，又是过去式，同前一句时态一致。因此应该选(d)。

8. (a)

(a) just as(正像……一样)合乎语法和题义：We like them just as we like pretty curtain material（我们喜爱它们正像我们喜欢漂亮的窗帘布一样）其余 3 个选择均不合语法。

9. (b)

(a) clothes(衣服)不合题义，因为本句的主语 curtain material(窗帘布)不是衣服；(c)substance(物质，实质)也不能同窗帘布等同；(d)matter(物质，物体)也不合题义；只有(b)cloth(布料，布)意思最贴切，它既可以作可数名词，也可以作不可数名词，所以应该选(b)。

10. (d)

本句需要选出同前一句中的 appreciate(欣赏，赏识)意思相近的词，才能同前一句意思相吻合。(a)estimate(估计，估量)与 appreciate 意思不同；(b)esteem(尊敬，尊重)与 appreciate 意思相差更远；(c)value(给……估价，看重)也不同于 appreciate；只有(d)understand and enjoy(理解与欣赏)同 appreciate 的词义最接近，因此(d)是正确答案。

11. (b)

本句需要选出同前一句中的动词 notice(注意到)意思相近的词，才能同前一句意思协调一致。(a)remark(说，谈论)与 notice 意思不同；(c)say(说)也与 notice 不同；(d)take care(当心，保重)更不合题义；只有(b)observe(看到，注意)与 notice 意思相同，因此(b)是正确答案。

12. (d)

本句是对前一句 It's upside down(它挂倒了)的解释说明。填(a)up 之后与前一句意思不太一样；填(b)down 则更不符合前一句的含义；填(c)the right way down 则与前一句意思相反；只有选(d)the right way up 之后全句意思才同前一句 It's upside down 的意思相同，因此应该选(d)。

4 句子结构答案

Please tell me *whether my pictures are good or not*.

Lesson 27
A wet night
雨夜

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The boys put up their tent in the middle of a field and cooked a meal. After their meal they told stories and sang songs but it began to rain so they crept into their tent. The boys woke up in the middle of the night. The tent was full of water so they rushed outside. A stream had formed in the field and flowed right under their tent. (69 *words*)

作文参考答案

I am very tall so I must be careful. Doorways are often low and I usually knock my head against them. My head always hurts. I have never met a tall architect. Have you?

书信写作参考答案

21 Brook St.,
Woodside,
California,
U.S.A.
21st Feb.,19 ____

关键句型练习答案

A. *put up* (1.1); *was done ... cooked* (1.2); *smelled* (1.3); *told ... sang* (1.4); *began* (1.5); *felt* (1.5); *put out ... crept* (11. 5-6); *slept* (1. 7); *woke up* (1. 8); *began* shouting (1. 8); *was* (1. 8); *leapt out* (1.9); *hurried* (1.9); *found* (1.10); *wound* (1.10); *flowed* (1.10)

注解:

一般过去时表示过去发生的事件或过去的状态(参见第3课关键句型):

> Late in the afternoon, the boys *put up* their tent in the middle of a field.
>
> 傍晚时分,孩子们在田野中央搭起了帐篷。
>
> In the middle of the night ... The tent *was* full of water.
>
> 半夜……帐篷里到处都是水。

难点练习答案

1. *put* their toys *away*
2. *put* you *up*
3. *put* my shoes *on*
4. *put down*
5. *putting out*
6. *put up*
7. *put off*
8. *put up with*

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第5～6行 But some time later it began to rain. The boys felt tired so they put out the fire and crept into their tent ... 只有(d)it had begun to rain and they felt tired才是孩子们去睡觉的原因。(a)it was late是事实,但不是他们睡觉的直接原因;(b)they had sung songs不合逻辑;(c)it began to rain只是一方面原因,不够完整。

2. (c)

根据课文最后两行 The stream wound its way across the field and then flowed right under the tent! 只有(c)The boys had camped in the path of a stream(孩子们在一条小溪穿过的地方露营)与课文的实际情况相符。其他3个选择都与课文实际不符。

3. (d)

(a)it put up和(b)their tent put up语序混乱,不合乎语法;(b)put up it也不正确,当宾语是代词时应该将it放在动词和副词之间;只有(d)put their tent up最合乎语法,语序也正确,因此(d)是正确答案。

4. (d)

(a)As soon不能引导状语从句,因为后面缺少as;(b)Just as(正当)可以引导从句,但不太合乎题义,因为它强调两件事情同时发生,而这个句子是表示两件事一前一后发生;(c)Until(直到……为止,在……以前)词义不对;只有(d)Just after(刚刚……之后)最合乎题义。

5. (d)

(a)they had hunger不符合英语惯用法;(b)they had hungry不合乎语法,hungry是形容词,它前面应该是系

动词 be，而不是 had；(c)they were hunger 不合语法，系动词 were 后面应跟形容词 hungry；只有(d)they felt hungry 最合乎语法，因此(d)是正确答案。

6. (b)

只有选(b)near 才能同前一句中的 by the campfire(在篝火旁)意思相同。(a)close 不能作介词，可以是 close to the campfire；(c)besides 是介词，表示"除……外"，词义不对；(d)at(在……上)也不合乎题义。

7. (a)

本句是一般过去时的疑问句，需要选正确的谓语动词。只有选(a)flow 是正确的；(b)flowed 是过去式，在疑问句中已经用助动词 did 提问了，就不应该用过去式了；(c)flew是 fly(飞)的过去式，既不合乎题义也不合乎时态；(d)fly 词义不正确。

8. (d)

(a)sing songs(唱歌)、(b)tell stories(讲故事)、(c)play(玩)这 3 个选择都不能同前面的 They cooked a meal 构成因果关系，因此不合逻辑。只有(d)eat(吃)能与 They cooked a meal 构成因果关系，所以(d)是正确答案。

9. (d)

本句是对前一句 The boys had put out the campfire(孩子们扑灭了篝火)的解释说明。(a)switched on(打开电源开关)不合题义；(b)on fire(着火)意思不通；(c)on(打开的)指电源而不是指火；(d)alight(着火的，照亮的)是正确的，因此只有选(d)才能同前一句意思相符。

10. (c)

只有选(c)were very quiet(很安静)才与前面的 They crept into their tent(他们钻进帐篷)意思相配。因为 creep 有"蹑手蹑脚"的含义。(a)made a lot of noise(制造

很多噪音)、(b)ran quickly(快跑)、(d)were very noisy(非常吵闹)这 3 个选择都不合乎逻辑。

11. (c)

只有(c)comfortable(舒适的)最符合句子的要求,因为系动词 were 后面应该跟形容词作表语,说明 sleeping bags 的状况。(a)a comfort、(b)in comfort 与(d)comfortably 词性不对,不合题义。

12. (c)

只有(c)deeply 才与前一句 soundly 的意思相同。(a)noisily(吵闹地)与(b)fast(快)都不合题义;(d)good(好的)是形容词,不能修饰动词 slept。

4 句子结构答案

As soon as this *was done*, *they cooked a meal over an open fire*.

Lesson 28
No parking
禁止停车

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Jasper White believes in ancient myths. Car owners always park their cars outside his gate, so he has put up 'No Parking' signs but they have not paid any attention to them. Now he has put an ugly stone head over his gate. It is the head of Medusa, the Gorgon. He wants her to turn car owners to stone but she has not done so yet. (65 *words*)

作文参考答案

My wife drives a car. She has driven a car for many years and she says that women drivers do not deserve their bad reputation. Yet, on the road, she often criticizes other women.

书信写作答案

第一个信头是正确的：

19 High Lane,

Newton,

Middlesex,

10th September, 19 ____

(因为是给同住在英国的人写信，所以没必要写国名

England。)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *has* just *bought*(l.2); *has had*(l.3); *has parked*(l.4); *has not been able*(l.5); *has put up*(l.6); *have not had*(l.7); *has put*(l.8); *have* ever *seen*(l.9); *has been turned*(l.10)

注解:

现在完成时表示开始于过去并持续到现在的动作,或在过去不确定的时间里发生但与现在有某种联系的动作。要注意与现在完成时连用的表示时间的词或词组:

He *has just bought* a new house in the city.

他刚在城里买下一所新房子。

I *have been to* New York *three times so far*.

迄今为止我去了纽约3次。

难点练习答案

2. who/that　3. whose　4. which　5. that/which

注解:

1. 当关系代词作定语从句的宾语时,可以省略。
2. who 和 that 都可以作定语从句的主语,who 只能指人,而 that 既可以指人也可以指物。
3. whose 作定语从句的修饰主语的形容词。
4. which 和 that 都可以作定语从句的主语和宾语,which 只能指物,而 that 可以指人,也可以指物。
5. whom 作定语从句的宾语,只能指人。

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

根据课文第3行... he has had trouble with cars and their owners ...可以看出只有(c)is angry with cars and their owners who park in front of his house与课文的实际情况相符。(a)doesn't like cars and their owners和(b)doesn't like cars都不够准确，其实作者并不是不喜欢所有的汽车和它们的主人，而是停在他住宅前面的小汽车。(d)can't get his car out of his garage正好与事实相反，课文中的情况是he has not been able to get his car into his garage...。

2. (d)

本句中的Medusa是古希腊神话中的3位蛇发女怪之一，因此，只有(d)he believes in ancient myths(他相信古代神话)是正确的，与课文事实相符，其他3个选择都不符合事实。

3. (b)

本句的主语people(人们，人民)是单数形式但有复数的意义，它通常与复数形式的动词连用。(a)believes只能用于第3人称单数；(c)are believing是进行时，believe是一个表示状态的动词，一般不用于进行时态；(d)believing是现在分词，不能作谓语；只有(b)believe可以作people的谓语。

4. (b)

这是一个现在完成时的句子，只有(b)for能引导表示一段时间的短语，用于完成时中。而(a)since不能与表示一段时间的短语连用；(c)about不合语法，它后面可以跟一个具体的表示一段时间的短语，如for about 3 years；(d)ago不能用于完成时态，只能用于过去时。

5. (c)

只有(c)That's why(那就是为什么)是表示原因或理由的,指前面提到的事情,说明他为何不能把车开进去。而(a)For this 不明确,可以讲 for this reason,(b)Because(因为)和(d)Because of 都不合逻辑。

6. (d)

(a)an ugly one、(b)an ugliest one 和(c)ugliest one 这 3 个选择都与前面句子相矛盾。只有选(d)之后才合乎前一句的含义:It's one of the ugliest faces I have ever seen(这是我所见过的最丑陋的面孔之一)。

7. (b)

只有选(b)Not one 最合乎语法。(a)No one 可以独立作主语,后面不应跟 of them;(c)No 不合语法,应该是 none of them;(d)Even one 不合题义。

8. (d)

(a)an ancient 中形容词 ancient 前不应该加冠词 an;(b)ancient(古老的,古代的)不能用来形容现代人;(c)an old 中形容词 old 作表语时前面不应有冠词 an;(d)old 可以作表语,说明人的年龄老或年纪大,所以只能选它。

9. (c)

(a)often(经常)、(b)never(从不)、(d)sometimes(有时)这 3 个词都不合题义。只有(c)seldom(很少,不常)相当于 rarely,合乎题义。所以用(c)才能同前一句 He is a rare people(他是个少见的人)意思相吻合。

10. (d)

(a)guides(向导)、(b)conductors(售票员)、(c)leaders(领导)这 3 个词都不合乎题义。只有(d)drivers(司机)意思最贴切。

11. (b)

(a)labels(标签)、(c)signals(信号,暗号)、(d)notes(便条,笔记)这3个选择词义都不够恰当,不合题义。只有(b)notices(通告,通知)词义最贴切。

12. (a)

只有(a)affected(影响,打动)最合乎题义,才能同前一句 The signs haven't had any effect(这些牌子没有任何效果)的意思一致。(b)effected(生效)、(c)resulted in(造成,导致)、(d)imposed(强加于)这3个词意思都不合题义。

4 句子结构答案

I asked him what *it was*.

Lesson 29
Taxi!
出租汽车！

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Captain Ben Fawcett has bought a small Swiss aeroplane and (he) uses it as a taxi. It is a 'Pilatus Porter'. It can not only carry seven passengers but also land anywhere. Captain Fawcett has taken passengers to many strange places in his plane. He refused to fly a businessman to Rockall. The journey was too dangerous. (57 *words*)

作文参考答案

The plane not only flew close to the river, but also flew under a bridge. Then it climbed into the air. The people on the bridge waved to the pilot yet he did not notice them.

书信写作答案

第 2 个信头是正确的：

19 High Lane,
Newton,
Middlesex,
England,
10th September, 19 ____

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. What happened: *flew* (1.6); *landed* (1.8); *landed* (1.9); *wanted* (1.10); *did not take* (1.11)

What has happened: *has bought* (1.1); *has begun* (1.1); *has flown* (11.7-8); *has* just *refused* (11.9-10)

(请参见第 5 课关键句型)

难点练习答案

1. bring　2. fetch　3. refused　4. deny
5. Very

注解:

1. bring 带来,强调由某处带来某物
   fetch 取来,强调去某地取某物并带回
2. refuse 拒绝(一个请求或做某事等)
   deny 否认(一种指控)
3. very 很,非常
   too 太,过于

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第 3～4 行 The most surprising thing about it, however, is that it can land anywhere ... 可以判断只有(b)是正确的,it doesn't need a runway to land on(它着陆时不需要跑道)正是课文所暗示的这个飞机的令人惊奇之处。其他 3 个选择都不能表明这飞机的令人惊奇之处。

2. (c)

根据课文第 7～8 行... Captain Fawcett has flown passengers to many unusual places 和最后一行... but Captain Fawcett did not take him because the trip was too dangerous 可以看出(c) will fly passengers anywhere except very dangerous places(将载运旅客去任何地方,除了非常危险的地方)是正确的结论,其他3个选择都过于片面和绝对了。

3. (c)

(a) who is: 句中修饰的词是物而不是人,因此不能用 who 作关系代词;(b) whom is: whom 作定语从句中的宾语,而本句需要的是作主语的关系代词;(d) whose is 不合语法;只有(c) which is 是正确的,which 既可以作定语从句的主语,又可以作宾语。

4. (b)

这是一个带形容词比较级的句子,已经有连词 than。(a) most surprising 和(d) most surprised 都是最高级,不合乎语法;(d) more surprised 虽然是比较级,但 surprised(感到惊奇)主语应该是人,而本句的主语是 it,故不能选(d);只有(b) more surprising(更令人惊奇的)最合语法和题义。

5. (d)

(a) From then 不是正确表达方式,应该是 from then on;(b) By then 和(c) By that time 都有"到那时"的意思,指截止到过去的某一时间,都不能用于现在完成时;只有(d) Since that time(从那时起)是正确的表达方式,可以用于现在完成时。

6. (b)

这是一个被动语态的句子,需要选一个合适的介词表示

行为主体，即动作的执行者，(a)from、(c)with 和(d)out of 都不用于被动语态，只有(b)by 合乎语法，表示执行动作的人。

7. (a)

只有(a)He wanted the pilot 才能同前一句 The man wanted to fly to Rockall 的意思相符。而(b)He wanted 不合乎逻辑；(c)The pilot he wanted 不是主谓结构，不合语法；(d)The pilot the man wanted 同(c)一样，也不合语法。

8. (b)

本句需要选出同前一句中的 unusual(不寻常的)意思相反的词，才能同前一句意思相吻合。(a)accustomed(习惯于)不是 unusual 的反义词；(c)usually(通常)是副词，也不是 unusual 的反义词；(d)used to(习惯于)也不合题义；只有(b)common(常见的，寻常的)是 unusual 的反义词，因此(b)是正确答案。

9. (b)

只有(b)sowing(播种)最合乎逻辑："耕好的田地是准备播种的"。(a)sewing(缝纫)与耕地无关，不合逻辑；(c)seeding(结出种子)也有"播种"的意思，但作及物动词，常与 with 连用，如 seed the field with wheat，故此句不应该选(c)；(d)growing(生长，长大)不合题义。

10. (b)

只有(b)It is far from anywhere(它远离任何地方)才能同前一句 It's a lonely village(那是一座孤零零的村庄)的意思相符。(a)far(远的)没有强调"孤独"，只强调距离的远；(c)alone(单独，独自)没有"孤独"、"寂寞"的含义；(d)the only one(仅有的一个)不合题义。

11. (c)

(a)parts(部分)不一定指的是地方，词义含糊；(b)pieces

(小块)不合题义;(d)sections(部分)同(a)一样,词义含糊;只有(c)spots(地点,场所)含义正确。

12.(b)

只有(b)empty(空的,无人占据的)同前一句中的 deserted(无人问津)意思相同。(a)a desert(*n*. 沙漠)、(c)abandoned(被抛弃的)、(d)wasted(浪费的)这 3 个词都与 deserted 的含义不同。

4 句子结构答案

Captain Fawcett's first passenger was a doctor who flew from Birmingham to a lonely village.

Lesson 30
Football or polo?
足球还是水球?

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer sat by the river last Sunday. Some children were playing games nearby. One of the children kicked a ball hard and it went towards a passing boat. The man in the boat neither saw the ball nor heard people shouting. The ball hit the man and the children ran away. However, the man was not angry and he threw the ball back to the bank. (67 *words*)

作文参考答案

The wind blew his hat into the river. He put out his hand and tried to reach it but he could not so he jumped into the river and got it.

书信写作参考答案

19 High Lane,
Newton,
Middlesex,
England.
10th September, 19 ___

关键句型练习答案

C. 1. Yes, I took some (photographs). No, I didn't take any (photographs).

2. Yes, I bought some (bread). No, I didn't buy any (bread).

3. Yes, I saw some (people). No, I didn't see any (people).

D. 1. Refrigerators are necessary in hot countries.

2. Which river is *the* longest, *the* Nile, *the* Amazon, or *the* Mississippi?

3. Heyerdahl crossed *the* Pacific on *a* raft.

4. Why is Britain sometimes called *the* United Kingdom?

5. We sailed up *the* Red Sea and then went through *the* Suez Canal.

注解：

1. some 和 any 的用法，请参见第 6 课的关键句型。

2. 冠词 a 和 the 的用法：

在人名和地名前面不加冠词 a 或 the：

I went to America last year.

我去年去了美国。

但是在一些知名的海洋、河流、山脉和一些由普通名词构成的国名前，要加定冠词 the：

Paris is on *the* Seine.

巴黎座落在塞纳河上。

Would you like to go to *the* People's Republic of China?

你想去中华人民共和国吗？

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

根据课文第 2 行 I like sitting by the Wayle on fine afternoons，只有(a) likes sitting on the bank of the river when it's fine 最符合课文的实际情况，其他 3 个选择均不是课文所提及的情况。

2. (a)

根据课文第 6～7 行 Some people on the bank called out to the man in the boat, but he did not hear them 可以看出，只有(a)Some people tried to warn the man about the ball (一些人设法提醒这个人注意球)是真实的，其他 3 个选择均与课文的实际内容不符。

3. (d)

在河流的名字面应该加定冠词。本句中的 Wayle 是河流名，因此只有(d)the Wayle 最正确，而其他 3 个选择(a)a Wayle、(b)Wayle 与(c)this Wayle 都不合乎语法。

4. (a)

前一句中的介词 across 是“横越”、“从一边到另一边”的意思，要选出同它意思相近的词，才能同前面句子意义相同。(b)over(越过)、(c)round(环绕，绕过)与(d)along(沿着)这 3 个词都不够恰当。只有(a)through(穿过，从一边进另一边出)同 across 的含义相同。

5. (b)

只有(b)hard(用力地)符合题义。(a)hardly(几乎不)不合题义；(c)hardy(强壮的)是形容词，不能修饰动词；(d)hardily是副词，有“大胆地”、“刚毅地”的意思。

6. (c)

只有选(c)in the direction(朝着……的方向)才能同前面一句 The ball went towards a passing boat(球向着一只划过来的小船飞去)的意思相符。(a)forwards (*adv.* 向前方)词义不当;(b)forward (*adj.* 向前的,在前部)也不合题义;(d)in direction 不合语法。

7. (c)

只有选(c)couldn't be seen 才能同前一句 There weren't any in sight(一个也看不见)的含义相符。(a)couldn't see 是主动语态,不合题义,因为本句强调"被看见"应该用被动语态;(b)hadn't seen 语态、时态都不正确;(d)weren't seen(没有被看见)是过去式,表示一种事实。本句强调他们"能否"被看见,而不是强调没被看见这一事实。

8. (c)

前一句中的 rowing 是"划船"的意思,只有(c)oars(船桨)是划船用的。(a)rows(行,争吵)、(b)sticks(手杖,拐杖)、(d)rudder(船或飞机的舵)都不是划船用的。

9. (d)

(a)cried(喊叫)不合语法,不能直接跟宾语;(b)cried with 表示喊叫的原因;(c)cried for(为……喊)也不正确;只有(d)cried to(向……喊)最合乎语法。

10. (a)

只有(a)hear(听到)词义正确。(b)listen to(听)强调动作,而不强调结果;(c)mind(介意,照料)不合题义;(d)take care of(照看)也不合题义。

11. (d)

(a)knocked at(敲)、(b)beat(打,敲,表示连续地做)、(c)bounced(指球跳起,弹回)这 3 个词意思都不够贴切。只有(d)hit(打,击打)词义最合题义。

12. (d)

只有(d)disappeared(消失)是前半句中的 run away 的结果。(a)dismissed(解散,开除)、(b)disturbed(妨碍,打扰)、(c)displaced(使……脱离正常位置)这 3 个词都不合题义。

4 句子结构答案

The ball struck him so *hard that he nearly fell into the water*.

Lesson 31
Success story
成功者的故事

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Frank Hawkins was telling the writer about his experiences as a young man. Frank used to work in a small shop as a boy. He used to repair bicycles there. He bought his own shop in 1958 and he made spare parts for aeroplanes in his twenties. He employed a lot of people in a few years. His wife came into the room after a while. She wanted him to repair their grandson's bicycle. (74 *words*)

作文参考答案

Frank not only repaired his grandson's bicycle, but went for a ride on it as well. He told me later: 'I make aeroplanes, but I prefer bicycles'.

书信写作答案

第 2 个信头是正确的:

214 Duke St.,
Perth,
Western Australia.
14th May, 19 ____

关键句型练习答案

A. What was happening: *was telling* (1.1); *was* still *smiling* (1.10)

What happened: *retired* (1.2); *saved* (1.5); *bought* (1.6); *had* (1.7); *employed* (1.9); *smiled* when he *remembered* (1.9); *opened* . . . *came in* . . . *wanted* (11.10-11)

What used to happen: *used to work* (1.3); *used to work* (11.4-5); *used to make* (1.7)

C. . . . worked/was working. . . sat/was sitting. . . was looking. . . were passing. . . stopped. . . got. . . were/had been. . . used to come/came. . . used to go/went. . . were. . . quarrelled. . . had never seen/saw. . . got/was getting. . . called. . . hurried

注解：

过去进行时和一般过去时请参见第7课关键句型。

used to 表示过去经常发生的事情：

. . . as a boy he used to work in a small shop.

……他小时候在一家小铺里做工。

难点练习答案

1. experienced　2. jobs　3. job　4. save

注解：

1. experience *n*. & *v*. 经验，经历，不能作定语

experienced *adj*. 有经验的

2. job *n*. 工作，是可数名词，可以用复数形式 jobs，也可以用单数 a job

work *n*. 工作,是不可数名词,不能有复数形式

3. save *v*. 节省,储存

economize *v*. 节省,常与 on 连用

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第 4~5 行 ... he used to work fourteen hours a day. He saved money for years ... 可以看出,只有(d)worked hard and saved his money 能概括他年轻时的所作所为,其他 3 个选择都不够完整。

2. (b)

根据课文最后两句 ... when the door opened and his wife came in. She wanted him to repair their grandson's bicycle! 只有(b)but he might occasionally repair a bicycle(但是他有时修理自行车)最符合课文的实际情况,其他 3 个选择都与事实不符。

3. (a)

前一句 Frank used to work in a small shop 的含义是"弗兰克过去曾在一家小铺里工作,现在已经不在那儿工作了",只有(a)doesn't any more(不再做了)最合乎题义。(b)still does(仍然做)、(c)is now(现在)、(d)has never done anything 这 3 个选择都不合乎逻辑。

4. (c)

只有(c)each(每)才与前一句中的 a 意思相同。(a)one、(b)some、(d)a 这 3 个选择都不合题义。

5. (a)

只有选(a)his own 最合乎语法。(b)his's、(c)his' own 与(d)his' 这 3 个选择都不是正确的表达方式。

6. (a)

本句应该用被动语态才合乎题义。(b)employed 和(d)employ(雇用)都是主动语态,故不应该选(b)和(d);(c)are employed 是被动语态,但时态不正确,因为句子中的时间状语是 In his twenties(他二十几岁时),所以应该用过去式;只有(a)were employed 是被动语态,过去式,最合乎语法,因此只能选(a)。

7. (d)

从回答中可以看出,只有选(d)Whose is 最合乎语法。(a)Who's is、(b)Whoses 和(c)Who's 都是错误的形式。

8. (a)

(a)director(工厂、公司的主任,指导者),(b)headmaster(校长),(c)superior(上级,上司),(d)leader(领导,领袖)。本句只有选(a),词义最贴切。

9. (b)

只有(b)economise(节省)同前面的 saved money 意思一致,所以应该选(b)。(a)spare it(节省,爱惜)只能用于否定或疑问句中,故不能选;(c)keep it(保留,保存它)不合题义;(d)rescue it(解救,救出)也不合题义。

10. (c)

只有(c)factory(工厂)最合题义。(a)industry(工业)词义不对;(b)fabric(织物,建筑物的墙、房顶等)也不合题义;(d)workhouse(贫民救济院,感化院)更不合逻辑。

11. (a)

只有(a)They worked for him(他们为他干事)才与前一句 He employed over seven hundred people(他雇用了七百多人)的含义相符。(b)He worked for them(他为他们工作)、(c)They employed him(他们雇用了他)、(d)They were in charge(他们负责)这 3 个选择都不正确。

12. (c)

(a) went in(进去)方向不对，应该是 came in(进来)；(b)entered in 和(d)entered into 都不符合语法；只有(c)entered(进入)最符合语法和题义。

4 句子结构答案

She wanted *him to repair their grandson's bicycle*!

Lesson 32
Shopping made easy
购物变得很方便

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

A detective watched a well-dressed woman in a large store one Monday. She bought a few small articles and then she chose an expensive dress. The assistant wrapped it up for her and the woman took it with her. She did not pay for it, so the detective arrested her. The assistant was her daughter. She gave her mother a free dress once a week. (66 *words*)

作文参考答案

I arrived at the office late as usual but Mr. Blake saw me and he was very angry. 'This is your last day here, Jones,' he said. 'You can either stay here or go home!'

书信写作参考答案

504 West 94th St.,
New York,
N.Y.,
U.S.A.
24th June, 19 ____

关键句型练习答案

A. People are not *so honest as* they once were (1.1); The temptation...is *greater than* ever before (11.1-2); there were *fewer* people... *than* usual (11.4-5); it was *easier*...to watch her (11.5-6); one of *the most expensive* dresses (11.7-8); wrapped it... *as quickly as* possible (11.8-9)

注解：

比较级和最高级请参见第8课关键句型。

注意：除了比较级和最高级外，还可以用 as ... as、not so ... as 表示同级比较，意思是"同……一样"、"同……不一样"：

People are not *so* honest *as* they once were.

人们不再像以前那样诚实了。

He is *as* old *as* I am.

他和我年龄一样大。

难点练习答案

One day ... *a* postcard ... *an* excursion ... *one* thing ... *a* fax ... *a* form ... *a* fax of *one* word

注解：

关于 a 和 one 的用法，请参见第6课关键句型。a 和 one 都是表示"一个"，但它们的词性不同，含义也有些不同，a 是冠词，可以用在单数可数名词前，表示"一个"：

There is a cup on the table.

桌子上有个茶杯。

one 是数词，强调数量是"一个"，而不是二个或三个……：

There is only one cup on the table.

桌子上仅有一个茶杯。

在一些短语中只能用 one，而不可以用 a 替换。如：One Monday, One day, One evening 等。

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

根据课文第 5～6 行 ... so it was easier for the detective to watch her. The woman first bought a few small articles 可以看出，只有(c)buy a few things 与课文实际情况相符。(a)every Monday：这个妇女总是星期一去大商场，这是事实，但这不是侦探当时看到的情形；(b)pay the assistant for the dresses 和(d)put the dresses in her bag 都与课文的实际情况不符。

2. (c)

根据课文第 10～11 行 ... the detective found out that the shop assistant was her daughter 可以判断出只有(c)she was related to one of the assistants(……她与其中的一个售货员有亲属关系)是为什么这女人能很容易地偷窃的原因，其他 3 个选择都不是她偷窃成功的原因，所以应该选(c)。

3. (c)

只有选(c)less(较少的)才能使这个句子同前一句 People are not so honest as they once were(人们不再像以前那样诚实了)的含义相同。其他 3 个选择都不正确：(a)as 和(d)fewer 不合语法，意思不通；(b)so(如此地)词义不对，不合题义。

4. (b)

前一句用了比较级 ... fewer ... than usual (……比平时少),本句只有选(b)not as many as usual(不如平时那么多)才能同前一句的比较级意思相吻合。(a)as many as usual(和平时一样多)与前面的比较级意思不一致;(c)as few as usual(像平时一样少)也不合题义;(d)more than usual(比平时多)正好和前面的比较级意思相反。

5. (b)

只有(b)some(一些)与前一句中的 a few(几个)意思最接近,因此应该选(b)。(a)a little(一点)和(c)one(一个)都不等于 a few;(d)three(3 个)是一个具体的数字,而 a few 可能包含 3 个但也可能多于 3 个,故不能选(d)。

6. (c)

这是一个一般过去时疑问句,需选出正确的谓语动词。(a)chosen 是过去分词,不能用在一般过去时中;(b)chose 是过去式,本句已有助动词 did 提问了,故不能用动词的过去式;(d)choosing 为现在分词,不能用于一般过去时作谓语动词;只有(c)choose 是动词原形,应该用在一般过去时疑问句中作谓语动词,所以(c)是正确答案。

7. (a)

只有(a)in 强调地点"在……里"最合乎题义。(b)of 强调所属"……的",不如(a)正确;(c)from(从,来自)不合题义;(d)to(对于)强调方向,一般不能引导作定语的短语。

8. (d)

(a)looked(看)要与介词连用才能带宾语,因此不能选(a);(b)looked for(寻找)与前一句中的 watched 意思不符;(c)looked after(照看,照顾)也与 watched 的意思不符;(d)looked at(注视,观看)最接近 watched 的含义,所以应该选(d)。

9. (a)

只有(a)things(东西)同前一句中的 articles(物品)意思相近,所以只能选(a)。(b)pieces(件,块)、(c)bits(小块,少量)、(d)parts(部分)这 3 个词都同 articles 的含义不同。

10. (d)

(a)papered(用壁纸糊墙),(b)turned(转动,摺起来),(c)enveloped(包装,包围),(d)made a parcel of(把……包成包裹)。只有(d)同前一句中的 wrapped(包裹)的意思相同,而其他 3 个选择词义都不够准确,因此(d)是正确答案。

11. (b)

只有(b)was caught(被抓获)同前一句中的 was arrested 意思相同。(a)escaped(逃跑)、(c)was stopped(被阻止)、(d)was seen(被看见)这 3 个选择都与 was arrested 的意思不同。

12. (c)

(a)was priceless(无价的,无法估价的)、(b)was worthless(无价值的,无用的)、(d)was grateful(感激的)这 3 个选择均与前一句中的 free(免费的)含义不同。只有(c)cost nothing(一分钱也没花)同 free 的含义最接近。所以应该选(c)。

4 句子结构答案

One Monday morning, there were fewer people in the shop than usual when the woman came in, so it was easier for the detective to watch her.

Lesson 33
Out of the darkness
冲出黑暗

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The girl set out from the coast one afternoon and was caught in a storm. Her boat struck a rock, so she jumped into the sea. She swam eight miles that night. She reached the shore early next morning. She had seen a light high up on the cliffs and she climbed up. She found herself in hospital a day later. (61 *words*)

作文参考答案

On Sunday I wanted to go to a football match. It not only rained all day but it was cold as well, so I stayed at home and watched the match on television.

书信写作参考答案

17 Howland St.,
Grimsby,
Lincs.,
England.
18th May, 19 ____

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. 1. The girl set out from the coast.

2. She jumped into the sea.

3. She swam to the shore.

B. 1. to　2. from/out of　3. (up) to　4. for/from

5. from...to/to...from　6. at　7. to　8. from

C. 1. A bird flew into the room.

2. The parachutist jumped from the aeroplane.

3. The child pointed at the fat lady.

4. Put the milk in the refrigerator.

难点练习答案

1. the other day　2. passed　3. next　4. past

注解:

1. the other day 不久前的一天,表示过去的时间

the next day 第 2 天

2. pass *v*. 经过,通过

past *prep*. 从……经过,超过

adj. 过去的

n. 过去

adv. 过去

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第 2～4 行 One afternoon she set out from the coast in a small boat ... Towards evening, the boat struck

a rock and the girl jumped into the sea 可以推测只有(d)for about four hours(大约四小时)最接近这女孩在船上所呆的时间。因为她下午起航，将近傍晚时船遇难，所以她不可能在船上停留(a)all day(一整天)、(b)all night(一夜)或(c)for about ten hours(大约 10 小时)，因此(d)是最正确答案。

2. (b)

根据课文第 1 句 Nearly a week passed before the girl was able to explain what had happened 可以看出，只有(b)but some time passed before she could explain what had happened to her 与课文的实际情况相符，其他 3 个选择均不符合事实。

3. (d)

只有(d) What happened to her? 最合乎语法；而(a)happen不合语法，如果是一般现在时，what 后面应跟单数形式的动词；(b)was happened 语态不对，应为主动语态；(c)happening 是现在分词，不能作谓语。

4. (a)

只有(a)having spent 最符合语法和题义。这是现在分词的完成式，在句子中作时间状语，表示已经完成的动作。(b)having spending 有语法错误，having 后面应跟过去分词；(c)when spending(当……逗留时)不合题义；(d)had spent 是过去完成时，不能作表示时间的短语。

5. (c)

这个疑问句是对距离提问的，回答是 Eight miles。(a)away far 和(b)far from 都不符合语法；(d)long(长)是对长度或时间提问的，不太合题义。只有(c)far away 最合语法和题义。

6. (b)

只有(b)any more才能同前一句 That was all she remembered(她所记得的就是这些)的含义相同。(a)some more 不能用于否定句中;(c)no more 不合题义,在否定句中不应该再用 no more 而形成双重否定;(d)none more 不是正确的表达方式,因此不合语法和题义。

7. (b)

只有(b)to 最正确。介词 to 表示方向,有"向"、"去"、"到"的含义,它可以同 take 连用表示"把……带到"。其他3个选择(a)at the、(c)in、(d)in the 虽然也都表示地点,但没有"到"的含义,它们一般不同 take 连用。

8. (c)

根据前一句 She was caught in a storm(她遇上了暴风雨)的含义,本句需要选出描绘天气的词。(a)fine(晴的)不合题义;(b)warm and sunny(暖和而有阳光的)也不合题义;(d)wet(潮湿的)不够确切;只有(c)very rough(有暴风雨的,狂暴的)词义最准确。

9. (c)

只有(c)in front of(在……前面)同前一句中的 ahead 意思相符。(a)behind(在……后面)、(b)beside(在……旁边)、(d)above(在……上方)词义都不正确。

10. (c)

本句的主语 Cliffs 是"悬崖"、"峭壁"的意思,需要选出一个能描述它特征的形容词。(a)narrow(窄的)、(b)wide(宽的)、(d)sharp(尖锐的)这3个词都不是悬崖的特征。只有(c)steep(陡峭的)最能描述悬崖的特征。

11. (a)

前一句 She struggled up the cliff(她挣扎着往峭壁上爬

去)说明这是很不容易做的事情,所以只能选(a)easy。其他 3 个选择(b)hard(艰苦的)、(c)difficult(困难的)、(d)long(长的)词义都不合题义。

12. (c)

本句需要选出同前一句中的 remembered(想起)意思相同的词,才能同前一句含义相符。(a)remind(提醒,使想起)与 remember 含义不太一样;(b)memorise(记住,熟记)强调有意去记或背下来;(d)mind(介意,留意)与 remember 意思不同;只有(c)recollect(想起,记起)与 remember 的意思相同,因此只能选(c)。

4 句子结构答案

On *arriving at the shore, the girl struggled up the cliff*.

Lesson 34
Quick work
破案"神速"

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Dan Robinson was worried. He had received a letter from the local police. Yesterday he went to the station. He is not worried any more. The police have found his bicycle. Dan was not only surprised but amused as well. His bicycle was stolen twenty years ago. He was fifteen then. (51 *words*)

作文参考答案

The man was not only tired but hungry as well. However all the hotels in the town were full, so he went to the police station. The police gave him a meal and a bed for the night.

书信写作答案

Pl., Ave., St., Rd., Sq.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. 1. Dan Robinson has been worried all the week.

2. Dan was asked to call at the local police station.

3. Dan wondered why he was wanted by the police.

4. Dan was told at the station that his bicycle had been found.

5. Dan's bicycle was picked up in a small village four hundred miles away.

6. The bicycle is being sent to Dan's home.

7. Dan was surprised and amused when he heard the news.

8. Dan was amused because he never expected the bicycle to be found.

9. The bicycle was stolen twenty years ago.

(关于被动语态请参见第 10 课关键句型)

难点练习答案

1. on　　2. off　　3. out　　4. at

8　多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第 3 行 Dan wondered why he was wanted by the police... 可以判断 (d) he didn't know why the police wanted him 是他感到焦虑的真正原因，所以应该选(d)。其他 3 个选择(a)he recieved a letter、(b)the police wanted him、(c)he went to the station 都是课文提及的情况，但不是他焦虑的真正原因。

2. (a)

根据课文第 8～9 行 Dan was most surprised... he never expected the bicycle to be found 可以判断，只有(a)had probably forgotten all about his bicycle(可能把他的自行车早忘得一干二净了)符合他当时的心情，是正确答案，其

他3个选择都不符合他当时的心理感受。

3. (b)

(c)yet 和(d)anymore 都不合语法，因为它们常用于否定句，而本句是肯定句；(a)even 不合题义，应该同比较级连用才正确；(b)still 可以用在肯定句中表示“仍然”、“还”，因此只能选(b)。

4. (c)

(a)had been finding 和(d)have been finding 都不是正确的时态，动词 find(找到)强调结果，不应该用进行时态；(b)had been found 语态不对，因为本句的主语是人，是动作的执行者，故不能用被动语态；(c)had found 最合乎时态和语态，因此只能选(c)。

5. (a)

本句是对地点提问的疑问句，回答是 In a small village，只有(a)Where 是问地点的，所以(a)是正确答案，而其他3个选择(b)Why、(c)What、(d)When 都不是问地点的。

6. (d)

(a)to 和(b)to be 都不合乎语法，因为以 that 引导的是从句，应该有主语和谓语，而不应该是用 to 引导动词不定式；(c)they 也不合乎语法，因为主句动词是过去式，从句也应该是过去时态；(d)they would 是过去将来时，最合乎语法，所以只能选它。

7. (c)

本句有表示过去时间的状语 twenty years ago(20 年前)，因此应该用一般过去时。(a)stolen 是过去分词，不能作谓语；(b)has stolen 是现在完成时，不合乎时态；(d)was stolen 是被动语态，不正确，因为本句的主语是人，是动作的执行者，应该用主动语态；只有(c)stole 是过去式，符合语法，因此应该选(c)。

8. (b)

(a)topical(话题的),(b)local(地方的,当地的),(c)native(出生地的,本地的,本国的),(d)neighbourly(友好的,睦邻的)。只有(b)最适合于这个句子,其他 3 个词都不合题义。

9. (c)

只有选(c)on 之后才表示"拜访",最合乎题义和语法。(a)at 后面应该跟地点,而不应该跟人;(b)in 不是正确表达方式;选(d)up 之后表示"给……打电话",不合题义。

10. (b)

只有选(b)才能同前一句 The bicycle was picked up four hundred miles away(自行车是在 400 英里外发现的)意思相符。picked up(发现,拾到)同 found 意思接近;而(a)picked(挑选,摘)、(c)dropped(丢下,落)、(d)lifted(提起)这 3 个词都不合题义。

11. (c)

前一句中的 was amused 是"感到好笑"、"被逗笑了"的意思。只有(c)laughed(笑)才合乎逻辑。(a)shouted(高喊)、(b)cried(喊叫)、(d)clapped(拍手,鼓掌)这 3 个词都不合乎逻辑。

12. (a)

只有(a)robbed(被偷窃了)才能与前一句 The bicycle was stolen(自行车被偷走了)意思相符。(b)stolen 词义含糊不清,可以解释成"丹被偷了"或"丹被偷了东西";(c)taken 不合题义,"丹被带走了"与前一句意思不符;(d)stealing(正在偷窃)更不符合前一句的含义。

4 句子结构答案

It is *now being sent to his home by train*.

Lesson 35
Stop thief!
捉贼!

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Roy is finding his new job as a bus driver exciting. He saw two thieves in Catford Street recently. They were running out of a shop and Roy drove his bus straight at them, so they dropped the stolen money and got into a car. Roy drove his bus into the back of their car then and damaged it. After this he telephoned the police. Both men were arrested later.

(69 *words*)

作文参考答案

The politician tried to make a speech in the park but no one listened to him. The audience shouted and threw things so the speaker got into his car and drove away.

书信写作参考答案

20 Crawford Ave.,
Cranley,
Dorset,
England.
October 4th, 19 ___

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *used to drive* (1.1); *became* (1.2); *has not regretted* (1.2); *is finding* (1.2); *was driving* (1.3); *saw... rush out... run* (1.4); *was carrying* (1.5); *acted... drove* (1.6); *got... dropped* (1.7); *were trying to get* (1.8); *drove* (1.8); *was moving away* (1.9); *stopped... telephoned* (1.9); *was* badly *damaged... to recognize* (1.10); *stopped* (1.10); *were arrested* (1.11)

C. 1. mean...Do you understand

2. used to smoke...does not smoke

3. was completed

4. have not seen

5. dropped...was crossing

(请参见第26～28课、第31课、第34课关键句型)

难点练习答案

1. so 2. such a 3. so 4. such 5. so

6. such a 7. such an 8. such a

注解：

so 修饰形容词或副词。

such 修饰名词。

such a/an 修饰单数可数名词。

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

根据课文第1～3行 Roy Trenton used to drive a taxi...

He is finding his new work far more exciting，可以推测只有(a)prefers driving a bus to driving a taxi 是正确的，其他 3 个选择都与课文的实际内容不符。

2. (d)

根据课文第 9～10 行 The thieves' car was badly damaged and easy to recognize 可以看出，只有(d)it was easy for the police to catch the thieves(警察很容易抓到小偷)是课文所暗示的结果，前 3 个选择都与课文中的事实不符。

3. (a)

前一句中的 used to drive a taxi 含义是“过去开出租汽车，但现在已经不做了”，只有(a)has stopped driving(已经停止开出租了)同前一句意思相符，所以(a)是正确答案。(b)is used to driving 和(c)got used to driving 都是“习惯开出租”的意思，不合题义；(d)still drives(现在仍然开出租)与前一句的含义相反。

4. (d)

本句中的谓语动词 notice(注意到)后面应该跟不带 to 的动词不定式或现在分词即 notice sb. do/doing sth.。(a)to come、(b)are coming 和 (c)in coming 这 3 个选择都不合乎语法，只有(d)come 是不带 to 的动词不定式，最合乎语法，所以应选(d)。

5. (d)

本句的疑问词 which(哪一个)是针对名词 thief 提问的，只有选(d)The one 最合乎语法和逻辑。其他 3 个选择(a)He、(b)His 和(c)That 都不合乎语法，意思都讲不通。

6. (a)

本句中的 frightened 是过去分词作表语，相当于形容词，只有(a)so 可以修饰形容词，最合乎语法。(b)such 和(c)such a 不能修饰形容词，只能用在名词前；(d)a so 不

合语法,so 前面不应该加冠词 a。

7. (d)

本句只有选(d)too(太)才合乎题义。too 常用于这种结构:It is too + *adj*. + for sb. to do sth.。若选(a)much 和(b)very 虽然语法讲得通,但不符合习惯用法;(c)many 不能修饰形容词,因此不合乎语法。

8. (a)

前一句 He hasn't regretted it 中的 regretted 是"后悔"、"惋惜"的意思。只有(a)isn't sorry about 中的 sorry 有"遗憾"、"惋惜"含义,才能同前一句意思相吻合。(b)doesn't pity(不同情,不怜悯)、(c)isn't pleased with(不满意,不高兴)、(d)doesn't laugh about(不笑话)这 3 个选择都与前一句意思不符。

9. (b)

(a)excited(感到激动的)的主语应该是人,而本句是 it 作形式主语,真正主语是 to drive a bus,故不应该选(a);(c)excite(动词)和(d)excitedly(副词)都不能作表语;只有(b)exciting(令人激动的)形容事物而不是人,最合乎题义,因此应该选(b)。

10. (a)

(b)immediately、(c)at once 和(d)soon 这 3 个词意思相同或相近,都有"快"、"马上"的含义,都不合题义,故都不应该选。(a)directly(直接地,径直地)合乎题义,因此应该选(a)。

11. (d)

只有(d)let it fall(让它掉下)同前一句中的 dropped 的含义相同,所以应该选(d)。(a)let it(让它)、(b)left it(离开,留下它)和(c)fell it(使它倒下)这 3 个选择都与 dropped 意思不符。

12. (d)

本句中的 battered 是“撞坏的”意思。(a)saw it(看到它)、(b)rang the police(给警察打电话)、(c)recognized it(认出它)这 3 个选择都不合逻辑,因为都不是 battered(撞坏)的原因。只有(d)hit it(打,碰撞)是 battered 的原因,所以只能选(d)。

4 句子结构答案

When he was driving along Catford Street recently, he saw two thieves rush out of a shop and run towards a waiting car.

Lesson 36
Across the Channel
横渡海峡

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Debbie Hart is going to swim across the English Channel tomorrow. She is eleven and she is a strong swimmer. Debbie has been trained by her father. He will follow her in a small boat. Debbie's mother will be waiting on the English coast. She swam the Channel herself when she was a girl.

(54 *words*)

作文参考答案

The man on the raft saw the boat so he tried to send a signal. He took off his shirt and waved it but the men on the boat neither saw nor heard him.

书信写作答案

St., Rd., Ave., Sq., Pl., N.Y., W.8., S.W.3.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. What will happen: *will set out* (1.5); *will have* (1.9); *will*

not eat (1.9)

What is going to happen: *is going to swim* (1.1); *is going to set out* (1.2)

What will be happening: *will be watching* (1.7); *will be waiting* (11.9-10)

C. 1. We are going to leave at six o'clock.

2. I am going to pay these bills tomorrow.

3. Are you going to write to him?

4. She is not going to look for a new job.

5. When are you going to buy a new car?

注解：

将来时可以用助动词 shall 或 will 加动词原形表示，也可以用 be going to 加动词原形表示，有时 shall 或 will 同 be going to 可以互换，有时却不能，因为它们的含义有些不同。shall 或 will 是“将要”的意思，而 going to 有“打算”、“想要”的含义。

难点练习答案

1. firm 2. watched 3. look at 4. solid/firm
5. firm

注解：

firm 坚定的，果断的，稳固的

watch 观看（正在发生的事情）

look at 看

soild 固体的，坚硬的

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

只有(a)Both Debbie's parents are very interested in their daughter's attempt to swim the Channel 是正确的,符合课文的实际情况。其他 3 个选择均与课文内容不符。

2. (d)

根据课文第 8 行 Debbie intends to take short rests every two hours(黛比打算每隔两个小时休息一会儿)可以判断,只有(d)will stop at intervals during the swim 符合课文的真实情况,其他 3 个选择都与课文的内容不符。

3. (d)

只有选(d)of 才符合语法和惯用法,sure of 是"确信"、"肯定"的意思。(a)to、(b)for 和(d)in 这几个介词都不能同 sure 搭配。

4. (c)

只有(c)while 是连词,可以引导时间状语从句,表示"当……时"。因此(c)是最合乎语法和题义的,应该选(c)。(a)though meanwhile 不是正确表达方式;(b)meanwhile(与此同时)是副词,不能引导从句;(d)during(在……期间)是介词,也不能引导从句。

5. (d)

本句的回答是 Every two hours,因此可以推断本句是针对频率提问的,只有(d)How often 是对"频率"提问的,所以(d)是正确答案。(a)Since when、(b)How long 和(c)How much 都不是针对频率提问的。

6. (c)

只有选(c)most 最合乎惯用法和题义,most of them 是"他们中的大部分"的意思,因此(c)是正确答案。

(a)more和(d)the more 都不正确，通常可以用 some of them、many of them 或 most of them，但一般不用 more of them 这样的表达方式。(b)the most 也不符合惯用法，在 most of them 这样的短语中不需要加定冠词 the。

7. (c)

只有选(c)among 最合乎题义。among(在……中间)指在许多人或事物中间。而(a)between 的意思是“在两者之间”，而 crowd 是“一群人”的意思，故不能选(a)；(b)beside(在……旁边)不合题义；(d)around(在……周围)也不合题义。

8. (b)

只有(b)make 可以同本句中的 record 连用构成固定短语 make a record，意思是“创造一个记录”。(a)do(做)、(c)build(建筑)和(d)fix(固定)这 3 个词都不能同 record 构成固定短语，所以都不合题义。

9. (a)

(b)success(成功)是名词，不能单独用在动词 be 后面作表语；(c)succession(连续)和(d)a succession 同前一句中的 succeed 意思不符，因此不合逻辑；只有(a)successful (成功的)同 succeed 意思相符，可以用在动词 be 后面作表语，所以应该选(a)。

10. (d)

(a)leader(领导，领袖)、(b)guide(向导)、(c)trainee(受训者)、(d)instructor(教练，教导员)这 4 个选择中只有(d)与前一句中 trained(训练)有关系，因此选(d)最合乎逻辑，其他 3 个选择词义都不合题义。

11. (c)

只有(c)worried(担心，着急)与前一句中的 anxiously(焦虑地)意思相符，因此应该选(c)。(a)sad(忧愁，难过)、

(b)unhappy(不高兴)、(d)thoughtful(沉思的,体贴的)这3个词都与 anxiously 的含义不符。

12. (c)

(a)stay(逗留)、(b)remain(留下,剩下)、(c)relax(放松,轻松)、(d)sleep(睡觉)这4个选择中,只有(c)同前一句中的 take short rests(休息一会儿)的意思最接近,因此应该选(c)。

4 句子结构答案

She is going to set out from the French coast at five o'clock in the morning.

Lesson 37
The Olympic Games
奥林匹克运动会

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The Olympic Games will be held in our country in four years' time, so the government will be putting up new buildings just outside the capital. Kurt Gunter has designed the buildings and workers will have completed the new stadium by the end of next year. The Games will be held in this country for the first time and we are looking forward to them.

(65 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. Both my brother and I are going to the Olympic Games.
2. We bought tickets a long time ago and (we) shall be leaving soon.
3. We shall not only see the Games but visit many parts of the country as well.

书信写作参考答案

60th May/May 6th	21st/June/June 21st
30th July/July 30th	3rd March/March 3rd
22nd April/April 22nd	1st July/July 1st

关键句型练习答案

A. What will happen: *will be held* (1.1); *will be held* (1.5); *will be called* (1.6)

What will be happening: *will be visiting* (1.2); *will be building* (1.3); *will* also *be building* (1.4); *will be watching* (1.9)

What will have happened: *will have completed* (1.7); *will have finished* (1.8)

(请参见第13课关键句型)

难点练习答案

1. holding...looking forward to
2. Look out
3. look...up
4. is holding
5. look...up
6 held...looking forward to

注解:

hold 举行

look out 当心,注意

look up 查阅(字典、参考书等)

look forward to 盼望,期待

look ... up 拜访

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

根据课文第 1～4 行 The Olympic Games will be held in four years' time ... the government will be building new hotels, an immense stadium, and a new Olympic-standard swimming pool,可以判断出只有(c)planned(计划)与课文的实际情况相符,很多新的楼房只是打算(将要)建造,还没有建成,因此应该用 has been planned。其他 3 个选择都有"已经建成"的含义,所以不正确。

2. (b)

根据课文最后一句... because they have never been held before in this country, 只有(b)have never been held before in this country 与事实相符,其他 3 个选择都不符合课文的实际内容。

3. (b)

前一句 Workers will have completed the new roads by the end of this year (工人们将在今年年底把新路铺好)是将来完成时,表示将要完成的动作,实际还没有完成。(a)have already finished(已经完成了)不符合事实;(c)finished a long time ago(很久前完成的)更不正确;(d)are finishing now(正在完成)也不够准确;只有(b)haven't finished yet(还没有完成)与前一句含义相符,所以只能选(b)。

4. (b)

只有选(b)before 才能与前一句的时间状语 By the end of next year(到明年年底前)的含义相符。(a)at(在)强调正好在年底时,与 by the end of next year 的含义有些不同;(c)after(明之后)不合题义;(d)long before(之前很长一

段时间)也不等于 by the end of next year。

5. (b)

前半句 The buildings have been designed by Kurt Gunter ...是现在完成时,强调动作已经完成。只有选(b)are now complete(现已完成)最合乎逻辑,complete 可以作形容词,意思是"完成的"、"结束的",表示状态。(a)are not complete yet(还没完成)、(c)will be completed soon(很快将要完成)、(d)haven't been completed yet(还没完成)这3个选择均不合逻辑。

6. (d)

(a)All we、(b)Us all 和(c)All us 都不是正确的表达方式,意思上都讲不通,只有(d)All of us(我们所有的人)是正确的表达方式,最合语法,因此应该选(d)。

7. (a)

本句需要选一个能引导原因状语从句的连词,句子才完整。(b)why 是疑问词"为什么",不能引导原因状语从句;(c)because of(因为)中因有介词 of,需要跟名词或名词性短语,所以不能引导从句;(d)due to(因为)同 because of 词义相同,也不能引导原因状语从句;只有(a)for是连词,可以引导原因状语从句,意思是"由于",所以只能选(a)。

8. (c)

只有选(c)have 符合惯用法,因为动词 have 有"举行"、"参加"某种活动的意思,如 have a meeting、have sports meet 等。若选(a)make、(b)do 和(d)play 都不符合惯用法。

9. (d)

(a)tall(高的)、(b)wide(宽广的)、(c)high(高的)、(d)huge(巨大的)这 4 个选择中只有(d)同前一句中的

immense(巨大的,庞大的)意思相同,因此应该选(d)。

10.(b)

本句的主语 motor way 是"高速公路"的意思;(a)street(街道)不同于高速公路;(c)avenue(城市里的大街)也不等于 motor way;(d)high street 不是正确表达方式,high way(公路)才是正确表达方式;只有(b)road(路)同 motorway 的含义最接近,因此应该选(b)。

11.(b)

(a)an engineer(工程师)、(b)an architect(建筑师)、(c)a builder(建设者,建筑工人)、(d)a mechanic(机工,机修工)这 4 个词中只有(b)最合乎题义,前一句 Kurt Gunter designed the buildings 表明他的职业一定是建筑师,因此应该选(b)an architect,其他 3 个选择都与他的职业不符。

12.(a)

前一句中的 looking forward to 是"高兴地期待着"的意思。只有(a)pleased(高兴的)与它的含义相符。(b)unhappy(不快乐)、(c)sorry(感到遗憾的)、(d)impatient(没耐心的)这 3 个选择都不合题义。

Lesson 38
Everything except the weather
惟独没有考虑到天气

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer's friend, Harrison, had spent many years in the Mediterranean, but he wanted to retire in England so he bought a house in the country. The summer that year was very bad and he complained about the weather. In the end Harrison not only sold the house but also left the country. (53 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. He bought an old car but it was in a very bad state.
2. The engine was not only worn out but the gearbox was full of sawdust as well.
3. He could neither drive it nor sell it nor even give it away.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. What happened: *returned* (1.2); *bought* (1.4); *went* (1.4); *began* (1.5); *rained* (1.6); *got* (1.7); *acted* (1.8); *was . . . could bear* (1.9); *sold . . . left* (1.9); *ended* (1.10)

What had happened: *had lived* (l.1); *had* often *dreamed* (l.2); *had planned* (l.3); *had* no sooner *returned* (l.4); *had* never *lived* (l.8); *had* hardly *had* (l.9); *had had* (l.10); *had thought* (l.10)

注解：

一般过去时表示过去某一时间发生的事情：

He lived in Shanghai fifteen years ago.

15 年前他住在上海。

过去完成时表示过去某一时刻之前发生的事情：

He had lived in the Mediterranean for many years before he returned to England.

他在回到英国以前曾多年居住在地中海地区。

（请参见第 14 课关键句型练习答案详解）

难点练习答案

A. 1. I had no sooner left the house than it began to rain.

2. We had no sooner hung the picture on the wall than it fell down.

B. 1. continuously 2. continually 3. country

注解：

continuously 连续不断地（It does not stop at all.）

continually 频繁地（At frequent intervals.）

country 乡间，与 city 相对应

countryside 农村

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第 2～3 行 He had often dreamed of retiring in

England and ...,可以推测只有(b)Spending his old age in England 与 Harrison 当时的愿望相符,其他 3 个选择都不是他所期待的。

2. (c)

根据课文第 1 句 My old friend, Harrison, had lived in the Mediterranean for many years before he returned to England,可以判断只有(c)he had spent so long in the Mediterranean, he had forgotten what it was like 是他为什么不能忍受英国天气的原因。(a)It never stopped rainning 与课文实际情况不太符合,课文说总是下雨,并不是"永远不停地下";(b)it was always cold 虽然与课文的内容相符,但不是他为什么不能忍受英国天气的原因;(d)he had never lived in England before 与事实不符,更不是原因。

3. (a)

主句是过去完成时,表示在过去某一时刻之前发生的事情,从句应该由连词 before 引导才合乎时态要求,因此只能选(a)before。(b)when、(c)as soon as 和(d)after 都不合题义。

4. (a)

主句是过去时,从句是虚拟语气,表示与过去事实相反,因此需要选一个能引导虚拟语气的连词。(a)as though 和(d)even if 都可以引导虚拟语气的从句,但是(d)even if (即使)不合逻辑,(a)as though(好像)合乎题义,因此只能选(a)He acted as though he had never lived in England before 而(b)like 和(c)as 都不能引导虚拟句。

5. (c)

只有选(c)any longer 才能同前一句 It was more than he could bear(他再也忍受不住了)的意思相吻合。any

longer 是固定短语常与否定句连用，表示"再也不……"，所以(c)是正确答案。(a)more、(b)longer 和(d)no more 都不符合惯用法。

6. (b)

只有(b)when 可以同本句的 hardly 连用，表示"几乎未来得及……就……"，因此应该选(b)。(a)than、(c)as soon as 和(d)after 都不能同 hardly 连用。

7. (d)

这是一般过去时形式的疑问句，需要选出正确的谓语动词。(a) live (居住) 不合题义，因为回答是 He left immediately;(b)left 是过去式，不合乎语法，因为已经有助动词 did 提问了，应该用动词原形才对;(c)leaves 也不合乎语法，本句不需要用第 3 人称单数形式；只有(d)leave是动词原形，最合乎语法和题义。

8. (d)

前一句中的 retired 是"退休"的意思，只有选(d)he didn't have 才同前句中的 retired 的含义相符。(a)he was going to get、(b)he had 和(c)he would have 都与前一句的意思相反。

9. (b)

前一句中的 settle down 是"定居"、"安家"的意思，本句需要选出同这个动词短语含义相同的词组。(a)rest there (在那儿休息)，(b)live there permanently(永久地居住在那儿)，(c)live there for a while(在那里居住一段时间)，(d)go there for a visit(到那儿去参观，访问)。只有(b)同 settle down 的含义相同，因此(b)是正确答案。

10. (a)

前一句中的 continually 是"频繁地"的意思，表示有间隔的停顿，而不是连续不断。本句只有选(a)stopped 才能

与前一句 It rained continually 的含义接近。其他 3 个选择(b)never stopped、(c)hardly rained at all 和(d)never rained 都与前一句意思不符。

11. (d)

(a)made(制造)、(b)did(做)、(c)conducted(表现,为人)和(d)behaved(举止,表现)这 4 个词中(c)和(d)都适合于这个句子,但(c)conduct 是正式的书面用语,而(d)behave 比 conduct 更常用,更通俗,因此(d)是最佳选择。

12. (d)

(a)suffer(受苦)、(b)put up(举起,张贴)、(c)carry(拿,带)、(d)stand(忍受)。只有(d)同前一句中的 bear(容忍,忍受)意思相同,因此应该选(d)。

Lesson 39
Am I all right?
我是否痊愈?

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Dr. Millington refused to tell his patient, Mr. John Gilbert, whether his operation had been successful. The next day the patient telephoned Dr. Millington and inquired about a certain patient, Mr. John Gilbert. The doctor answered a number of questions about the patient and then asked whether the caller was a relative. The caller then told him who he was.

(60 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. After the telephone call, Dr. Millington was angry, so he went to Gilbert's room.
2. Gilbert was telephoning the nurses and asking questions about himself.
3. Then both the doctor and the patient burst out laughing.

书信写作参考答案

3rd Jan., 28th Feb., 20th Aug., 13th Sept., 22nd Oct

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文描述的情况只有(d) to find out about his operation(查出他手术的情况)是 John Gilbert wanted a bedside telephone(约翰·吉尔伯特要床头电话)的真正目的,而其他3个选择都不是他要床头电话的目的,因此应该选(d)。

2. (a)

根据课文第10行 Then Dr. Millington asked the caller if he was a relative of the patient 可以看出,只有选(a)was a relative of John Gilbert 才符合医生当时的心里猜测,而其他3个选择都不是医生当时想的,所以应该选(a)。

3. (c)

只有(c)to 最合乎语法。(a)at、(b)in、(d)on 这3个介词都不合适。

4. (d)

(a)say him 不合乎语法,say 后面应该加 to,表示"对他说";(b)tell to him 不合语法,tell 后面应不带 to,直接跟间接宾语 him,意思是"告诉他";(c)speak him 也不合语法,speak 后面应该加 to 表示"对他讲"。所以选(d)。

5. (d)

只有(d)是最正确的疑问句 What did he ask for? (他要求得到什么?)回答是:A bedside telephone. (a) For what did he ask 不合语法;(b)What did he ask(他问了什么)后面缺少 for,意思不同了;(c)For what did he ask for 不合语法,前面不应该有 For。

6. (a)

只有选(a)let him go(让他走)才能同前一句 When will he

be allowed to go home(他什么时候可以回家)的含义相同。(b)let him to go 不合乎语法,let 后面的不定式不应该带 to;(c)leave him to go 意思不通,不合逻辑;(d)leave him(离开他)不合题义。

7. (b)

前一句中的 will have to 是"必须"的意思,同情态助动词 must 意思相同,因此本句只有选(b)must do 才能同前一句含义相吻合。(a)has done 不是情态助动词,不合题义;(c)must be doing 为情态助动词加动词的进行时,表示动作正在进行,而前一句用的是将来时,表示"还得"而不是强调动作的进行,所以(c)不是正确答案;(d)must have done 中 must 后面跟完成时表达对过去发生的事情的推测,不合乎逻辑。

8. (a)

(a)surgeon(外科医生)、(b)doctor(医生)指各类医生、(c)nurse(护士)、(d)matron(护士长)。只有(a)最合乎题义。

9. (c)

只有(c)next 才与前一句中的 following day(第 2 天)的意思相同,而其他 3 个选择(a)other (day)、(b)followed (day)和(d)after (day)意思都不正确,所以只能选(c)。

10. (c)

只有(c)a sick man(一个病人)同前一句中的 a patient(病人)意思相同,所以应该选(c)。(a)a sick 和(b)an ill 都不合乎语法,因为 sick 和 ill 都是形容词,意思是"生病的",前面不应该加冠词 a 或 an;(d)not in a hurry(不匆忙)词义不对。

11. (a)

(a)on his own(他独自一个人);(b)lonely(孤独的,寂寞

的)强调主观感受;(c)with himself 不是正确的表达方式,应该是 by himself;(d)unique(独一无二的,惟一的)。只有(a)同前一句中的 alone 意思相同,alone(单独的,独自的)强调客观状态,但不等于"孤独的",所以不能选(b),而应该选(a)。

12. (b)

前一句的 inquired 是"询问"、"打听(消息)"的意思。(c)knowledges 和(d)knowledge 都是"知识"的意思,不太合乎题义;(b)informatiton 是"信息"或"消息"的意思,符合题义,information 是不可数名词,不应该有复数形式,因此不能选(a),只能选(b)。

4 句子结构答案

While *John Gilbert was in hospital*, *he asked his doctor to tell him whether his operation had been successful*, *but the doctor refused to do so*.

Lesson 40
Food and talk
进餐与交谈

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer sat next to Mrs. Rumbold at the dinner party. He tried to make conversation but she was busy eating. He talked about the new play at 'The Globe' and about the holidays. She answered his questions briefly. Then he asked her if she was enjoying her dinner and she answered, 'Young man, if you ate more and talked less, we would both enjoy our dinner!' (67 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. She not only refused to answer any questions but she did not ask any either.
2. She was interested neither in the theatre nor in travel.
3. She liked eating good food but (she) did not like talking about it.

书信写作参考答案

2nd March, 1995; 21st Sept., 1954; 13th Aug., 1976; 1st Dec., 1967; 22nd Jan., 1986; 11th Nov., 1990

关键句型练习答案

1. were　　2. tries　　3. will burn
4. would have to　　5. lost　　6. do not apologize
7. were　　8. won　　9. would not be
10. could

注解：

本句的关键句型是非真实条件句。在这类条件句中，if 从句谈论想像的情况，用一般过去时，主句则推测想像的结果，用过去将来时。这类非真实条件句表示与现在事实相反，又称"虚拟语气"：

If you ate more and talked less, we would both enjoy our dinner!

如果你多吃点，少说点，我们两个都会吃得很好。

如果 if 从句中的动词是 be，那么在任何人称后面都要用 were，在单数和复数名词之后也都用 were：

If I were in your position, I would act differently.

假如我处于你的位置，我会采取不同的作法。

难点练习答案

1. made...do

make a mistake 犯错误　do exercises 做练习

2. does...makes

do business 做生意　make a lot of money 发大财

3. doing...making

do one's best 尽自己最大的努力　make progress 进步

4. made...did

make the beds 整理床铺　do some shopping 买东西

3　多项选择练习

1. (c)

根据课文所描述的情况可以判断只有(c)he wanted to be sociable(他想要表现出友好的或好交际的)是作者向兰伯尔德夫人提问题的原因,其他 3 个选择都不符合他问问题的意图。

2. (c)

根据课文第 2 ~ 3 行 Mrs. Rumhold was a large, unsmiling lady ... She did not even look up when I took my seat beside her 可以看出只有(c)rude(粗鲁的,无礼的)最能描述 Mrs. Rumhold 的行为。(a)hungry(饿的)、(b)polite(有礼貌的)、(d)talkative(爱说话的)这 3 个选择都与课文描述的情况不符。

3. (b)

只有(b)during(在……期间)最合乎语法,而(a)on、(c)in 和(d)along都不是正确的表达方式,因此应该选(b)。

4. (c)

(a)Please to sit 不合乎语法,please 后面不应该有 to;(b)To sit 不合乎语法,表示命令或请求的祈使句,前面不应该用 to;(d)Please sitting 也不合语法,祈使句应使用动词原形,而 sitting 是现在分词;只有(c)Please sit 是标准的祈使句形式,合乎语法,因此只能选(c)。

5. (a)

只有(a)sat (坐下)与前一句中的 took my seat(坐)的意思和时态相符,因此应该选(a)。(b)seated(使坐下)是及物动词,通常用 be seated 或 seat oneself,表示“坐下”;

(c)was sitted 不合乎语法；(d)was seating 既不符合语法，又不合时态。

6. (a)

前一句中的 is coming 表示“将要来”，实际还没有来。只有(a)hasn't come yet(还没有来)同 is coming 的含义相符，所以只能选(a)It hasn't come yet。而(b)is here(在这儿)、(c)has already come(已经来了)和(d)came(来过)这 3 个选项都与 is coming 的含义不符。

7. (c)

本句的谓语动词 asked 后面应该跟间接疑问句，需要选一个能引导间接疑问句的连词。(a) weather(天气)、(b)in case(万一)、(d)unless(除非)这 3 个词都不合题义，都不能引导间接疑问句。只有(c)if(是否)是连词，可以引导间接疑问句，因此应该选(c)。

8. (b)

(a)lose(*v*. 丢失)、(b)loose(*adj*. 松开的)、(c)loses(lose 的单数形式)和(d)loosen(*v*. 放松，解开)这 4 个选择中只有(b)loose 同 tight(紧的)的含义相反，词性相同，因此应该选(b)。

9. (b)

前一句 Her eyes were fixed on the plate(她的眼睛盯着盘子)中的 were fixed on 表示“(目光、注意力等)集中于”。(a)was glancing at(看一眼，看一下)、(b)was staring at(凝视着，盯着看)、(c)was thinking about(考虑，思考)、(d)was stuck to(固守，坚持)中只有(b)与前一句中的 were fixed on 含义相同，因此应该选(b)。

10. (b)

(a)circus(马戏团，杂技团)，(b)theatre(剧院)，(c)play(话剧，剧本)，(d) night club(夜总会)。the Globe 是伦敦著

名剧场之一，建于16世纪末。因此(b)是最正确答案。

11. (b)

只有(b)overseas(国外，海外)同前一句中的abroad词义和词性相符，所以应该选(b) She rarely goes overseas。(a)outside(在外边，外边的)、(c)over(越过)、(d)foreign(外国的)不能作副词，这3个选择都不合题义或词性不对。

12. (d)

只有选(d)giving you pleasure(给你带来快乐)才能同前一句 Are you enjoying your dinner? 的含义相一致。(a)enjoying you(欣赏你，喜爱你)、(b)amusing you(逗你乐)、(c)entertaining you(款待你)这3个选择都与原句的意思不符。

Lesson 41
Do you call that a hat?
你把那个叫帽子吗?

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer's wife was trying on a hat but he did not like it. He sat down and waited for her. Then they began arguing again. He had bought a tie the day before but his wife did not like it. 'A man can never have too many ties,' he said. His wife used exactly the same argument and bought the hat. It looked like a lighthouse. (67 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. My wife not only has too many hats but too many dresses as well.
2. We have been invited to a party this evening but she does not want to go.
3. She keeps looking at all those dresses and saying, 'I haven't got anything to wear!'

书信写作参考答案

7th May, 1995; 1st Oct., 1978; 31st Jan., 1967; 18th Feb., 1983; 23rd June, 1970; 17th April, 1927

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

C. 1. mustn't　2. mustn't　3. needn't
4. needn't　5. mustn't

注解：

mustn't 和 needn't 含义不同：mustn't 表示"不应该"，needn't 表示"不必"：

We mustn't buy things we don't need.
我们不应该买我们不需要的东西。
You needn't come with us if you don't want to.
如果你不想去，你不必和我们一道去。

难点练习答案

1. remarked　2. noticed　3. remarks　4. notice

注解：

remark 评说，评论
notice 注意到

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

根据课文第 1 句'Do you call it a hat?' I said to my wife ("你把那个叫帽子吗?"我对妻子说)，可以判断作者不喜欢那顶帽子，所以 (a) didn't like the hat his wife had chosen 是正确答案。其他 3 个选择均与事实不符。

2. (a)

根据课文第 9 ~ 10 行'You needn't have said that,' my wife answered. 'I needn't remind you of that terrible tie you bought yesterday'，可以判断只有 (a) his wife

reminded him that he had bought a terrible tie 与课文的实际情况相符，是作者为对他妻子讲话粗鲁而后悔的原因，其他 3 个选择都与事实不符，也不合逻辑。

3. (c)

(a)mustn't(不应该)、(b)won't(不想要)、(c)needn't(不必)和(d)don't need(不需要)4 个选择中只有(c)needn't 与后一句 It isn't necessary(没必要)的含义相同，因此(c)是正确答案。

4. (d)

(a)still 和(d)yet 都有"还"、"仍然"的含义，但 yet 只能用于否定和疑问句中，表示"还没……"，still 常用于肯定句中。前面一句是肯定句，用了 still，本句是完成时态的否定句，因此只能选(d)。(b)even(甚至)和(c)also(也)都不合题义和语法。

5. (c)

(a)needn't、(b)need not 和(d)haven't need 有语法错误。只有(c)最合乎语法和题义，因此只能选(c)。

6. (b)

本句是对一个事物的性质或状态提问的，回答是 Beautiful。(a) What (什么)、(c) How much (多少)、(d)Where(哪里)这 3 个疑问词都不是问状态或性质的，只有(b)How 是对状态或性质提问的，因此应该选(b)。

7. (b)

只有(b)impossible(不可能的，办不到的)同前一句中的 can never have(永远不能有)的意思比较接近，因此应该选(b)。(a)unable(不能的，不会的)指人没能力，不能用 it 作主语；(c)improbable(不大可能发生的，未必会的)语气不如 impossible 强；(d)incapable(无能力的，不能的)指人没能力。

8. (a)

(a)reflection(映像,反射的图像),(b)idol(偶像,神像),(c)imagination(想像,想像力),(d)picture(图画,照片)。只有(a)最合乎题义,照镜子所看到的结果应该是自己的映像 reflection,所以应该选(a)。

9. (d)

前一句中的 remind of 是"提醒你"的意思,本句需要选一个同这个词组意义相同的短语。(a)recall you(回想起你),(b)remember you(想起你),(c)memorise you(记住你),(d)make you remember(使你想起)。只有(d)与 remind of 的含义相同,因此(d)是正确答案。

10. (a)

前一句 They walked out together 中的 they 是指作者和他的妻子两个人,因此应该选(a)They both(他们两个都)。(b)They all(他们大家都)、(c)Some of them(他们中间的一些人)、(d)Neither of them(他们两个都不)这 3 个选择都不合乎题义。

11. (c)

只有(c)had it on(戴着它)同前一句中的 was wearing a hat(戴着一顶帽子)的意思相同,因此应该选(c)had it on。(a)was dressing it 中 dress 作及物动词时表示"给……穿衣服",用作不及物动词时表示"穿衣服";(b)was putting it on(正在穿上或戴上);(d)was carrying it(正带着)。这 3 个选择的意思都不够恰当。

12. (b)

(a)appeared similar(看起来相似),(b)resemble(与……相像),(c)matched(与……相配),(d)likened(把……比作)。只有(b)同前一句中的 look like(像)的意思相同,因此应该选(b)。

Lesson 42
Not very musical
并非很懂音乐

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

We watched a snake charmer in a square in Old Delhi. He had a long pipe and two large baskets. He played a tune and the snake in one of the baskets rose out of the basket and began to follow the movements of the pipe. Then the snake charmer played modern tunes but the snake continued to dance slowly. It did not know the difference between Indian music and jazz.

(69 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. The snake charmer opened his basket and started to play a tune but the snake refused to move.
2. Then the snake charmer shook the basket and the snake obeyed him.
3. Everybody was frightened but these snakes are not dangerous.

书信写作参考答案

84 Wiley Drive,	844 West 54th Street (St.),
Buxton,	New York,
Derbyshire,	N.Y.,
England.	U.S.A.
8th Jan.,19 ____	May 21st,19 ____

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. 1. had *had a long walk*(1.1)

2. *have a rest*(1.2)

3. to *have a look*(1.4)

4. *had our first glimpse*(1.6)

B. 1. had a ride　　2. was having a look

3. had a wash　　4. had a swim

5. had a fight　　6. have had a quarrel

7. had another try　　8. having a rest

9. have a smoke　　10. have a good sleep

注解:

have的惯用法 have+名词可以替代普通动词:

had a ride (on a horse) 骑马

was having a look 正在看

had a wash 洗

had a swim 游泳

had a fight 打架

have had a quarrel 争吵

had another try 再试一次

having a rest 休息
have a smoke 吸烟
have a good sleep 睡得好

难点练习答案

1. pick *it* up 把它拾起
2. pick up 领取
3. pick out 挑选,选出
4. pick up 学到,获得

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

   根据课文第 1~2 行 As we had had a long walk ..., we stopped at a square to have a rest 可以判断只有(d)they were tired(他们累了)是他们在广场上停下来的原因,其他 3 个选择虽然是课文所提及的情况,但不是他们在广场上停下的原因,所以(d)是正确答案。

2. (d)

   根据课文第 7~8 行 It rose out of the basket and began to follow the movements of the pipe 可以看出只有(d)by following the movements of the snake charmer's pipe 是真实的。而(a)by listening to the India music 和(b)by listening to jazz 与事实不符,因为课文最后一句说明"它分辨不出印度音乐和爵士乐!";(c)by looking at the snake charmer 不是课文提及的情况。所以只有选(d)。

3. (d)

   本句需要选一个能够引导表示目的状语的词组。(a)so to 不是正确表达方式,词组 so as to 能表示目的;(b)in

order 也不正确，后面应该有 to；(c)in order that 可以引导原因从句，而不能跟动词不定式；只有(d)in order to(为了，以便)后面可以跟不定式，最合乎语法和题义，因此应该选(d)。

4. (b)

只有选(b)see 才能同前一句 We went to have a look at him(我们去看他)的意思相吻合，因此(b)是正确答案。(a)have 不合乎题义；(c)look 不合语法，后面应该有 at；(d)have seen 时态不对。

5. (b)

这是一个使用一般过去时的疑问句，需要选一个合适的谓语动词，(a)rose 是 rise(起来)的过去式，词义正确，但因句子中已经有助动词 did，谓语动词应该用原形才对；(c)raise 是动词原形，但词义不对，raise 是及物动词，意思是"举起"、"抬起"；(d)risen 是过去分词，只能用于完成时态；只有(b)rise 是动词原形，既合乎语法又合题义，因此应该选(b)。

6. (c)

只有(c)most(非常，极)同前一句 We were very much surprised(我们感到非常惊奇)中的 very much 意思相同，因此只能选(c)。(a)more(较多的)，(b)many(许多)不能修饰形容词，(d)the most(更，最)用于最高级。这 3 个选择都不正确。

7. (d)

本句是对前一句的归纳和总结，前一句的谓语动词是 could not tell，(a)might not、(b)may not 和(c)must not 都与 could not 的含义不符，只有(d)wasn't able to(不能)同 could not 的意思相同，因此应该选(d)。

8. (d)

本句需要选出同前一句中的 covered with(被覆盖的)含义相近的词。(a)in(在……里面)、(b)over(在……上方)、(c)under(在……底下)、(d)all over(到处,全部盖住)中,前3个选择都与 covered with 的含义不符,只有(d)与 covered with 的含义较接近,因此应该选(d)。

9. (a)

本句需要选出与前一句中的 tune(调子,曲调)意思相同的词。(a)melody(歌曲,调子)、(b)music(音乐)、(c)echo(回音)和(d)harmony(和声,和睦)这4个选择中只有(a)同 tune 的意思最接近,虽然(b)music 所表示的含义也与 tune 接近,但 music 是不可数名词,而句中已有不定冠词 a,因此应该选(a)。

10. (c)

本句要选出与前一句中的 had our first glimpse of ...(我们第一眼看到……)意思相同的短语。(a)saw it(看见它)、(b)looked at it(看着它)、(d)stared at(盯着它看)这3个选择都与 had a glimpse of 的含义不符。只有(c)saw it for a moment(看它一眼)同 had a glimpse of 的意思最接近,所以应该选(c)。

11. (d)

前一句中的 popular 是"流行的"、"大众喜爱的"意思,(a)The people(人们)、(b)The country people(乡下)、(c)The folk(人,人们)词义都不够恰当,只有(d)Many people(很多人)比较合乎题义,因此应该选(d)。

12. (a)

只有(a)But(但是)同前一句的 however 意思相同,而(b)So、(c)Though 和(d)Even 都与 however 的意思不同,因此只有(a)是正确答案。

As soon as he saw us, he picked up a long pipe which was covered with coins and opened one of the baskets.

Lesson 43
Over the South Pole
飞越南极

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The American explorer, R.E. Byrd, became the first man to fly over the South Pole in 1929. He took a lot of photographs during the flight but then he ran into difficulties. His plane could not get over the mountains so he ordered his men to throw out two heavy food sacks. The plane then flew over the mountains and continued without further trouble.

(65 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. Byrd stayed in the Antarctic for a year and made many more flights.
2. He went back to America in 1930 but returned to the Antarctic in 1946.
3. This time he not only had 4,000 men with him but thirteen ships and seventeen aeroplanes as well.

书信写作参考答案

1. 19 Zhongshan Rd.,
Haidian District,
Beijing,
China.
14th March 1997

2. 19 Highlane,
Newton,
Middlesex,
England.
14th May 19 ____

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *were able to* take (1.3); *could*...get over (1.6); *was* then *able to* rise (1.8); *would be able to* reach (1.9); *was able to* fly (1.10)

注解:

can 和 be able to 都是"能"的意思,二者常可以互换:

He will come if he can.

He will come if he is able to.

如果能的话他会来的。

但是,有时 was able to 表示一个动作已经成功地完成了,这时不能用 could 来替换:

He was able to leave Europe before the war began.

他在战争开始之前得以离开欧洲。

难点练习答案

1. at last 最后,最终
2. at home 在家
3. at once 立刻,马上
4. at the moment 此刻,现在

5. at times 有时

6. was at a loss 不知所措

7. At first 起初,开始

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第 2～3 行 ... R. E. Byrd, successfully flew over to the South Pole for the first time 可以判断只有 (b)to fly over the South Pole 与事实相符,其他 3 个选择都不是R.E. Byrd 第一个做的事。因此应该选(b)。

2. (b)

根据课文第 7～8 行 Byrd at once ordered his men to throw out two heavy food sacks. The plane was then able to rise ...可以判断只有(b)by making his plane lighter 与课文的实际情况相符。其他 3 个选择都不是他成功的原因,所以应该选(b)。

3. (a)

这是一个一般过去时疑问句,需要选出正确的谓语动词。(a)lie(躺,处于某种状态,位于);(b)lay(置,放)是 lie 的过去式;(c)laid 是 lay 的过去式和过去分词;(d)lain 是 lie 的过去分词。只有(a)最合乎语法和题义。因为在疑问句中已经有助动词 Did,因此,不能用过去式或过去分词,只能用动词原形。(b)虽然也是动词原形,但不合题义,因此只能选(a)。

4. (a)

前一句 It could only get over the mountains if it rose to 10,000 feet(只有在飞至 10,000 英尺的高度时,它才能飞过这些山头)表示对想像的条件所作出的推测,只有

(a)would succeed in getting（会成功）与前一句的含义比较吻合；(b)got 是过去式，表示过去发生的情况；(c)was able to 表示过去成功地完成；(d)had got 表示过去早已经完成的动作。这后 3 个选择都与前一句含义不符，因此应该选(a)。

5. (d)

前一句中的 was able to rise(得以上升)表示过去成功完成的事情。(a)could rise、(b)might rise 和(c)might succeed in rising 都表示对没发生的事情的推测，与前一句含义不符。只有(d)rose 表示过去发生的事情，与前一句时态相符，因此应该选(d)。

6. (d)

前一句中的 be able to 表示“能够”，需要选出与它含义相同的词。(a)impossible(不可能的)和(b)necessary(必要的)都与 able to 的意思不同；(c)able(有能力的)不能单独作表语，要用 be able to。由于这个句子的主语是 it，代表前一句中 that 引导的整个从句，因此不适合于这个句子。只有(d)possible(可能的，能办到的)与 able to 的含义相同，因此应该选(d)。

7. (a)

这是一个定语从句，需要选出正确的关系代词作主语。(c)it 和(d)which it 都不合乎语法，都不能作关系代词；(b)who 是作主语的关系代词，但其先行词必须是人，而本句的先行词是 the Pole。只有(a)which 最符合语法，它是关系代词，可以作主语指物，因此应该选(a)。

8. (c)

只有(c)had 最合乎题义。(a)ran after(追赶)、(b)followed(跟随)、(d)ran(跑)这 3 个选择都不合题义，意思不通。

9. (c)

只有(c)immediately(立刻,马上)同前一句中的 at once 是同义词,所以应该选(c)。(a)once(一次)、(b)soon(不久)、(d)quickly(迅速地)这 3 个选择都与 at once 的含义不太一样。

10. (d)

前一句 The plane cleared the mountains 中的 cleared 是“飞越”的意思,需要选出同它含义相同的词。(a)covered(覆盖)、(b)cleaned(弄干净)、(c)emptied(倒空)这 3 个选择都与 cleared 的意思不同。只有(d)flew over(飞过)与 cleared 意义相同,因此只能选(d)。

11. (a)

本题中,(b)arrive(到达)是不及物动词,后面应该带介词 at 才正确;(c)reach at 和(d)reach in 都不正确,因为 reach 当“到达”讲时是及物动词,后面不应带介词。因此(a)arrive at 是正确答案。

12. (c)

前一句 There were no mountains in sight(看不见高山)中的 in sight 是“看得见”的意思,因为该句是否定句,所以是“不被看见”的意思,只有(c)couldn't be seen(不能被看见)与前一句意思相符。(a) were blind(是盲人)、(b)couldn't see(不能看见)、(d)were sightless(没视力的)这 3 个选择都与前一句含义不符。

4 句子结构答案

Byrd at once ordered *his men to throw out two heavy food sacks*.

Lesson 44
Through the forest
穿过森林

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Two men tried to steal Mrs. Sterling's handbag. She was having a picnic at the edge of a forest with her children at the time. They took the bag after a struggle and ran through the trees. She ran after them and caught up with them. The men had sat down and were going through the contents of the bag. Mrs. Sterling ran straight at them so they ran away.

(70 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. Thieves can either be very daring or very timid.
2. A thief once broke into a house and stole some money but the lady of the house caught him.
3. The thief not only gave back the money but paid for the window he had broken.

书信写作参考答案

Mr. Henry James, 20 Crawford Ave., Cranley, Dorset, England.

关键句型练习答案

A. tried to steal (l.4); started running (l.5); continued to run (l.7); needs mending (l.10)

B.

1. to see	2. working	3. ironing
4. to leave	5. to argue/arguing	6. to come
7. seeing	8. knocking	9. waiting
10. to rain/raining	11. working	12. taking

注解:

关于动名词的用法,请参见第20课关键句型练习答案详解。

注意:有时动名词和动词不定式在句子中的作用相同,可以互换:

They began to run.

They began running.

他们开始跑了。

They continued to argue till after midnight.

They continued arguing till after midnight.

他们继续讨论直到午夜以后。

但是有时动名词和动词不定式所表达的含义不同,不能互换:

I love/like *seeing* films on Sunday evenings.

我喜欢星期日晚上看电影。

I'd love *to see* that film. Will it be on tomorrow?

我喜欢(想)看那部影片,明天能上映吗?

I hate *disturbing* people when they are busy.

人们忙的时候,我不愿意去打扰。

I hate *to disturb* you at the moment, but I'm afraid I have to.

我不愿意现在打扰你，但是我恐怕不得不这样做。

在以上例句中，动名词强调的是习惯性动作，动词不定式则强调某一次动作。

难点练习答案

(sample sentences)

1. In the last minutes of the race, Jim caught up with the leader and passed him.
   catch up with 赶上，追上
2. The farmer shouted at the children and they ran away.
   run away 跑掉，逃跑

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)
   根据课文第 9～10 行 The men got such a fright that they dropped the bag and ran away 可以判断只有(c)found it hard to steal the bag(感到很难偷走这个手提包)与课文的实际情况相符，因此(c)是正确答案。(a)found it easy to steal 和(b)found a bag 都与课文的情况不符；(d)didn't steal the bag 也不太符合课文的事实，虽然小偷最终没有偷走手提包，但他们在此之前还是偷了，只是因为害怕才放弃的。
2. (b)
   根据课文第 7～10 行 When she caught up with them ... The men got such a fright that they dropped the bag and ran away 可以判断只有(b)followed the thieves and got

her handbag back 才与课文实际内容相符,这也是故事的结局,其他 3 个选择均与课文实际内容不符。

3. (c)

动词 continue 后面能跟动名词或动词不定式。(a)run 前面没有 to,不合语法;(b)run 和(d)in running 都不是动词不定式或动名词。只有(c)running 是动名词,最合乎语法,因此应该选(c)。

4. (c)

只有(c)That's why(这就是为什么)最合乎题义,它可以引出一个说明理由或原因的句子,因此应该选(c)。(a)For this 不太完整,应该是 For this reason;(b)That's because(这是因为)不合逻辑;(d)That's so(正是这样)也不合乎题义。

5. (c)

(a)so frightful(如此可怕的)不能描述人的心里感受,可以指事物,词义不对,故不能选(a)。(b)such frightened 不合乎语法,such 不能修饰形容词。(d)such fright 也不合语法。fright 是名词,不能作表语。只有(c) so frightened(感到如此害怕)最合乎语法也合乎题义,因此应该选(c)。

6. (b)

前一句中的 needs mending 是"需要修理"的意思。本句需要选一个同它意思相符的短语。(a)has mended(已经修理了)、(c)has been mended(已经被修理了)、(d)has been mending(正在被修理)这 3 个选择都与 needs mending 的含义不同。只有(b)has to be mended(应当被修理)与 needs mending 的含义相同,因此应该选(b)。

7. (d)

只有选(d)nothing(什么也没有)才同前一句 They didn't

steal anything 的意思相同。(a) anything、(b)not anything、(d)nothing 这 3 个选择都不正确。

8. (a)

(a)dangerous(危险的)、(b)brave(勇敢的)、(c)clever(聪明的)和(d)stupid(傻的,笨的)这 4 个选择中只有(a)同前一句的 took a risk(冒险)的含义相同,take a risk 相当于 do a dangerous thing,因此应该选(a)。

9. (b)

前一句中的 at the edge of 意为"在……的边上",本句需要选一个同它含义相同的词。(a)inside(在……里面)、(b)near(在……附近或旁边)、(c)among(在……中间)和(d)at the tip of(在……顶端)4 个选择中只有(b)同 at the edge of 含义最接近,因此应该选(b)。

10. (a)

本句只有选(a)rob 才能使这个句子同前一句 They tried to steal her handbag(他们设法偷窃她的手提包)的意义相同,因为 steal sb.'s handbag 相当于 rob sb. of his/her handbag,所以(a)是正确答案。(b)steal(偷)、(c)be robbed(被抢劫)、(d)be stolen(被偷)这 3 个选择都不合语法。

11. (b)

本句需要选出与前一句中的 out of breath(上气不接下气)含义相同的短语。(a)wasn't breathing(没喘气)、(b)was breathing with dlifficulty(呼吸困难),(c)couldn't breathe(不能呼吸),(d)stopping breathing(停止呼吸)。只有(b)同 out of breath 的含义相符,因此(b)是正确答案。

12. (d)

只有(d)contents(内容,所含的东西)是前一句中的

contains(包含)的名词形式，contents 相当于 the things that are contained，所以(d)最合乎题义，应该选(d)。(a)contains是动词，不能作宾语；(b)containing 是动名词，表示抽象的意义，不是指具体的东西，故不合题义；(c)contenting 是 content(满意)的动名词或现在分词，不合乎题义。

Lesson 45
A clear conscience
问心无愧

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The local butcher, Sam Benton, was taking his savings to the post office but he lost this wallet. Three months later, Sam not only received half his money but a note as well. The note said: 'A thief, yes, but only 50 per cent a thief!' The thief included a note every time he sent Sam more money. The last note said: 'I am 100 per cent honest now!' (68 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. Sam told everybody about the wallet but he did not try to find the thief.
2. The man was not really a thief but he needed money badly.
3. He not only paid back the money but also bought himself a clear conscience.

书信写作参考答案

Mrs. Anne Sterling 21 Brook St., Woodside, California 91007, U.S.A.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *had been lost*(11.1-2); *must have been found*(11.3-4); *was not returned*(1.4); *had been wrapped*(1.6); *was sent*(1.9); *was paid back*(1.10)

C. 1. A meal has been prepared for you.

2. The book will be translated into English.

3. A telegram must be sent to him.

4. The fire had been put out before the fire brigade arrived.

5. The cat was given some milk to drink.

(关于被动语态,请参见第 10、21、34 课关键句型练习答案)

难点练习答案

1. back　2. robbed...stole　3. back　4. stole

5. robbed

注解:

pay back 偿还(借款); 报仇

steal 偷(从某人或某处):

steal sth. from sb. or somewhere

rob 抢劫,盗窃(某人的某物):

rob sb. of sth.

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文的实际内容,可以推断只有(b)had found Sam's wallet and kept it 是课文暗示的真实情况。(a)had stolen

Sam's wallet 不够确切，因为课文中的意思是 Sam was sure that the wallet must have been found by one of the villagers(山姆确信那钱包是被某个村民捡到了，而不是偷走了)；(c) had lost Sam's wallet 与课文意思相反；(d)had taken the wallet from Sam's pocket 不是课文提及的内容。

2. (d)

根据课文所描述的情况，只有(d)returned all the money 与课文事实相符，其他 3 个选择与事实不符。

3. (a)

(a)when、(b)while、(c)as 和(d)just as 都可以作连词，引导时间从句，表示"当……时"。本句只能选(a)。在前半句是过去进行时，后半句是一般过去时的情况下，中间只能用 when，表示两个动作同时发生，"正当……时"。而后 3 个选择引导的时间从句大都是进行时态。

4. (b)

本句只有选(b)in 意思才讲得通：He keeps his savings in the post office.(他把存款放在邮局保管。)本句中的动词 keep(存放，保管)不是表示"去向"的，因此不能选(a)to(到)和(d)into(进入)，(c)on(在……上面)也不合乎题义，不能用 on the post office，而应该是 in the post office(在邮局里)。所以(b)是正确答案。

5. (b)

本句是一个被动语态句。只有(b)by 表示"被"的意思，最符合语法和题义。(a)from、(c)out of 和(d)of 都没有"被"的意思，因此都不正确。

6. (d)

本句是一个特殊疑问句，针对介词 in 的宾语提问的，回答是 A newspaper。(a)Where 是询问地点的；(b)Who 是

针对主语(人)提问的;(c)How 是询问状态的。这 3 个选择都不正确。只有(d)What 是对物提问的,因此应该选(d)。

7. (c)

前一句是被动语态 Some more money was sent to Sam,后一句又换了一种说法,将原句中的间接宾语 Sam 变成主语,原句中的 Some more money 变成了宾语,还应该用被动语态才能使两个句子意义相同。(a)sent 是主动语态过去时;(b)has sent 是完成时主动语态;(d)had sent 是过去完成时主动语态。这 3 个选择都不是被动语态,因此都不正确。只有(c)was sent 是过去时被动语态,最合乎语法和题义,因此应该选(c)。

8. (b)

(a)coins(硬币),(b)notes(纸币、钞票),(c)cheques(支票),(d)photographs(照片)。这 4 个选择中只有(b)notes 最合乎题义,因为本句中的 wallet(夹子,钱夹)是用来放钱(钞票)的,因此(b)词义最贴切,应该选(b)。

9. (c)

(a)wound 是 wind 的过去式,词义是"缠绕"、"卷";(b)rolled(卷,滚);(c)wrapped(包裹);(d)bound(缚,绑)。从词的搭配上讲,只有(c)wrapped 词义最贴切,最适合于这个句子,其他 3 个选择都不符合题义,因此应该选(c)。

10. (b)

本句需要选出同前一句的 did it contain 意义相同的短语。(a)did it consist 不合语法,也不合题义,consist 后面应该有 of,表示"由……组成";(c)did it include (它包括);(d)had it(它有)。这 3 个选择意思都不太贴切,只有(b)was there in it(里面有)最接近 did it contain 的含义,因此应该选(b)was there in it。

11. (d)

(a)money(钱)、(b)a coin(硬币)、(c)a cheque(支票)和(d)a message(口头或书面的消息,口信,便条)这 4 个选择中只有(d)与这一句中的 note(字条)意义相近,因此(d)是正确答案。

12. (b)

本句缺少一个时间状语,需要选一个合适的时间短语。(a)At times(有时)不合题义;(c)With the times(随着潮流)也不合乎题义;(d)A long time(长时间)不能作时间状语;只有(b)After a time(一段时间以后)最符合题义,因此应该选(b)。

4 句子结构答案

Sam was sure *that the wallet must have been found by one of the villagers, but it was not returned to him.*

Lesson 46
Expensive and uncomfortable
既昂贵又受罪

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The plane from London arrived at Sydney airport and workers unloaded a number of wooden boxes from it. They contained clothing. One of the boxes was extremely heavy so a worker opened it up. He found a man lying on top of a pile of woollen goods. The man was arrested. He had travelled in the box from London. He had to pay £3,500. An ordinary ticket costs £2,000. (69 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. The man not only had had an uncomfortable trip but was very hungry as well.

   Or: The man had not only had a very uncomfortable trip, but he was very hungry as well.
2. He had neither eaten nor drunk anything for thirteen hours.
3. Woollen goods cannot be eaten but at least they are soft so the man had a few hours' sleep.

书信写作参考答案

1. 99 Zhongshan Rd.,
   Haidian District,
   Beijing, 100081
   China.
   9th Feb. 1998

2. 20 Crawford Ave.,
   Cranley,
   Dorset,
   England.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *arrived* at Sydney (1.1); could *account* for the fact (1.3); *occurred* to one (1.4); was *astonished* at what (1.5); was so *surprised* at being (11.6-7); had been *confined* to the wooden box (1.9); *pay* £3,500 for the cost (1.10)

B. 1. with
   agree with 同意
   2. to...for
   prefer to 更喜欢　wait for 等待
   3. with
   correspond with each other 互相通信
   4. for
   account for 说明(原因)
   5. to
   object to 反对
   6. at
   surprised at 感到惊讶
   7. to
   reply to his letter 给他回信

8. to

attend to 照顾,注意

9. for

exchange sth. for sth. 用某物换取某物

10. to...at

occur to 想到　arrive at 到达

11. at

be shocked at 感到震惊

12. with

comply with 遵照,遵守

13. with

cope with 处理

14. to...for

mention...to 向……提起　pay for 付钱

15. for

unprepared for 没有准备的

16. for

blame sb. for sth. 为某事责备某人

17. with

disgusted with 对……感到厌恶

18. for

thank ... for 感谢

19. at

stare at 盯着……看

20. with

satisfied with 对……感到满意

21. to

amount to 总计为

22. with

mix ... with 与……混合

23. at

knock at 敲

24. to

belong to 属于

25. with...to

reason with 以理说服　listen to 听

26. to...with

accustomed to 习惯于　part with 离开

27. for

call for 需要

28. to...to

surrender to 向……投降　condemned to 判刑

29. for

look for 寻找

30. to

see to 留意,负责

31. for

apologize for 因……而道歉

32. to

respond to 对……作出响应

33. to...with

turn to sb. for... 向某人请求……　quarrel with 争吵

34. for

hope for 希望

35. to

apply to 申请,请求

36. to

attach to 附属于

37. at

guess at 猜测

38. at

work at 从事

39. with

begin with 以……开始

40. for

charge for 收费

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

根据课文的情节，只有(a)a worker opened the box 能说明这个人被发现的原因，而其他 3 个选择都不是直接原因，因此应该选(a)。

2. (c)

根据课文的内容可以判断，只有(c)to avoid paying the fare from London to Sydney(为了逃避付伦敦至悉尼的路费)最符合课文暗示的情形，说明了这个人藏进箱子里的目的。其他 3 个选择都不能说明这个目的，因此(c)是正确答案。

3. (d)

只有选(d)unloading 最合乎语法。因为本句的谓语动词 began 是及物动词，后面需要带宾语，它的宾语可以是名词，动词不定式或动名词。(a)unload 前面缺少 to，不正确；(b)to unloading 动名词前不应该有 to；(c)unloaded 是过去式，不能作宾语；只有(d)unloading 是动名词，可以作 began 的宾语，因此应该选(d)。

4. (d)

本句是对名词的定语提问的，疑问词是 Which boxes...? 需要选出正确的回答。(a)The wooden(木制的)不够完整，后面应该有名词或代词；(b)The wood(木头)不合逻辑，不能回答 Which boxes 的提问；(c)The woody ones 词义不对，因为 woody 词义是“树木茂密的”，而不是木制的，不能修饰 boxes；只有(d)The wooden ones(木制的箱子)意思完整，词义正确。ones 替代 boxes，可以回答 Which boxes...? 的提问，因此(d)是正确答案。

5. (a)

(b)to open、(c)to have opened 和(d)opening 都不合乎习惯用法，因为本句的谓语动词 thought 后面不应该直接跟动词不定式或名词、动名词，而应该同介词 of 或 about 引导的短语连用，think of/about 表示“考虑”、“想到”。只有(a)of opening 符合惯用法，所以应该选(a)。

6. (c)

(a)did he find 是疑问句语序不合乎语法，本句需要的是以 what 引导的名词性从句；(b)he did find 是强调句的形式，而句中不需要强调，应该直接用 find 的过去式；(d)he has found 是完成时，同本句的谓语动词时态不一致；只有(c)he found 最合乎时态和语序，因此(c)是正确答案。

7. (b)

本句是对飞机票的价格提问的，回答是“£2,000”。(a)How many is 不是对钱提问的；(c)How much has 动词不正确；(d)How much costs 不合乎语法，应该是 How much does sth. cost? 只有(b)How much is 最合乎语法和题义，因此应该选(b)。

8. (c)

本句需要选出与前一句中的 clothing (衣服)意义相同的

词。(a)cloths(衣料,布料,常用作不可数名词)、(b)cloth(布料)和(d)dresses(连衣裙,礼服)这 3 个词都与 clothing 的含义不太一样。只有(c)clothes(衣服)同 clothing 的含义相同,因此应该选(c)。

9. (a)

(a)explain(解释,说明)、(b)estimate(估计,评定)、(c)interpret(口译)和(d)describe(描写,描述)中只有(a)explain与前一句中的 account for(说明)的含义相同。因此只能选(a)。

10. (d)

(a)carpet(地毯)、(b)column(圆柱)、(c)bag(包,背包)和(d)heap(堆,堆集)这 4 个选择中只有(d)heap 是表示"量"的,相当于一个量词,最符合题义,因此应该选(d)。

11. (c)

(a)announced(宣布,通知)、(b)described(描写)、(c)confessed(坦白,承认)和(d)declared(宣告,声称)4 个选择中只有(c)confessed 同前一句中的谓语动词 admitted(承认)意义相近,所以(c)是正确答案。

12. (a)

前一句中的 confined to the box 是"关在箱子里"的意思,只有(a)couldn't move(不能动)能同它构成因果关系。(b)could move(能活动)不合逻辑;(c)couldn't sleep(不能睡觉)不能同前一句构成因果关系;(d)couldn't run away(不能逃跑)不如(a)正确,因为被关在箱子里,首先是不能活动,当然也就不能逃跑,所以(a)是最佳答案。

Lesson 47
A thirsty ghost
嗜酒的鬼魂

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Mr. Ian Thompson bought a public house recently but it is haunted so he is going to sell it. There was a strange noise in the bar one night and the room was in disorder next morning. Mr. Thompson also found five empty whisky bottles. He does not believe that any villagers broke into the bar and had a drink. Nobody in the village wants to buy the inn.

(69 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. One night Mr. Thompson heard a noise and went downstairs.
2. In the bar, five men were drinking whisky but they did not see him.
3. Mr. Thompson put a sheet over his head and went into the bar.
4. The villagers ran away in fear and never came back again.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

C. 1. will have finished

这一句的时间状语 By the end of next year(到明年年底之前)表示将来某一时间以前,因此应该用将来完成时。

2. broke

因为主句是 you would have to pay for it, if 引导的条件从句应该用过去式。

3. were

同上一句一样,表示与现在事实相反。

4. could

if 从句表示想像的情况,而主句则推测想像的结果。

D. 1. mustn't 不应该

2. needn't 不必

E. 1. I asked George what those people were looking at.

2. George answered that he did not know. He thought a new road was being built and that it would be finished soon.

3. I told George that all those people were silly because they were looking into an empty hole.

4. George said that some people enjoy/enjoyed watching others work.

5. Half an hour passed. George told me to hurry up as we had been there for half an hour. He added that there was nothing to see in an empty hole.

6. I answered that I didn't want to go yet because it was very interesting.

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第 2 行和 8 行... because it is haunted(闹鬼), ... which the ghost must have drunk the night before 可以推断(d)he thinks it's visited by a ghost 是他想卖掉小酒店的原因。前 3 个选择虽然与故事中的部分细节相符，但都不够全面，因此只有(d)是正确答案。

2. (a)

根据课文的情景可判断，只有(a)believes in ghost(信鬼魂)是课文暗示的情形，其他 3 个选择都与课文的内容不符，因此(a)是正确答案。

3. (b)

本句的时间状语是 a short time ago(不久前)，表示过去某一时间，因此应该用一般过去时。(a)has bought 是完成时，时态不对；(c)was bought 是过去时，但语态不对，应该是主动语态；(d)is bought 语态、时态都不对；只有(b)bought 是过去时，时态和语态正确，因此(b)是正确答案。

4. (a)

(b)will 和(c)shall 都是助动词或情态助动词，后面不能跟带 to 的动词不定式；(d)going 前面缺少动词 be，不能作谓语；(a)intends(打算)是动词，并且同前一句的 is going to 含义相同，因此应该选(a)。

5. (d)

只有(d)said to me 同前一句的 told me 的意思相同，并且合乎语法。(a)said me 和(c)told to me 都有语法错误，应该是 said to me 和 told me；(b)talked to me(同我谈话)与 told me 的含义不一样。因此应该选(d)。

6. (a)

这是含定语从句的句子，需要选出正确关系代词和系动词。(b)who was 因为先行词不是人，故不合题义；(c)that is 和(d)which is 都是现在时，与主句时态不符；只有(a)which was 最合乎语法，因此应该选(a)。

7. (a)

前一句中的 must have drunk(一定喝了)表示对过去发生事情的推测。(b)has got to drink 和 (c)has to drink 都有“必须或应该喝”的意思，都与 must have drunk 含义不同；(d)should drink(应该喝)也与 must have drunk 含义不同；只有(a)must drink 与 must have drunk 的意义相同，都是表示对现在情况的判断，本句是表达对一个客观事实的主观推测，因此不用 must have drunk 而用 must drink，因此(a)是正确答案。

8. (d)

前一句中的 is selling(正在出售)是表示还没有卖出，本句需要选一个同它含义相同的词或短语。(a)sold(卖完的)、(b)to let(出租)这两个选择都与 is selling 的含义不同；(c)for selling 不是正确表达方式；只有(d)for sale(出售)最符合题义，因此应该选(d)。

9. (d)

(a)closed(关上，关闭)、(b)turned on(打开电源开关)、(c)closed up(关闭，阻塞)和(d)switched off(关上，关掉关灯、电器等)4 个选择中只有(d)最合乎题义，睡觉前应该关灯才符合生活常规，因此应该选(d)。

10. (c)

只有(c)on(开着的)最合乎题义，因为当表示电灯、电视等电器“开着”时要用 on，本句的主语是 lights(电灯)，所以应选(c)。而(a)open(打开的)、(b)alight(照亮的，着火

的)、(d)on fire(着火的)这 3 个选择都不能表示电灯“开着”。

11. (a)

前一句中的动词 shook (his head)是“摇(头)”的意思,只有(a)no是这个动作所表达的含义。(b)perhaps(可能)、(c)yes(是的)、(d)I don't know(我不知道)这 3 个选择都不符合 shook his head 在课文中所表达的含义,所以(a)是正确答案。

12. (c)

(a)receive(收到)、(b)agree to(同意)、(d)allow(允许)这 3 个选择词义都不适合这个句子,只有(c)agree to take(同意接受)最合题义,因此应该选(c)。

4 句子结构答案

Though *Mr. Thompson had turned the lights off before he went to bed, they were on in the morning.*

Lesson 48
Did you want to tell me something?
你想对我说什么吗?

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The dentist in the story had pulled out one of the writer's teeth and (had) told him to rest for a while. He asked several questions but the writer could not answer them. His mouth was full of cotton wool. He suddenly discovered something wrong but he could not say anything. The dentist eventually removed the cotton wool from his mouth and the writer told him that he had pulled out the wrong tooth. (72 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. The dentist smiled and showed me the tooth.
2. He had pulled out the right one but I had not realized it.
3. I had not only made a mistake but (had) criticized his work as well.

书信写作参考答案

Seaview Hotel,
Princes' Ave.,
Brighton,
England.

Sept. 19th, 19 ____

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. 1. which　　2. denied　　3. fetched
4. too　　5. jobs　　6. One...a...who
7. past　　8. next　　9. watching
10. continually　　11. remarked　　12. robbed
(请参见第 28～45 课关键句型练习答案注解)

B (sample sentences)

I'm sorry to cause you *such* trouble.

Have you ever seen *such* beautiful pictures before?

It's *such a* nice day that we can't stay indoors!

I'm feeling *so* tired that I shall have to stop work.

(请参见第 35 课难点练习答案注释)

C. 1. He had no sooner come home than they rang him up from the office.
2. The plane had no sooner taken off than it returned to the airport.
(请参见第 38 课难点练习答案注解)

D. 1. made　　2. do　　3. make　　4. do
5. Do　　6. make　　7. made　　8. does
(请参见第 40 课难点练习答案注解)

E. 1. out　　2. up　　3. up　　4. up...away　　5. up
6. out　　7. back　　8. up with　　9. up with
(请参见第 27、34、37、42、44、45 课难点练习答案注解)

F. (sample sentences)

If you don't stop that noise *at once*, you'll have to go to bed.

I'm *at a loss* to know what to do.

It's stopped raining *at last*!

He's very busy and can't accept any more work *at present*.

I'll be *at home* tonight.

(请参见第 43 课难点练习答案)

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

根据课文第 3～4 行 I tried to say something, but my mouth was full of cotton wool 可判断只有(c) there was something in his mouth 最符合课文的真实情况，这也是作者不能讲话的惟一原因，其他 3 个选择都不是原因。所以只能选(c)。

2. (b)

根据课文第 8～10 行 I suddenly felt very worried, ... when the dentist at last removed the cotton wool ... I was able to tell him that he had pulled out the wrong tooth 可以判断(b)He thought the dentist had pulled out the wrong tooth 是作者着急的惟一原因，其他 3 个选择都不是他着急的原因，所以(b)是正确答案。

3. (c)

只有选(c) cannot 才能使整个句子同前一句 It is impossible for him to answer(他是不可能回答的)意义相同，所以(c)是正确答案。(a)might not 与(d)may not 都不符合题义；(b)could not 的时态不对。

4. (b)

本句是将前一句中表示命令请求的的间接引语变成了直接引语(祈使句)。(a)To rest 动词不定式不能作祈使句的谓语;(c)Do you rest 是疑问句,不能表示请求;(d)Resting动名词也不能作祈使句的谓语;只有(b)Rest可以作祈使句的谓语,所以(b)是正确答案。

5. (a)

本句是将前一句中的间接疑问句... how my brother was 变成直接疑问句,因此时态和语序要作相应改变。(b)your brother was 和(c)your brother is 都不是疑问句语序,因此都不正确;(d)was your brother 语序正确,但时态不正确:间接引语是过去时,直接引语应该是现在时才正确。只有(a)is your brother 语序和时态都正确,因此应该选(a)。

6. (c)

这是一个疑问句,(a)It likes you、(b)Does it like you 和(d)Like you 这 3 个选择都意思不通,不合题义,只有(c)Do you like 意思通顺,符合疑问句语序,因此只能选(c)。

7. (b)

介词 by 后面加动名词可以表示方式。本句只能选(b)nodding(点头),因为它是动名词,可以放在 by 后面作方式状语。其他 3 个选择(a)to nod、(c)nod 和(d)to nodding 都不能放在介词 by 后面,所以应该选(b)。

8. (b)

本句需要选一个同前一句中时间短语 for a while(一会儿)的意义相同的短语。(a)quietly(安静地)、(c)while he spoke to me(当他跟我说话时)、(d)for a long time(很久)这 3 个选择都与 for a while 的意义不符。只有(b)for a

short time(短时间)同 for a while 的含义相同,因此应该选(b)。

9. (d)

(a)assembly(集会,聚会),(b)gathering(聚集,收集抽象的东西,如消息等),(c)congregation(聚集,集合),(d)collection(收集,收藏〈如邮票,硬币等〉)中,只有(d)最适合这个句子,其他 3 个选择都不能与火柴盒连用,所以(d)是正确答案。

10. (a)

前一句 I nodded(我点头)是表示同意,只有(a)agreed(同意)才是这一动作所表达的含义。(b)said no(说不)、(c)shouted(高喊)、(d)whispered(耳语)这 3 个选择都不是 nodded 所表达的含义,所以只能选(a)。

11. (b)

本句需要选出同前一句中的 Meanwhile(同时)意义相同的词和短语。(a)However(不过,然而)、(b)In the mean time(同时)、(c)Never the less(尽管如此,不过)和(d)Although(虽然)这 4 个选择中只有(b)同 Meanwhile 的意义相同,因此(b)是正确答案。

12. (c)

(a)took it off(脱下)、(b)took it in(理解)、(c)took it out(取出)和(d)took it up(从事于)4 个选择中只有(c)took it out 同前一句 He removed the cotton wool from my mouth(他将药棉从我嘴里取出)的含义相同,所以(c)是正确答案。

4 句子结构答案

Dentists always ask questions when it *is impossible for you to answer*.

测试3答案

关键句型练习答案

A. 1. He read the book *and* returned it to the library.
2. The boy climbed the tree *and* picked some apples.
3. I opened the door *and* he came into the hall.
4. He looked for his pen *but* (he) could not find it.
5. She called to him *but* he did not answer her.
6. Everyone was out *so* I left a message.
7. He plays *both* soccer *and* rugby.
8. *Both* children *and* adults enjoy holidays.
9. He must be *either* very clever *or* very foolish.
10. *Neither* George *nor* Dave plays football.
11. George plays *neither* soccer *nor* rugby.
12. He *neither* knows *nor* cares.
13. He *not only* forgot to take his umbrella *but* he forgot to take his briefcase *as well*.

注解：

关于并列句中的语序，请参见第25课关键句型练习答案注解。

B. a. believe ... are joking ... do not know ... know ... believe ... forget ... looked ... Are you trying ... believed ... think ... do you live ... do not know

b. put ... cooked ... smelt ... sang ... began ... felt ... put ... crept

c. has begun ... was ... flew ... has flown ... landed ... landed ... has *just* refused ... wanted ... did not take ... was

d. was telling/told ... used to work ... was ... used to work ... saved ... bought ... used to make/made ... had ... employed ... smiled ... remembered ... was *still* smiling ... opened ... came ... wanted

e. 1. We *are going to* leave at six o'clock.

2. I *am going to* pay these bills tomorrow.

3. *Are you going to* write to him?

4. She *is not going to* look for a new job.

5. When *are you going to* buy a new car?

注解:

一般现在时和正在进行时:请参见第 26 课关键句型练习答案注解。

一般过去时:请参见第 31 课和第 27 课关键句型练习答案注解。

一般过去时和现在完成时:请参见第 27、28 课关键句型答案注解。

过去进行时,过去时和表示过去习惯性的动作:请参见第 7 课和第 31 课关键句型练习答案注解。

将来时 going to:请参见第 36 课关键句型练习答案注解。

f. will be held ... will be visiting ... will be building/will build ... will *also* be building/will *also* build ... will be held ... will be called ... will have completed ... will have finished

g. found ... had run ... had spent ... took ... saw ... burst ... said ... had never run

h. was asked ... was wanted ... was told ... had been picked up ... is *now* being sent ... to be found ... was stolen

i. 1. He said (that) he was very tired.

2. She asked if I was tired.

3. Tom asked if Jack would arrive tomorrow.

4. Tom asked when Jack would arrive.

5. Mary asked if I'd (had) ever been abroad.

6. Jane asked why I hadn't (had not) written to her.

j. 1. *he*'s (is)　　2. don't (do not) hurry

3. *you*'d (would) enjoy　　4. were

k. 1. to see　　2. ironing

3. to leave/leaving　　4. arguing/to argue

5. seeing　　6. waiting

7. working　　8. going

注解：

将来时、将来进行时和将来完成时：请参见第 13、36、37 课关键句型练习答案注解。

过去时和过去完成时：请参见第 3、27、38 课关键句型练习答案注解。

被动语态：请参见第 10 课和第 34 课关键句型。

直接引语和间接引语：请参见第 15 课和第 39 课关键句型。

if 条件句：请参见第 16、40 课关键句型练习答案注解。

给出动词的正确形式(动词不定式与动名词)：请参见第 44 课练习答案注解。

C. a. 1. mustn't　　2. needn't　　3. needn't

4. mustn't

b. 1. *Have a look* at this.

2. He *had a wash* before going out.

3. I *had a swim* in the sea this morning.

4. She is *having a rest*.

c. 1. Could　　2. was able to　　3. could

4. was able to

注解:

mustn't 和 needn't:请参见第 41 课关键句型练习答案注解。

含有 have 的结构:请参见第 42 课关键句型练习答案注解。

could 和 was able to:请参见第 43 课关键句型练习答案注解。

D. *The* Wayle ... *a* small river ... *the* park ... *the* Wayle ... *the* river bank ... *Some* children ... games ... *the* bank ... *some* people ... *the* river ... *the* children ... *a* ball... *a* passing boat ... *Some* people ... *the* bank ... *the* man in *the* boat ... *The* ball ... *the* water ... *the* children ... *any*

注解:

a,the,some 和 any 的用法:请参见第 6 课和第 30 课关键句型练习答案注解。

E. 1. There's *little* I can do to help him.

2. There aren't many apples on the tree, but you can pick *a few* if you want to.

3. He has *less* work to do *than* I have.

4. There isn't much whisky in this bottle, but you can have *a little* if you want it.

5. He has *fewer* books *than* I have.

6. There *were few* people in the shop.

注解:

1. little 和 a little 用来修饰不可数名词。little 有否定的含义,表示"没有多少"、"几乎没有";a little 有肯定的含义,表示"有一点儿"、"有一些";less 是 little 的比较

级，表示“较少的”。

2. few 和 a few 用来修饰可数名词。few 有否定的含义，表示“不多的”、“很少的”；a few 有肯定的含义，表示“少数的”、“几个”；fewer 是 few 的比较级，表示“较少的”。

F. 1. to

come to my office 到我办公室来

2. out of/from

sailed out of/from the harbour 驶出港口，从港口起航

3. (up) to

climbed (up) to the top of 爬到……的顶部

4. at

aimed at the bird 瞄准那只鸟

5. into

bring the tea things into the kitchen 把茶具拿进厨房来

G. 1. with ... to

agree with 同意　listen to 听取(某人意见)

2. for

blame sb. for sth. 为某事责备某人

3. for

prepare for... 为……作准备

4. with

quarrell with 与……争吵

5. at

knock at the door 敲门

难点练习答案

A. 1. too

It is too hot. 它太热了。(强调说话人的口气：即对某

物不满意)

It is very hot. 它非常热。(只是客观地说这咖啡热的程度,但不强调说话人对它是否满意)

2. denied

deny 否认或反驳　refuse 拒绝,不接受

3. jobs

jobs about the house 家务活　works 作品、著作、工厂等,当"工作"讲时是不可数名词

4. passed

pass *v*. 经过,通过　past *prep*. & *adv*. 越过,经过

5. other

the other day 不久前的某一天　the next day 第 2 天(指过去的某一天的第 2 天)

6. looked at

look at 看,注视　watch 观看(活动,事件)

7. so

so sleepy 如此困倦　such 只能修饰名词

8. such a

such a difficult child 如此难对付的孩子

9. continuously

continuously 连续不间断地　continually 频繁地,不停地(但可能有间断)

10. robbed

rob sb. of sth. 抢某人的某物　steal sth. from sb. or somewhere 从某人或某处偷

11. one

one(一个)是数词,强调数量是"一个"而不是"两个或三个"

a 是不定冠词,表示泛指的"一个",不强调数量

12. notice

notice my new hat 注意到我的新帽子

remark 说，评论，谈论

B. 'Haven't you finished this book yet?' he asked.

'I haven't even started it,' I answered.

'Why not?' he asked. 'It's an exciting story.'

'Perhaps it is,' I answered, 'but it's too difficult for me. I spend more time looking up the dictionary than reading the book.'

(引号的用法请参见第26课难点)

C. 1. out

put out the fire 把火扑灭

2. up

look up 查阅，查寻

3. with

catch up with 赶上

4. up

pick up an American accent 学会了一种美国口音

5. back

pay back 偿还(借款)

D. 1. made

make a promise 许下诺言

2. make

make a speech 发表演说

3. does

do very good business 生意做得很好

4. make

make difference 有差别，有所不同

5. do

do one's homework 写作业

6. makes

make trouble 惹事生非

Lesson 49
The end of a dream
美梦告终

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

A young man in Teheran bought a real bed for the first time in his life. He slept on the roof of his house because the weather was hot. Three nights later, the bed was swept off the roof during a storm. The man was not only unhurt but still on his mattress. As the bed was in pieces, he carried his mattress indoors and after he had put it on the floor he went back to sleep. (78 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. The man gathered the pieces next morning.
2. He repaired the bed in a painstaking way, then put it on the roof and tied it down.
3. After that he enjoyed many comfortable nights' sleep.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *to* buy (l. 2); *which* (l. 3); *Because* (ll. 3-4); *but* (l.5); *and* (l.7); *until* (l.8); *Although* (l.8); *When*

(1.9); *that* (1.10); *and* (1.10); *After* (1.11)

注解:

本课的关键句型是“复合句的语序”。

1. 复合句的构成方法可以是把简单句连接在一起。但复合句的各个组成部分并非同等重要(这一点与并列句不同),其中总有一个主句和一个或一个以上从句,主句往往可以独立存在。
2. 从句可以由连词和代词引导,我们常用的一些连词和代词有 when、after、until、as soon as、while、as before、because、since、in order that、although、who、which、whose、that 等。
3. 从句可以放在主句之前,也可以放在主句之后:

   Because the weather was very hot, he carried the bed on the roof of his house.

   He carried the bed on the roof of his house because the weather was very hot.

   由于天气很热,他便把床搬到了他的屋顶上。

   这两个句子意义相同,只是语序不同。应当注意,当从句在主句之前时,它后面要用逗号;当从句放在主句之后时,可以直接跟在主句后面,不需用逗号将主句和从句隔开:

   Although the bed was smashed to pieces, the man was miraculously unhurt.

   The man was miraculously unhurt although the bed was smashed to pieces.

   尽管床摔成了碎片,但年轻人却奇迹般地没有受伤。

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文的情景,只有(d) The bed was blown off the

roof, but the man was not hurt 最能概括整篇课文的中心内容，其他 3 个选择都不全面，因此应该选(d)。

2. (a)

根据课文第 9～11 行 Glancing at the bits of wood and metal ... he promptly went to sleep again 可以判断只有(a)he went back to sleep soon afterwards 与课文描述的情况相符，其他 3 个选择都与课文的实际内容不符。

3. (b)

(a)Because、(c)As 和(d)For 都能引导原因从句，但是只有(b)Because of 后面可以跟名词，表示原因，所以只能选(b)才合乎语法。

4. (a)

本句是一般过去时疑问句，因为已经有助动词 did 提问了，后面只有用动词原形才正确。(b)carries、(c)carried 和(d)carrying 都不是动词原形，因此都不正确。只有(a)carry是动词原形，所以(a)是正确答案。

5. (b)

本句是针对修饰动词的状语(副词)提问的，(a)good(好的)和(d)nice(好的，美好)这两个选择都是形容词，不能修饰动词；(c)goodly 是形容词，有"漂亮的"意思，也不能修饰动词；只有(b)well(好)是副词，能修饰动词，因此(b)是正确答案。

6. (c)

这是一个对地点提问的疑问句，需要选出正确的回答。(a)Down (*adv*. 向下，在下方)、(b)Under (*adj*. 在下，下方)、(c)Below (*adv*. 在下面，低处)和(d)Bottom(*n*. 底，底部)4 个选择中只有(c)词义和词性都比较正确，并能独立回答问题说明地点，因此应该选(c)。

7. (c)

本句需要一个现在分词作定语修饰名词。(b)laid 和(d)lied都不是现在分词;(a)laying(放,置)虽然是现在分词,但词义不适合这个句子;(c)lying 是 lie 的现在分词,表示"位于"、"处于某种状态";只有(c)最合乎题义,因此应该选(c)。

8. (a)

本句需要选一个合适的副词描绘风刮的状态,(b)fast(快)、(c)quickly(快)、(d)soon(不久,立刻)这 3 个词的意义相近,但都不适合描写风刮的状态。只有(a)hard(强烈地,厉害地)可以用来描写风刮的状态,最合乎题义,因此应该选(a)。

9. (c)

本句需要选一个同前一句中的 crashed into(猛撞在,坠毁在)含义相同的词。(a)smashed(碰碎,摔破)强调把什么东西打碎,而本句的宾语是 courtyard,故(a)不正确;(b)knocked(打击,狠敲)的宾语也不应该是 courtyard;(c)struck(打,击)是 strike 的过去式;(d)exploded(使爆炸)与 crashed 的意思不同;只有(c)struck 比较接近 crashed into 的含义,因此应该选(c)。

10. (c)

前句 It was smashed to pieces 是"它被摔成碎片"的意思,本句需要选出与这个句子含义相同的动词短语。(a)was struck(被打击)、(b)was cracked(被撞破裂)、(c)was destroyed(被毁坏,被破坏)、(d)was damaged(被损坏,被损伤)4 个选择中只有(c)同 was smashed to pieces 的含义最接近,因此(c)是正确答案。

11. (a)

本句需要选出与前一句中的 glanced at(扫视)含义相同

的词或短语。(a)looked quickly at(快看)、(b)had a glimpse of(看一眼,瞥一眼)、(c)stared at(盯着……看)和(d)watched(观看)4个选择中只有(a)与 glanced at 的含义最接近,因此应该选(a)。

12. (a)

本句需要选出同前一句的副词 promptly(迅速地)意义相同的词或词组。(a)straight away(立刻)、(b)after a while(过一会儿)、(c)after a time(过一段时间)和(d)late(晚,迟)4个选择中只有(a)同 promptly 的含义最接近,因此(a)是正确答案。

4 句子结构答案

A gust of wind *swept the bed off the roof*.

Lesson 50
Taken for a ride
乘车兜风

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer wanted to go to Woodford Green but as he did not know the way, the conductor promised to tell him where to get off. When they arrived at the bus terminus, the writer asked if they were at Woodford Green. The conductor then realized that he had forgotten to put him off. The writer stayed on the bus because it was going back. (65 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. On going into the kitchen, I turned on the light because it was dark.
2. My brother shouted angrily when the lights went on.
3. I spoilt a film which he was developing.

书信写作参考答案

Dear Grandmother, Dear Elizabeth, Dear Jack, Dear Uncle Tom

关键句型练习答案

A. *love* travelling (1.1); *don't like* losing (1.1); *don't know* where it is (1.5); This is as far as we *go* (1.10)

B. 'Let's eat here,' I said to my wife.

'I (*would*) *prefer* to have a drink first,' she answered.

'That's a good idea,' I said. I picked up the menu. 'I *don't understand* a thing.' I said. 'It's all in Spanish.'

'It *doesn't matter*,' said my wife.

'What *does* that word *mean*?' I asked.

'I *don't know*,' she answered.

We called the waiter and pointed to the word on the menu. 'Two,' I said, holding up two fingers.

After some time, my wife said suddenly, 'Look! He'*s bringing* us two boiled eggs!'

(表示习惯性的动作请参见第26课关键句型练习答案注解)

难点练习答案

a/b. 1. miss

miss the bus 误了汽车

2. loose

come loose 松了

3. expect

expect sb. to do sth. 期待某人做某事

4. lose

lose your money 丢钱,输钱

5. waited

wait at some place 在某地等待

c. 1. *It takes* me an hour to get to my office.

2. *It took* me fifteen hours to reach Tokyo.

3. *It took* him six months to write the book.

注解:

It takes/took sb. some time to do sth. 表示"某人做某事需要花多少时间"。

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第 4～5 行"I'm going to the Woodford Green ... but I don't know where it is 可以看出只有(b) He didn't know where to get off 是作者请售票员帮忙的原因,所以(b)是正确答案,其他 3 个选择均与课文实际内容不符。

2. (d)

根据课文第 12 行'Oh dear,' said the conductor suddenly 与'I forgot to put you off',可以判断只有(d)forgetful(健忘的)最能恰当地描绘售票员。其他 3 个选择(a)helpful(乐于助人的)、(b)lazy(懒)和(c)rude(粗鲁)词义都不够恰当。

3. (a)

本句需要选一个合适的词作主语。(b)Travel 是动词,不能作主语;(c)The travelling 是动名词可以作主语,但前面没必要加定冠词;(d)To travelling 不合乎语法,To 不应该放在动名词前,而应该在动词前,动词不定式可以作

主语；只有(a)Travelling 是动名词，可以作主语，因此应该选(a)。

4. (c)

(b)as long 和(d)such a long 都不合乎语法，因此可以排除；(a)longer(较长的)在后一句话中没有对比，因此形容词比较也可以排除；(c)so long(如此长)是符合题义的，因为前一句中的 longer than he expected 等于 did not expect it to last so long，所以(c)是正确答案。

5. (c)

只有选(c)shall I 才能使这个问句的意思完整并合乎语法。(a)to、(b)for 和(d)in order to 都不能使其成为完整的句子，所以(c)是正确答案。

6. (a)

只有(a)any 才能同句子中的 more 连用，表示"任何别的"，同前一句 I was the only passenger 的含义相符合。而(b)many(许多)、(c)lots(许多)和(d)a few(少数几个)都不能与 any 连用，也不符合题义。

7. (a)

(b)more far 不合语法，因为 far 的比较级形式应该是 farther 或 further；(c)further more 不合题义，(d)so far(如此远)4 个选择中只有(a)最合乎题义，因为 any further 同前一句 This is as far as we go(这是我们所能达到的程度)的含义相同，所以(a)是正确答案。

8. (d)

(a)drives a bus(开公共汽车)、(b)inspects the tickets(查票)、(c)buys tickets(买票)和(d)collects fares(收车费)这 4 个选择中只有(d)符合题义，售票员通常是收车费的，所以应该选(d)。

9. (b)

本句需要选出同前一句中的 got on(上车)意义相反的词组。(a)get down(下去)、(b)get off(下车)、(c)get out of(从……出去)和(d)get over(越过去)4 个选择中只有(b)get off 是 get on 的反义词,因此应该选(b)。

10. (b)

(a)sight(景象,景物)指能够看到的事物和情景;(b)view(观察,风景)指从特别的角度看到的、观察到的景象;(c)scene(风景,景色)指某个地方的自然景观;(d)scenery(风景,景色)指自然环境,特别是美丽开阔的乡间景色。只有(b)与其他 3 个词的含义不同,强调"观察到的",最符合题义,因此应该选(b)。

11. (c)

(a)don't remember(不记得)、(b)don't know(不知道)、(c)don't mind(不介意)和(d)don't matter(没关系)4 个选择中只有(c)最合乎题义,同前一句'It doesn't matter',I said(我说:"没关系")的含义相同。所以(c)是正确答案。

12. (d)

只有选(d)best 才能使这个句子同前一句 I prefer to stay on the bus(我比较喜欢呆在汽车上)的含义比较接近,所以(d)是正确答案。(a)my favourite(我最喜爱的东西)、(b)my best(我最好的)、(c)beloved(亲爱的)这 3 个词都与前一句的意义不符。

Lesson 51
Reward for virtue
对美德的奖赏

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Hugh is so fat that he has gone on a diet. He has forbidden himself all the foods he likes but he has not lost weight. When the writer visited him yesterday, he hid a large parcel under his desk. The parcel contained chocolates and sweets. Hugh said that he had to reward himself occasionally because his diet was so strict. (61 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. I invited a friend to dinner at an expensive restaurant and we had a good meal.
2. After dinner I asked for the bill.
3. I didn't have enough money, so I had to borrow some from my guest.

书信写作参考答案

Dear (Jane), Dear Bill, Dear Mr. X, Dear Mr. Y

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *got* (1.1); *decided* (1.2); *began* (1.2); *wrote out* (1.3); *included* (1.4); *paid* (1.5); *rang* (1.6); *was not surprised* (1.6); *led* (1.7); *hid* (1.7); *asked* (1.9); *smiled* (1.9); *put* (1.9); *explained* (1.10); *had to* reward (1.10); *showed* (1.10)

(一般过去时请参见第 27 课关键句型练习答案注解)

难点练习答案

1. rose　2. lying　3. laid　4. rose

5. beats　6. win

注解:

1 rise *vi*. 起来,升起

raise *vt*. 提起,抬起

2 lie *vi*. 躺(过去式 lay,过去分词 lain,现在分词 lying)

lay *vt*. 摆,放(过去式和过去分词 laid)

3 beat *vt*. 战胜(对方),一般指比赛

win *vt*., *vi*. 赢(某场比赛)

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第 6～7 行 . . . and was not surprised to see that Hugh was still as fat as ever 可以看出只有(b) but he didn't lose any weight at all 与课文的实际内容相符,其他 3 个选择均与课文实际情况不符。

2. (c)

根据课文第 9～10 行 He explained that his diet was so strict that he had to reward himself occasionally 可以推断只有(c)hasn't kept to a strict diet(没有严格控制饮食)是课文所暗示的情况，而其他 3 个选择都不符课文的实际内容。

3. (d)

只有选(d)is 才能使这个句子的意义和时态同前一个句子 My friend . . . has always been fat 相协调，(a)was 时态不对；(b)has 不是系动词，不能跟形容词；(c)has been 时态不对，表示"他现在仍然胖"，没有必要用现在完成时。

4. (d)

本句的时间状语是 How long ago 表示过去的时间，因此应该用一般过去时。(a)will he begin 是将来时；(b)has he begun 是完成时；(c)was he beginning 是过去进行时。这 3 个选择时态都不正确。只有(d)did he begin 是一般过去时，最合乎语法，因此应该选(d)。

5. (d)

只有(d)in 可以同本句的动词 included 连用表示"包括"。因此(d)是正确答案。其他 3 个选择(a)into、(b)on 和(c)with都不能同 include 连用构成短语动词。

6. (a)

这是一个一般过去时疑问句，需要选一个正确的谓语动词，只有(a)hide 是原形动词，最符合语法，因为疑问句中已有助动词 did 提问了，所以谓语动词要用动词原形，而不能用过去式。(b)hidden 是过去分词，(c)hid 是 hide 的过去式，(d)hiding 是进行式。后 3 个选择都不正确。

7. (d)

只有(d)guilty(内疚的)最合乎语法，因为本句的谓语动

词是 felt(感到),它是系动词,所以后面只能跟形容词作表语,guilty 是形容词,因此(d)是正确答案。(a)guilt 是名词,(b)guilty 是副词,(c)guiltless 是形容词,但与 guilty 意义相反,不符合前一句的含义。

8. (c)

前一句中的 forbbidden 是"禁止"的意思,本句需选出与它的含义相反的词。(a)left(离开,剩下)、(b)let(让)、(c)allowed(允许)和(d)aloud(大声地)4 个答案中只有(c)allowed是 forbbidden 的反义词,因此(c)是正确答案。

9. (a)

只有(a)visited him 是正确的,因为它同前一句 I paid him a visit 的含义相同。其他 3 个选择(b)made him visit、(c)did him a visit 和(d)paid for a visit 都不是正确的表达方式。

10. (d)

(a)steered(驾驶船或车)、(b)pulled(拖,拉)、(c)drove(驾驶)、(d)showed(带领,指引)只有选(d)showed 才能使这个句子同前一句的意义相同,因此(d)是正确答案。

11. (d)

本句需要选一个同前一句中的 embarrassed(感到尴尬的)意义相近的词。(a)shy(害羞的,腼腆的)、(b)shameful(可耻的)、(c)hot(热的)和(d)uncomfortable(不安的,不自在的)4 个选择中只有(d)uncomfortable 与 embarrassed 的意义相近,所以(d)是正确答案。

12. (b)

本句需要选出与前一句中的 occasionally(偶尔地,不时地)意思相同的短语。(a)again and again(一遍又一遍地)、(b)now and again(不时地)、(c)once again(再一次)和(d)over and over again(一遍又一遍地,反复地)4 个选

择中只有(b)now and again 同 occasionally 的含义相同，因此应该选(b)。

4 句子结构答案

When I asked him what he was doing, he smiled guiltily and then put the parcel on the desk.

Lesson 52
A pretty carpet
漂亮的地毯

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer has been trying to get his new room in order all morning. This has proved difficult because he owns over a thousand books which cover every inch of floor space at the moment. His sister helped him to carry one of his old bookcases up the stairs a short while ago. She got a surprise when she saw the room, but she thought that the books made a pretty carpet.

(72 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. *When* I moved into a new room, three workmen brought my things upstairs.
2. There were *not only* several cases of clothes, *but* hundreds of books *as well*.
3. *Since* the pile was as high as the ceiling, I could not get into my room.

书信写作参考答案

Dear Ted, Dear Mr. X/Sir, Dear Mary, Dear Grandfather

关键句型练习答案

A. What has happened: We *have* just *moved* (1.1); This *has not been* easy (1.3); I *have* ... *put* (11.4-5); I *have* ever *seen* (1.9)

What has been happening: I *have been working* (1.1); I *have been trying* (1.2)

C. have explained ... have understood ... Have you been listening ... has been working/has worked ... has been earning/has earned ... has she earned ... have not been listening

注解：

本课的关键句型是现在完成时和现在完成进行时。现在完成时前面已经讲过，请参见第 28 课关键句型练习答案注解。

现在完成进行时表示动作在某一段时间内一直在进行，通常动作有现在的结果。到现在为止，该动作可能已不再继续进行，也可能还在继续进行，这要根据上下文来确定。句中常含有 all + 表示时间的词，如 all day、all morning 等：

现在完成进行时由 have been + 现在分词构成：

We have just moved into a new house and I *have been working* hard all morning.

我们刚刚搬进一所新房子，我辛辛苦苦干了整整一个上午。

I *have been trying* to get my new room in order.

我试图把我的房间收拾整齐。

难点练习答案

1. carefully

   carefully *adv*. 小心地　careful *adj*. 小心的

2. hard

   hard *adv*. 用力地，重重地　hardly *adv*. 几乎不

3. hard

   hard *adj*. 困难的，坚硬的，费力的（修饰名词）

4. late

   late *adv*. 迟地，晚地；*adj*. 晚的，迟的，

   lately *adv*. 最近，不久前

5. nearly

   nearly *adv*. 几乎，近乎

   near *adj*. 近的，不远的

   near *adv*. & *prep*. 很近，不远

6. fast

   fast *adv*. 快，迅速地；*adj*. 快的，迅速的

7. high

   high *adv*. 高；*adj*. 高的

   highly *adv*. 很，非常（用于修饰动词派生的形容词）：

   highly skilled 技术高超的

   highly paid 高薪的

8　多项选择练习

1. (b)

   根据课文第 2～3 行 I have been trying to get my new room in order. This has not been easy because I own over a thousand books 可以看出只有(b)he is finding it difficult to get his room in order 与课文的实际情况相符，其他 3

个选择都不符合故事所描述的情景。

2. (c)

根据课文第 9～10 行'This is the prettiest carpet I have ever seen,' she said 可以推断只有(c) the books make a nice carpet 是作者的妹妹的真实想法,其他 3 个选择都与课文内容不符,也不是他妹妹所认为的。

3. (c)

只有(c) is still working 是正确的,因为前半句用的是现在完成进行时,表示到现在为止动作还在继续进行,所以后半句应该用现在进行时,才能使这个句子的时态协调一致。其他 3 个选择(a) still works、(b) has still worked 和(d) still worked 都不能与前半句的时态相配。

4. (a)

(a) make it tidy(把它收拾整齐);(b) keep it tidy(保持整洁);(c) make order 不合乎惯用法,意思讲不通;(d) keep order(维持秩序)。只有(a)最符合题义,因为 make it tidy 与前一句中的 get his room in order 的意思相同,所以(a)是正确答案。

5. (b)

(a) a small enough 不合语法,不能说 a small enough room,可以是 The room is small enough。(b) a fairly small(相当小的),(c) a terribly small(极其小的),(d) a much smaller(更加小的)。4 个选择中只有(b)是正确的,因为(b)中的 fairly 同前一句中的 rather(相当)意义相同,所以只有(b)才能使这个句子同前一句 His room is rather small 的意义相同。

6. (d)

本句中的谓语动词 help 后面只可以跟动词不定式,动词不定式的形式可以是带 to 的,也可以是不带 to 的,即

help sb. to do sth.或 help sb. do sth.。只有(d)carry 最合乎语法,所以只能选(d)。(a)carrying、(b)to carrying 和(c)for carrying 这 3 个选择都不是动词不定式,因此都不合乎语法。

7. (c)

(a)needn't(不必)是情态助动词,必须同另一动词连用,而本句没有其他动词同它连用,故(a)不正确;(b)needs not 不合语法,当 need 作普通动词时,否定式应该用助动词 do 加 not 后面跟原形动词 need;第 3 人称单数应该是 doesn't need;(d)isn't needing 不合语法,因为动词 need 很少用于进行时态,很少说“正在需要”或“正在不需要”;只有(c)doesn't need 最合乎语法,所以应该选(c)。

8. (b)

只有(b)long 最符合题义,因为本句为否定句,前一句是肯定句,所以需要选出同前一句中的 temporarily(暂时地)意义相对的词。只有(b)long 同 temporarily 的含义相反,所以应该选(b)。(a)for a short time(短时间)、(c)for a few days(几天)、(d)for a few hours(几个小时)这 3 个选择都不与 temporarily 含义相反。

9. (a)

(a)room(空余的地方)泛指空间,不可数;(b)place(地点,地方)指某一特定的空间部分,可数;(c)area(面积,地面);(d)spaces(空间,空位,场所)可以作可数和不可数名词。只有(a)最合乎题义,因为 room 同前一句中的 space 意义相同,它们都是不可数名词,所以应该选(a)。而(b)place不能作不可数名词,(c)area 词义不对,(d)spaces 不应该是复数,故后 3 个选择都不正确。

10. (c)

(a) else(别的,另外,其他)只能同 nothing、anything、

something 等词连用;(b)different(不同的)是形容词不能修饰动词;(d)other(其余的)代词不能修饰动词;只有(c)otherwise(用不同的方法,不同地)最合乎语法和题义,因此只有(c)才与前一句 He actually has to walk on them 的含义相吻合。

11. (b)

(a)watched(观看)、(b)stared at(盯着看)、(c)glanced at(看一下)和(d)had a glimpse of(瞥了一眼)4 个选择中只有(b)stared at 与前一句中的 gazed at(盯着)意义相同,因此应该选(b)。

12. (c)

只有(c)not working(不工作)同前一句中的 in your spare time(空闲时)的含义相符,因此应该选(c)。其他 3 个选择(a)working、(b)studying 和(d)reading 都不正确。

4 句子结构答案

To *make matters worse, the room is rather small.*

Lesson 53
Hot snake
触电的蛇

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Now that firemen have put out a big forest fire in California, they have been trying to discover its cause. There was no evidence that it was started by broken glass or a cigarette end. However a fireman has just solved the mystery. He noticed the remains of a snake which had been dropped by a bird on to some electric wires. In winding itself round the wires, the snake had sent sparks to the ground and this caused the fire. (81 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. I was smoking in bed when I went to sleep.
2. Suddenly I woke up for the sheet was burning.
3. I jumped up to put the fire out but there was already a big hole in the sheet.

书信写作参考答案

99 Zhongshan Rd., Haidian District, Beijing 100089, China. 15th May, 1997
Dear Mrs Zhang,

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. What happened: *began* (1.2); *examined* (1.4); *were not able* to find (1.5); *did not start* (1.6); *discovered* (1.7); *noticed* (1.8); *was wound* (1.8); *was able* to solve (1.9); *dropped* (1.10); *wound* (1.11); it *did* so (1.11); *sent* (1.11); *started* (1.11)

What has happened: *have put* out (1.1)

What has been happening: *have been trying* to find (1.2)

C. Jack *looked* at his watch for the twentieth time. Suddenly Jill *arrived*.

'I'*ve been waiting* for over an hour,' he said angrily. 'You never come on time.'

'Oh, is that so?' Jill *answered*. '*Were* you here at 2.30?'

Jack *went* red. 'Well,' he said, 'I *got* here five minutes late myself, but you *weren't* here.'

'I *came* here at exactly 2.30,' Jill *said*, 'and I

waited for five minutes, but you *didn't come*.'

'What *have* you *been doing* since then?' Jack *asked*.

'I'*ve* just *been* to the hairdresser's,' Jill *answered* brightly.

难点练习答案

a. Look: you threw the potato-peeler away by mistake.

The shepherd threw some food to his dogs.

The teacher threw some chalk at a boy who wasn't listening.

注解:

throw . . . away 把……扔掉

throw . . . to . . . 把……扔给……

throw . . . at . . . 把……扔向……

b. I'm quite certain these are my glasses.

The children are very quiet. What's going on?

注解:

quite *adv*. 相当,颇

quiet *adj*. 安静的

c. The cause of unemployment is complicated.

Can you explain the reason for changing our arrangements?

He reasoned that we would have to comply, even if we didn't wish to.

注解:

cause *n*. 原因

reason *n*. 缘由,理由

reason *v*. 以理说服,劝说

d. Please don't drop that vase!

It fell from my hands and broke.

注解：

drop *vt*. 使掉下

fall *vi*. 掉下，摔下

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

   根据课文第 2 行 ... they have been trying to find out how the fire began 可以判断只有(c)wanted to find out what had caused the fire 最能说明消防队员仔细查看地面的原因，其他 3 个选择都不够全面。

2. (d)

   根据课文第 10～12 行 A bird had snatched up the snake from the ground and then dropped it on to the wires ... When it did so, it sent sparks down to the ground and these immediately started a fire 可以推断只有(d)a snake which had been dropped on to the wires by a bird 与课文实际内容相符，只有它是引起火灾的原因，其他 3 个选择都不符合课文的实际内容。

3. (a)

   只有(a)since 最合乎题义和语法。因为本句是现在完成进行时，只有 since 引导的时间短语最适合于完成进行时态，表示"自从……以来"，所以应该选(a)。其他 3 个选择(b)for、(c)ago和(d)by 都不能引导合适的时间短语。

4. (c)

   本句表示时间的词是 often，表示经常性的动作，因此应该用一般现在时。(a)is causing 是进行时，(b)has caused 是完成时，(d)is caused by 是现在时被动语态，而本句需要用主动语态。只有(c)causes 是一般现在时，第 3 人称

单数形式，本句的主语 Broken glass 是单数，所以(c)最符合语法，应该选(c)。

5. (c)

(a)almost certain(几乎肯定)、(b)fairly certain(相当肯定)、(c)completely certain(完全肯定)和(d)nearly certain(几乎肯定)4 个答案中只有(c)同前一句中的 quite sure(十分确信)意义最接近，因此应该选(c)。

6. (c)

只有(c)succeeded in solving it(成功解决了它)同前一句中的 was able to solve the mystery(解开了这个迷)的含义相同。因此(c)是正确答案。其他 3 个选择(a)、(b)和(d)都与前一句的含义不符。

7. (d)

只有(d)on 是正确的，因为它后面的词是 the ground，表示"在地面上"，只能用介词 on。其他 3 个选择(a)at、(b)from和(c)over 都不合乎题义。所以(d)是正确答案。

8. (c)

(a)controlled it(控制了它)、(b)checked it(制止了它)、(c)extinguished it(扑灭了它)和(d)turned it off(关掉，关上它)中，只有(c)extinguished it 与前一句中的 put out the fire(把火扑灭)意义相同，因此应该选(c)。

9. (d)

只有(d)this morning(今天上午或早上)是正确表达方式。其他 3 个选择都不符合惯用法，都不是正确的表达方式，所以(d)是正确答案。

10. (a)

(a) by chance (偶然)、(b) chancily (没有这个词)、(c)fortunately(幸运地)和(d)luckily(侥幸地，幸运地)这 4 个选择中只有(a)by chance 同前一句中的 accidentally

(偶然地)意义相同,所以(a)是正确答案。

11. (c)

前一句中的短语 In this way 意为"用这种方法",本句需要选一个同这一短语含义相符的短语。(a)That's so(就是如此)、(b)Like this(像这样)、(d)So(因此)这 3 个选择都不合乎题义。只有(c)That's how(那就是……的方法)同 In this way 的含义相符合,因为 how 相当于 the way in which,所以(c)是正确答案。

12. (c)

(a)taken(拿)、(b)pulled(拉,拖)、(c)seized(抓住)和(d)carried(携带)这 4 个选择中只有(c)seized 同前一句中的 snatched(抓住)意义相同,所以(c)是正确答案。

4 句子结构答案

When *it did so*, *it sent sparks down to the ground*.

Lesson 54
Sticky fingers
粘糊的手指

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

As soon as the writer returned home from the shops she began to make some meat pies. When the telephone rang soon afterwards, her fingers were very sticky. She spent ten minutes talking to Helen Bates on the telephone. After that she looked at the mess she had made. Her fingers, the telephone and the doorknobs were covered with pastry. Just then the postman rang the doorbell. He wanted her to sign for a registered letter. (75 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. *After putting* the cake in the oven, I forgot all about it.
2. *When* two hours had passed, I smelt something burning.
3. *On* going into the kitchen, I found it full of smoke.

书信写作参考答案

24 Clayton Ave.,
St. Albans,
Herts,
England.
17th June, 19 ____

Dear Mary,

Thank you for the beautiful birthday present you sent me last week.

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第6～12行，只有(d)at an inconvenient time(在不方便的时候)与课文的实际内容相符，其他3个选择均与课文事实不符。

2. (b)

根据课文第6～12行，可以判断只有(b)the writer was interrupted several times while making meat pies(当作者做肉馅时几次被打断)才是Everything got into a mess(一切都被搞乱了)的真正原因，其他3个选择都与故事中的情节不相符。

3. (d)

只有(d)是正确的。该句意为“早餐是一天中的第一顿饭”这里的breakfast是泛指的早餐。而不是具体指某一顿早餐，因此前面不要加冠词。所以(a)The、(b)A和(c)This都不正确。

4. (b)

只有(b)at可以同本句中的home连用构成固定短语，at

home 表示“在家”，而其他 3 个介词(a)to、(c)in 和(d)on 都不能同 home 连用，所以(b)是正确答案。

5. (d)

本句只有用最高级才能同前一句 Nothing could have been more annoying(再没有比这更烦人的了)的含义相同。(a)the more 不是最高级；(b)more 只能用于比较级；(c)most 前面缺少定冠词，不能表示最高级；只有(d)the most 是最高级形式，最符合题义，因此(d)是正确答案。

6. (b)

Helen Bates(海伦·贝茨)是一个女人的名字，因为是以字母 s 结尾的，它的所有格形式就应该是在名字后面加一小撇 ' 而无需再用-'s。只有(b)Bates' 是正确的所有格形式，而其他 3 个(a)Bate's、(c)Bates 和(d)Bate 都不正确，所以(b)是正确答案。

7. (a)

只有(a)when 可以同这一句中的 hardly 连用，表示“刚刚……就”，所以(a)是正确答案。其他 3 个选择(b)than、(c)as 和(d)as soon as 都不能同 when 搭配。

8. (d)

(a)joining them(连接它们，加入他们的行列)，(b)uniting them(联合/统一它们)，(c)unifying them(统一它们)，(d)putting them together(把它们放到一起)。只有(d)能够解释说明前一句中的 mixing butter and flour(调拌黄油和面粉)，其他 3 个选择意思都不够贴切，因此(d)是正确答案。

9. (c)

(a)ink(墨水)、(b)water(水)、(c)glue(胶水)和(d)flour(面粉)这 4 个词中只有(c)glue 同这一句中的 pastry(面糊)性质相像，它们都是粘的，所以应该选(c)。

10. (b)

(a)pity(遗憾的事,可惜的事)、(b)sorry(难过的,惋惜的)、(c)ill(有病的)、(d)tired(疲劳的,累的)这 4 个词中只有(b)sorry 同前一句中的 dismayed(失望的,灰心的)含义最接近,因此应该选(b)。

11. (d)

前一句 She hung up the receiver 意为"她挂上了话筒",本句需要选出同前一句意思相同的短语。(a)let it hang(让它挂)、(b)didn't put it back(没有把它放回去)、(c)held it(举着它,拿着它)和(d)put it back in its place(把它放回原处)4 个选择中只有(d)同前一句的意思相符合,因此(d)是正确答案。

12. (d)

该句是现在完成时,缺少合适的过去分词。(a)hanged 是 hang(吊死,绞死)的过去式和过去分词;(b)hang 是原形动词,不合语法;(c)hanging 是现在分词,不能用于完成时态;(d)hung 是 hang(悬挂,挂起)的过去式和过去分词,只有(d)最合乎语法和题义,因此(d)是正确答案。

4 句子结构答案

I picked up the receiver between two sticky fingers and was dismayed when I recognized the voice of Helen Bates.

Lesson 55
Not a gold mine
并非金矿

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

'The Revealer' is a new machine which is used for detecting buried gold. Using this machine, a search party recently tried to find gold in a cave near the seashore. Although they examined the cave thoroughly they only found a small gold coin which was practically worthless. However many people believe that the machine may reveal something of value soon.

(60 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. I was digging in the garden since I lost a gold ring in it the other day.
2. I searched everywhere and then dug up the garden.
3. I did not find it but found a valuable old coin instead.

书信写作参考答案

17 Bunyan St.,
Sevenoaks,
Kent,
England.
27th March, 19 ____

Dear Tom,

I was very pleased to receive the post card you sent me last week.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. What happened: *came* true (1.1); *was used* (1.4); *went* (1.7); *showed* (1.9); *dug* (1.9); *found* (1.10); *searched . . . did not find* (11.10-11)

What was happening: *was examining* (1.8)

What used to/would happen: *used to hide* (1.5); *would* often *bury*. . . and then (they would) *fail* (11.5-6)

注解:

有一类表示过去习惯性动作的句子,常常用 used to 或 would:

. . . it is said—pirates *used to* hide gold in it.

……据说过去海盗们常在里面藏金子。

The pirates *would* often bury gold in the cave.

海盗们过去常把金子埋藏在那个洞里。

难点练习答案

a. 1. used to 2. used to 3. uses 4. used to

5. am used to　　6. am used to

b. 1. gold　　2. golden

注解:

used to 过去经常(后接动词不定式)

be used to 习惯于(后面要接名词)

use *v*. 使用

gold *n*. 金子,黄金(可以作定语)

golden *adj*. 金子的,金子般的

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

根据课文第7~8行 ... a search party went into the cave hoping to find buried treasure 可以推测只有(a)gold 是探宝队所寻找的东西。(b)gold mine(金矿)、(c)pirates(海盗)、(d)a tin trunk(铁皮箱)这3个选择都与课文的实际内容不符,因此(a)是正确答案。

2. (a)

根据课文最后一句 In spite of this, many people are confident that 'The revealer' may reveal something of value fairly soon 可以判断只有(a)works very well 能够说明"探宝器"的性能如何,而其他3个选择都与课文内容不符。

3. (b)

只有(b)detecting(探测)最合乎语法,因为介词 for 后面只能跟名词或动名词,(a) to detect、(c) detect 和(d)detected都不能用在介词后面,所以(b)detecting 是正确答案。

4. (d)

前半句中的 used to 表示过去常做某事，而现在已经不做了，只有(d)that's what they would do(那就是他们过去经常做的)同前半句意思相吻合。因为 would 同 used to 一样也表示过去经常性动作。其他 3 个选择(a)and they always do、(b)and they still do 和(c)and they still do 都表示现在还做，不合逻辑。

5. (a)

只有(a)would find 是正确的，因为前一句 They hoped to find ...就等于 They hoped they would find ...。其他 3 个选择(b)had found、(c)will find 和(d)are going to find 都与前一句的时态不符，所以(a)是正确答案。

6. (a)

该句是一般过去时疑问句，因为已经有助动词 did 提问了，所以谓语动词要用原形。只有(a)dig 是动词原形。其他 3 个选择(b)digging、(c)dug 和(d)have dug 都不是动词原形，因此应该选(a)。

7. (c)

本句的疑问词 How 是对主语 the hole 的状态或性质提问的，因此它后面应该跟形容词。只有(c)deep(深的)是形容词，可以修饰名词 hole。其他 3 个选择中：(a)deeply (深深地)词性不对；(b)depth(深)是名词，词性也不正确；(d)down(向下)词性和词义都不正确。所以只能选(c)。

8. (a)

该句的主语 Revealer(探宝器)是一种机器。(a)machine (机器)、(b)engine(发动机，火车的机车)、(c)machinery (机器总称)是不可数名词和(d)mechanic(技工，机修工)这 4 个词中只有(a)machine 可以是 Revealer 的定义，因

此只能选(a)。

9. (b)

前一句中的 examining the soil 意为“检查土壤”,本句需要选出同它含义相同的短语。(a)testing it(考验它)、(b)looking at it carefully(仔细观察它)、(c)watching it(留意它)和(d)trying it(尝试它)这4个选择中只有(b)looking at it carefully 同 examining the soil 含义最接近,因此(b)是正确答案。

10. (d)

只有(d)value(价值)最符合题义,因为 of small value (价值很小)同前一句中的 almost worthless(几乎没有价值)的意义相同,所以应该选(d)。其他3个选择中(a)worthy(值得的)是形容词,词性不对;(b)honour(荣幸,荣誉)的词义不对;(c)price(价格,物价)词义不够贴切。

11. (a)

(a) completely (完全地)、(b) across (横越,在对面)、(c)inside(在里面)和(d)finally(最终)这4个词中只有(a)completely同前一句中的 thoroughly(彻底地)含义相同,因此应该选(a)。

12. (b)

(a)confide (*v*. 吐露)、(b)believe (*v*. 相信)、(c)confuse (*v*. 使弄错,混淆)和(d)confess (*v*. 坦白)4个选择中只有(b)believe 同前一句中的 are confident(确信的,自信的)含义相符,因此应该选(b)。

Lesson 56
Faster than sound!
比声音还快！

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

A lot of old cars entered for the race, which is held once a year. A great many loud explosions could be heard when they set off and though many cars broke down during the race, a few managed to complete the course. The winning car went downhill so quickly that its driver had a lot of difficulty trying to stop it. (62 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. There was a loud explosion *and* my old car stopped.
2. I got out *to* have a look at the engine.
3. Then *a man who* was driving a large modern car passed me.
4. I waved to him *but* he did not stop.
5. *When* I passed the car later, its driver was changing a wheel.

书信写作参考答案

1. I am sorry it has taken me so long to write, but I have been really busy with the final examinations for the past few weeks.

2. I was glad to hear from you at last and to learn that you were getting on well with your studies.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. One of *the most handsome cars* (1.3); *The most unusual car* (1.4); *the oldest car* (1.5); *more time under their cars than in them* (11.7-8); *much faster than any of...* (1.9); but *no less exciting* (than modern car races) (1.11)（关于比较级和最高级请参见第 8 课关键句型练习答案注解，关于其他一些表示比较关系的句型请参见第 32 课关键句型练习答案注解）

难点练习答案

a. They have some very *handsome* antique furniture.

Switzerland is a very *beautiful* country.

She was a very *pretty* baby, but she's quite plain now.

They make a very *good-looking* couple.

注解：

handsome 漂亮的，清秀的，可以形容人，也可以形容物，形容人时常指男人。

beautiful 美丽的，可以描写人，也可以描写物，描写人的外貌时，强调给感官以极大的快乐。

pretty 漂亮的，俊俏的，可爱的，尤指女人、小孩或精致的小东西。

good-looking 好看的，美貌的，通常只用于人，既可以指女人、小孩，又可以指男人。

b. Can you *reach* the top of that cupboard?

They *arrived at* the station just in time.

注解:

reach 及物动词,到达,触及,伸展,够着,可以指到达某地,可以指达到某种程度,高度。

arrive at/in 到达,后面只能跟地点,arrive at 指到达较小的地点,arrive in 指到达大的空间,如国家、城市等。

c. Are you *taking part* in the new play?

The meeting *took place* in Paris last week.

注解:

take part (in) 参加

take place 发生;举行

8 多项选择练习

1. (c)

根据课文第 1 句和最后 1 句 Once a year, a race is held for old cars. It was very different from modern car races but no less exciting 可以推测只有(c)All the cars were old 是汽车比赛不寻常之处,其他 3 个选择虽然都是课文提及的内容也与汽车比赛有关,但它们都不能清楚地表明汽车比赛为什么不寻常。

2. (a)

根据课文第 8 行 A few cars, however, completed the race 只有(a)but only a few completed the course 与课文的实际情形相符,其他 3 个选择都与课文实际情况不符。

3. (c)

只有(c)lots of 与前一句中的 A lot of(很多)的意思相同,所以应该选(c)。(a)much 不能修饰可数名词;(b)lot of

不是正确表达方式，应该是 a lot of 或 lots of；(d)plenty (充足)，plenty of 是一个短语，表示“足够的”，而且这个短语也不合题义。

4. (c)

只有选(c)It was built 这个句子意思才完整，并合乎语法。这是一个用连词 so 连接，表示结果的并列句，因此前半句就应该是一个有主谓结构的句子，只有(c)It was built 是一个意思比较完整的并含有主谓语的句子。而其他 3 个选择(a)It built、(b)Built 和(d)Having built 意义都不完整，不能成为独立句子，因此(c)是正确答案。

5. (a)

该句需要选一个同前一句中的形容词意思相同的比较级形式，才能与前一句含义相符。(b)the oldest 和(d)the eldest 都是最高级，因此可以排除；(a)an older(较旧的)和(c)an elder(较年长的)都是比较级，但只有(a)an older 是前一句中的形容词最高级 the oldest 的比较级形式，因此应该选(a)。

6. (c)

只有(c)went at 最符合语法和惯用法。因为表示“以什么速度运行”可以用 to go at + some miles an hour。所以 went at forty miles an hour 与前一句中的 reached a speed of forty miles an hour(达到了每小时 40 英里的速度)含义相符合。其他 3 个选择(a)ran、(b)ran with、(d)drove with 都不正确。

7. (a)

该句需要选出与前一句中的 different from(不同于)意义相反的词组。只有(a)the same as(与……相同)是 different from 的反义词，符合惯用法。其他 3 个选择(b)the same with、(c)same with 和(d)same as 都不是正

确的表达方式。

8. (b)

该句需要选出同前一句中的 the most handsome(最漂亮的)的意义相近的词。(a)pretty(漂亮的,可爱的)常用来描写女人、小孩或精致的小东西,而不适合描写汽车;(b)beautiful(美丽的,漂亮的);(c)seemly(适宜的,恰当的);(d) nice(好的,精美的)。这 4 个词中只有(b)beautiful语气最强,与 handsome 的意义最接近,因此(b)是正确答案。

9. (b)

该句需要选出同前一句中的 unusual(不寻常的)意义相反的词才符合题义。(a)used(用过的,旧的)、(b)common(常见的,寻常的)、(c) vulgar(庸俗的,低级的)、(d)accustomed(习惯于,正常的,通常的)这 4 个词中只有(b)common 是 unusual 的反义词,因此应该选(b)。

10. (c)

该句应该选出与前一句中的 explosions(爆炸;轰响)含义相同的词。(a)knocks (*n*. 打,敲击声)、(b)hits (*n*. 打,击)、(c)bangs (*n*. 突然的巨响)和(d)thumps (重击声)中只有(c)bangs 与 explosions 的含义相近,因此应该选(c)。

11. (c)

该句需要选出与前一句中的动词词组 broke down(损坏,抛锚发生故障)的含义相符合的词组。(a)were in pieces(成碎片)、(b)were broken up(分开,分解)、(c)couldn't go(不能开动)和(d)were spoilt(糟塌,弄糟)中,只有(c)couldn't go 与 broke down 的意义相似,其他 3 个选择都不够恰当,因此(c)是正确答案。

12. (c)

该句需要选出同前一句中的 rivals(对手,竞争者)意义相同的词。(a)opponents(对手,敌手,反对者)指同某人对立的敌方;(b)enemies(敌人);(c)competitors(竞争者,对手)指比赛中的竞争者;(d)partners(伙伴,合作者,舞伴)。只有(c)competitors 是 rivals 的同义词,二者都是有"比赛中的竞争者"的含义,因此(c)是正确答案。

Lesson 57
Can I help you, madam?
你要买什么，夫人？

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Though the woman in jeans hestitated for a moment, she entered an expensive shop and asked to see a dress that was in the window. On being told by an assistant that the dress was sold, the woman returned the following morning dressed in a fur coat. The assistant was eager to serve her this time. After making him bring her almost everything in the window, the woman finally bought the dress she had first asked for.

(77 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. The owner of a shop wanted to see how polite his assistants were, so he dressed as a tramp and went into his shop.
2. He had hardly asked to see a suit when he was thrown out.

书信写作参考答案

1. What a surprise it was to receive a birthday present from you. I was very pleased with it.
2. Forgive me for not writing earlier, but I have been really busy with the final examinations for the past few weeks.

Now that I have finished all of them and the first thing I want to do is to write to you.

2 语法、词汇练习

难点练习答案

1. Don't let him *bully you*.
   不要让他欺负你。
2. Why don't you make him *apologize for his behaviour*?
   你为什么不让他为他的行为道歉?
3. No one can make me *believe he's telling the truth*.
   没有人能使我相信他说的是真的。
4. Will your parents let you *come to the theatre with us*?
   你的父母会让你同我们一起去看戏吗?
5. Let's *go for a drive in the country*.
   让我们驱车去乡间转一转吧。

注解:

动词 make 和 let 后面一定要跟不带 to 的动词不定式。

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)
   根据课文第 3~5 行 The assistant who served her did not like the way she was dressed... he told her that the dress was sold,可以看出只有(a)didn't approve of the way she was dressed 与课文的实际情形相符,这就是售货员为什么不愿意为她服务的原因,其他 3 个选择都与课文事实不符。

2. (b)

根据课文第11～12行 ... she enjoyed herself making the assistant bring almost everything in the window before finally buying the dress she had first asked for,可推断只有(b)putting the assistant to a lot of trouble(给售货员找很多麻烦)是课文所暗示的情形,其他3个选择都与课文事实不符。

3. (b)

前一句中的 at the window 意为"在橱窗前",只有(b)in front of(在……前面)与 at the window 含义相同,而(a)in front 和(c)front 都不合乎语法;(d)ahead of(在……前头)主要强调前后顺序,不强调方位。所以(b)是最正确答案。

4. (b)

该句需要选一个合适的词作主语 assistant 的定语。只有(b)serving 是现在分词,同后面的 her 构成分词短语可以作定语修饰 assistant;(a)served 是过去分词,表示被动的意思,不适合于这个句子;(c)who serving 不构成定语从句;(d)was serving 不能作定语。所以(b)是正确答案。

5. (b)

该句的主句是过去时,从句是以 After 引导的,应该用过去完成时,或一般过去时。(a)she was seeking 是过去进行时;(c)sought 缺少主语;(d)when she sought 已有引导词 when,不能与 after 连用;只有(b)she had sought 符合语法,因此应该选(b)。

6. (d)

只有选(d)Without realizing(没有意识到)才合乎语法,才能使该句意思完整通顺,其他3个选择都不正确。(a)Not to realize 不合语法,应该是 Not realizing;

(b)Without to realize 不合语法，介词后面不应该跟动词不定式；(c)Except realizing(除了意识到……之外)虽然合乎语法，但不符合题义，也不合乎逻辑。

7. (c)

该句中的定语从句缺少关系代词，需要选一个合适的关系代词作定语从句的宾语。(a)who 可以作主语关系代词，指人；(b)what 不能作关系代词；(d)whom 可以作宾语，但只能指人，而本句的先行词是物 dress，而不是人；只有(c)that 可以作定语从句的宾语，指物，因此应该选(c)。

8. (d)

本句需要选出同前一句中的 glanced ... scornfully(轻蔑地看了……一眼)含义相配的动词或短语。(a)mocked(嘲笑，嘲弄)、(b)teased(取笑，戏弄)、(c)laughed at(笑，嘲笑)和(d)despised(轻视，蔑视)这 4 个词中只有(d)与 glanced ... scornfully 的含义相符，因此应该选(d)。

9. (c)

只有选(c)after 同该句中的 the day 构成时间短语 the day after，才与前句中的 the following day(第 2 天)的意义相同，其他 3 个选择(a)other、(b)next 和(d)else 都不能放在 the day 后面构成时间短语，因此只能选(c)。

10. (b)

只有(b)im-作为前缀可以放在 polite 前表示否定的意义，impolite(不礼貌的)，因为凡是以字母 p 开头的形容词，为了读音方便，其反义词都是在前面加前缀 im-而不是 in-，如 impossible、impatient、imperfect 等。其他 3 个前缀(a)un-、(c)in- 和(d)dis-都不能用在 polite 前面。因此(b)是正确答案。

11. (d)

该句需要选出同前一句中的形容词 eager(渴望的)意义相同的词,(a)prompt(迅速的,敏捷的)、(b)fast(快的)、(c)nervous(害怕的,紧张的)和(d)anxious(渴望的,急切的)这 4 个词中只有(d)anxious 同 eager 的意义相同,所以(d)是正确答案。

12. (a)

该句需要选出同前一句中的 almost(几乎)意思相同的词,才能使这一句同前一句意思相同。(a)nearly(几乎,近乎)、(b)scarcely(几乎不)、(c)hardly(几乎不)和(d)already(已经)中只有(a)nearly 同 almost 意义相同,所以(a)是正确答案。

Lesson 58
A blessing in disguise?
是因祸得福吗?

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The number of visitors to the village of Frinley has increased because there is said to be a 'cursed tree' near the church. Since the villagers believe that if anyone picks a leaf he will die, they have asked the vicar to have the tree cut down. As the tree is a useful source of income, the vicar has refused to have the tree cut down. Meanwhile, though tourists have been picking leaves, not one of them has come to harm.

(81 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. A village well *which* was said to be cursed was bought by a man.
2. Tourists came to see it *though* there was not even any water in it.
3. *Before* the tourists could look into the well, they had to throw a coin in.

书信写作参考答案

1. You will be glad to hear that I am going to visit you during

the summar vacation. The time will come soon when we shall see each other again.

2. Thank you for letting me know that you will visit my home town during the summar vacation. All the members in the family are excited about the news and are looking forward to meeting you here soon.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. Frinley *is said to possess* (l.1); *It is said that* if...(l.5)
(关于被动语态，请参见第34课关键句型)

难点练习答案

1. picked　2. gain　3. earns　4. grown

注解：

pick 摘，采
cut 割，切开
gain 获得，获利，增加
earn 赚，挣(钱)，博得
grow 长大，生长，增长(表示增长时可以与 increase 互换)
increase 增加

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第8～9行 ... but so far he has refused. He has pointed out that the tree is a useful source of income 可以判断只有(c)it earns money 与课文实际内容相符，是牧师

拒绝把树砍掉的原因，而其他 3 个选择都与课文实际情况不符。所以应该选(b)。

2. (d)

根据课文最后两句 ... the tourists have been picking leaves and ... So far, not one of them has been struck down by sudden death，可以看出只有(d) Tourists who have picked leaves haven't died(摘树叶的游客们没有死)是真实的，与课文内容相符，其他 3 个选择都与课文事实不符。

3. (a)

该句缺少主语和谓语，只有一个 that 引导的从句。只有(a)They say (他们说，人们说)，最适合这个句子，也合乎语法和惯用法。其他 3 个选择(b)It said(它说)意思不对，应该是 It is said 才正确；(c)Said 缺少主语；(d)It is saying 不合乎惯用法，应该是 It is said 才对。所以(a)是正确答案。

4. (a)

该句中的 If 从句是过去时，那么主句就应该是过去将来时，即用 would 加动词原形，表示与现在事实相反，所以只有选(a)would 才能使主句 He would die 与 If 从句相配，构成虚拟语气。其他 3 个选择(b)will、(c)shall 和(d)would have 都不合乎语法。

5. (c)

该句是现在完成时否定式，句尾需要填一个合适的副词。(a)still，(b)even 和(d)more 这 3 个词都不能用在句尾，只有(c)yet 常用于完成时态否定句的句尾，表示“还没”，所以只能选(c)。

6. (b)

该句中的... all that has been said 为名词性短语，前面只

能由介词引导。(a)In spite 后面缺少介词 of,不是正确表达方式;(c)Even(甚至)和(d)Even so(虽然如此)这两个都不是介词,后面不能跟名词性短语;只有(b)Despite(尽管)是介词,与 in spite of 意义相同,最合乎语法,所以(b)是正确答案。

7. (d)

只有(d)none 能与本句中的 of them 构成短语 none of them,意为"没有一个"。其他 3 个选择(a)no one、(b)nobody和(c)not any 与 of them 构成的短语都不合乎惯用法,因而都不是正确的表达方式。所以应该选(d)。

8. (c)

该句需要选出与前一句中的形容词 tiny(极小的)意思相近的词。(a)big(大的)、(b)great(伟大的)、(c)small(小的)和(d)famous(著名的,有名的)这 4 个词中只有(c)small与 tiny 的意义相同,因此应该选(c)。

9. (a)

该句需要选出同前一句中的过去分词 increased(增加,增长)含义相同的词或词组。(a)grown(长大,增长)、(b)grown up(成长,长大)、(c)overgrown(长满)和(d)grown old(变老)4 个选择中只有(a)grown 与 increased 的含义相符,所以(a)是正确答案。

10. (d)

只有(d)earned(得到)最合乎题义。其他 3 个选择中,(a)won(赢得)指好的事情,如赢得胜利、球赛等;(b)beaten(打败,击败)词义不当;(c)profited(有利于,得益于)词义不合题义。所以(d)是正确答案。

11. (b)

前一句中的 evil reputation 意为"坏名声",本句需要选一个同 reputation 意义相同的词。(a)fame(声誉,名望)指

因为好事而获得的、(b)name(名字,名声)可以指好的也可以指坏的名声、(c)rumour(谣言,传说)、(d)report(报告,传说)4个词中只有(b)name与reputation的意义相同,因此应该选(b)。

12. (d)

前一句中的谓语动词 has pointed out that... 意为"指出……",有"解释陈述某一件事情"的含义。该句需要选出合适的动词,使其同前一句的含义相配。(a)shown(把……给某人看)、(b)pointed(把……指给某人)、(c)noted(请注意,记下)、(d)explained(解释,说明)这4个答案中只有(d)explained与pointed out的含义比较相配,因此应该选(d)。

Lesson 59
In or out?
进来还是出去?

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Our dog, Rex, used to sit outside the front gate and bark so that someone would open it. Ever since my husband trained him to open the gate himself, Rex has developed another bad habit. He barks when he is in the garden so that someone will let him out. After this he lets himself in and barks until someone opens the gate again. Now that my husband has removed the gate, Rex has disappeared. (75 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. My husband put the gate back and kept it locked.
2. Then Rex returned and was delighted at first, but he then discovered that he could not open the gate.
3. He was so dissatisfied that he disappeared from the house.

书信写作参考答案

1st August/August 1st; 3rd December/December 3rd; 2nd July/July 2nd; Ave.; Pl.; St.; London E.C.4

关键句型练习答案

A. b. *opens* (l.9); *comes* (l.9); *waits... shuts* (ll.9-10); *sits... barks... lets... lets* (l.10); *begins* (l.10)

c. *wanted* (l.2); *opened* (l.3); *complained* (l.3); *spent* (l.4); *became* (l.5); *noticed* (l.6); *removed* (l.11); *got* (l.11)

d. *has developed* (l.8); *have not seen* (l.11)

e. *was going* out (l.6); *was barking* (l.7)

C. 1. *He is said to be/It is said that he is* very rich.

2. *There is said to be/It is said that there is* a hold-up on the roads.

3. *I was given* a pen. /*A pen was given to me*.

4. *She was given* a prize. /*A prize was given to her*.

5. *We were promised* a new office. /*A new office was promised to us*.

(N.B.: In Numbers 3-5, the second alternative is grammatically correct but rarely used.)

(请见第 50、51、52、55 和 58 课关键句型)

难点练习答案

1. He left early so as not to see me.
2. The secretary asked me into the office so that the manager might speak to me.
3. I ran to the station so as not to be late.
4. He worked hard in order to learn English.
5. He has not sent me his address so that I will/shall not be

able to write to him.

6. I went to see him to find out what had happened.

注解:

so as to、in order to 和 to 都引导动词不定式,在句中作目的状语。so that 和 in order that 都是引导目的状语从句的连词短语。

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第 3～4 行 As the neighbours complained of the noise, my husband spent weeks training him 可以看出只有(d)Rex barked a lot and disturbed the neighbour 与课文的实际情况相符,其他 3 个选择都与课文事实不符。所以(d)是正确答案。

2. (b)

根据课文第 5～8 行 Rex soon became an expert at opening the gate... This time he was barking so that someone would let him out! 可判断出只有(b)Rex only learnt to open the gate from the outside(雷克斯只学会了从外边开门)与课文的实际情况相符,所以(b)是正确答案。其他 3 个选择均与课文实际情况不符。

3. (d)

前面句子中的谓语 would bark 表示过去习惯性动作,因此该句只有选(d)used to do(过去常做)才能同前一句的意思相符。而其他 3 个选择都不正确。(a)is used to doing(习惯于做某事)不表示过去常做;(b)used(使用)不合题义;(c)is used to(习惯于)不合题义。

4. (d)

该句的动词 complained 只能同介词 of 或 about 连用构成动词短语，表示“抱怨”、“诉苦”，因此只有(d)about 是正确答案。(a)for、(b) to 和 (c) concerning 都不能与 complain 连用。

5. (d)

只有(d)shopping 可以同该句的动词 went 连用构成短语 went shopping，意为“去买东西”，因此(d)是正确答案。其他 3 个选择(a) for shopping、(b) for shop 和(c) to shopping 都不合语法或惯用法。

6. (a)

只有选(a)for someone to 放在这个句子意思才通顺，“它喊叫着让人把它放进来”，其他 3 个选择意思都讲不通。(b)in case someone(万一某人，以防某人)词义不对；(c)so someone to 不合语法；(d)so that someone(以便某人)后面没有 would，与前面时态不符；所以(a)是正确答案。

7. (b)

该句的主句是一般现在时，从句也应该用一般现在时才能使这一句时态一致。只有(b)opens 是一般现在时第 3 人称(单数形式)，合乎语法，所以(b)是正确答案。其他 3 个选择(a)will open、(c) is opening 和(d) has been opening 都不合乎时态要求。

8. (a)

(a)teaching(教)、(b)guiding(引导，当导游)、(c)leading(领导)和(d)conducting(引导，指挥)这 4 个选择中只有(a)teaching 最符合这个句的意思，其他 3 个选择意义相近，但都不合乎题义。因此应该选(a)。

9. (d)

前一句中的 expert 意为“专家”、“有特殊知识和技能的

人"，该句需要选出与这个词的含义相配的形容词。(a)crafty(狡猾的)、(b)sly(狡猾的，诡计多端的)、(c)cunning(狡猾的)和(d)skilful(有技巧的，熟练的)这4个词中只有(d)skilful与expert的含义相配，因此(d)是正确答案。

10. (a)

(a)observed(注意到，看到)和(b)looked(看)只有同at连用后面才能带宾语；(c)remarked(说，评论)；(d)took care of(负责，照看)。4个选择中(c)和(d)词义都不适合这个句子，只有(a)和(b)词义与这个句子相配，但(b)looked后面没有at，不合乎语法，因此只有(a)是正确答案。

11. (a)

(c)use(使用)和(d)usefulness(有用)这两个选择词义都不适合这个句子，因为它们都不能同动词developed(养成)搭配。(a)habit(习惯，习性)和(b)custom(习惯，风俗)都可以同develop搭配，表示"养成某种习惯"，但是habit表示"一个人经常做的事"，即个人习惯，而custom则常表示"整个社会长久做的事"，即社会习俗。全句意为：他养成了另一种习惯。所以(a)是最佳答案。

12. (b)

该句需要选出同前一句中的动词removed(除去，移开)意义相同的短语。(a)took it in(把它拿进来)，(b)took it away(把它拿走)，(c)took it on(承担它)意义不清，(d)took it up(开始做)。这4个选择中只有(b)与removed的含义相同，因此(b)是正确答案。

4 句子结构答案

Then he sits and barks until someone lets him out.

Lesson 60
The future
卜算未来

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer visited a fortune-teller at a village fair who told him that a relation was coming to see him. She added that a woman he knew well would speak to him when he left the tent and he would follow her out of the fair. This came true because his wife spoke to him when he went outside. She told him they had to meet his sister at the station and she led him out of the fair. (79 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. Fortune-tellers always tell the truth *because* they speak in general terms.
2. *If* they say you will go on a journey *or* meet a friend, they are right *because* we often do these things.

书信写作参考答案

Mr. and Mrs. David Green 19 Highlane, Newton, Middlesex, England.

关键句型练习答案

A. *is coming*(1.4);*will be arriving*(1.4);The moment you *leave... will get* (11.5-6); *will rush* (11.6-7); *will speak*(1.7);*will lead* (1.7);*will be here* (1.10)

C. is setting out/will set out; will send; receive; receive; will try;locate;will fire;will carry;will pour;will be sent

注解:

在英语中除了 will 和 shall 加动词原形表示将来时外,be going to 也可以表示将要发生的动作,现在进行时也可以表示为将来安排好的活动和事件:

A relation of yours is coming to see you.

你的一个亲戚就要来看你了。

She is leaving in two days' time.

She will leave in two days' time.

她两天后动身。

难点练习答案

1. Our school dining room
2. ghost story
3. birthday present
4. the village inn
5. The party leader
6. the front door key
7. Christmas card
8. garden gate

注解:

有些名词可以放在名词前面作定语,代替介词短语作定语:

Christmas card = card for Christmas

our garden gate = the gate in our garden

3 多项选择练习

1．(b)

根据课文第 2～3 行 After I had given her some money, she looked into a crystal ball and said，可以看出只有(b)he paid her(他付给她钱)与课文实际内容相符，其他 3 个选择都与课文实际情况不符。

2．(a)

根据课文所描述的情况，只有(a)foretold the future correctly(正确预测未来)是真实的，也是课文所暗示的结论。其他 3 个选择都与课文实际情况不符。

3．(c)

只有(c)will be coming 同前一句中的 is coming 时态相符合，因为现在进行时 is coming 也可以表示将要发生的事情，所以(c)是正确答案。其他 3 个选择(a)comes、(b)come和(d)will have come 都与前一句的时态不符。

4．(b)

该句缺少谓语动词，需要选一个同前句中的 intends(想要，计划)意义相同的动词。(a)is about(正要，马上就)、(b)plans(计划)、(c)is due(应到达的，预期的)和(d)hopes(希望)这 4 个选择中只有(b)同 intends 的含义相同，因此应该选(b)。

5．(c)

该句的主句是一般将来时，以 when 引导的时间状语从句应该是一般现在时才合乎语法。(a)will leave 和(d)is leaving 都不是一般现在时，因此可以排除；(b)leave 和(c)leaves 都是一般现在时，但是因为从句的主语是 he，而且(c)leaves 是动词第 3 人称单数形式，最合乎语法，所以(c)是正确答案。

6. (b)

只有(b)will be surprised(会感到惊奇)同前一句的 will get a surprise 含义相同，所以(b)是正确答案。(a)will surprise 不合乎语法，因为 surprise 是及物动词，后面应有宾语，surprise 常用被动语态，表示感到惊讶；(c)surprise 也不合语法；(d)will be surprising 意义不正确，be surprising 表示"令人惊奇的"，与前一句意思不符。

7. (a)

前一句是直接引语疑问句，该句是将其变成了间接引语疑问句，除了时态需改变外，语序也应变为陈述句语序。(b)had I been 是疑问句语序；(c)had been I 语法错误；(d)had I being 也不合语法；只有(a)I had been 是正确的陈述句语序，因此应该选(a)。

8. (b)

该句需要选一个同前一句中的谓语动词 decided(决定，作出决定)意义相同的词或词组。(a)made up(虚构，化妆)、(b)made up my mind(决定，下决心)、(c)minded(照料，介意)、(d)cared(挂念，关心，喜欢)中，只有(b)同 decided 的含义相同，因此应该选(b)。

9. (a)

该句的主语 crystal 是"水晶"的意思，需要选一个合适的词给它定义。(a)glass(玻璃)、(b)metal(金属)、(c)wood(木材)、(d)plastic(塑料)这 4 种材料中，只有(a)符合 crystal 的性质。因此应该选(a)。

10. (c)

该句需要选一个同前一句中的 relation(亲属)意义相同的词，才能使两句意义相符。(a)friend(朋友)、(b)colleague(同事，同行)、(c)relative(亲属，家人)和(d)acquaintance(相识，认识的)这 4 个词中只有(c)同

relation 的意义相同，因此应该选(c)。

11. (a)

只有 be in a hurry(匆忙地)与前一句中的动词 rush(匆忙)的意义相配，所以应该选(a)。其他 3 个选择(b)be slow(慢的)、(c)be tired(累的)和(d)be angry(生气的)都与 rush 的含义不符。

12. (d)

(a)was angry(生气的)、(b)was cross(易怒的，生气的)、(c)didn't speak(不说话)和(d)didn't like waiting(不愿意等待)这 4 个选择中只有(d)同前一句中的 was impatient(没耐心的)意义相符合，因此(d)是正确答案。

4 句子结构答案

After I *had given her some money*, *she looked into a crystal ball*.

Lesson 61
Trouble with the Hubble
哈勃望远镜的困境

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

When the Hubble telescope was launched into space in April 1990, the pictures it sent us were very disappointing because the main mirror was faulty. Four astronauts will soon be making the necessary repairs, and eventually, pictures from the Hubble will tell us a great deal about the age and size of the universe. (54 *words*)

作文参考答案

There was trouble with the Hubble right from the start. The main mirror was faulty, so the pictures it sent us were very disappointing. Now the shuttle *Endeavour* will be taking four astronauts to make the necessary repairs, so that the Hubble will soon be sending us the clearest pictures of the stars and distant galaxies that we have ever seen. (61 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

1. I have not heard from you for some time, so I would like to know something about your life at the university. Are you quite used to the life there?

2. It was very kind of you to send me a birthday card. I liked it very much.

2 语法、词汇练习

难点练习答案

1. cost

   the cost of living 生活费用

2. price

   ask the price 问价钱

3. value

   value it more 更加珍视它

4. cost

   cost a fortune 花一大笔钱

5. value

   be of enormous value 很重要,很有用

6. priced

   priced the products 为产品定价

7. cost

   the cost of rebuilding 重建的费用

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

   根据课文第 3～4 行 The pictures it sent us were very disappointing because its main mirror was faulty! 可以判断只有(b)there was a problem with its main mirror 与课文实际内容相符,其他 3 个选择都与课文事实不符。

2. (a)

根据课文第 10～11 行 the Hubble will tell us a great deal about the age and size of the universe 可以推断只有(a)will tell us a great deal about the universe 是课文提及的内容，其他 3 个选择都不是课文所涉及的内容。

3. (c)

只有(c)will be repairing(将要修理)与前一句中的 is going to put . . . right(准备修正……)的时态和意义相符，所以应该选(c)。其他 3 个选择都不够准确：(a)is repairing 和(b)has already repaired 都与前一句时态不吻合；(d)to repair 是动词不定式，不能作谓语，不符合语法。

4. (c)

只有选(c)will be taken(将被送上)这个句子才能意思通顺，因为该句需要被动语态：Four astronauts will be taken to the Hubble(宇航员将被送上哈勃)。其他 3 个选择(a)will take、(b)will send up 和(d)will be sending up 都不是被动语态，因此(c)是正确答案。

5. (a)

只有(a)for 可以引导表示目的短语，在句子中作目的状语，而其他 3 个选择(b)so that、(c)so long as 和(d)which 都只能引导从句而不能跟名词短语，因此(a)是正确答案。

6. (d)

(a)when 和(c)while 这两个词意义相同，都可以引导时间状语从句，表示"当……时"，因此这两个选择都应该排除。(b)and 可以连接两个句子，使其成为并列句，但该句若用 and 连接不合乎逻辑。只有(d)because 最合乎题义，它能引导原因状态语从句。全句意为：因为它位于地球的大气层之外，所以哈勃会给我们传送清晰照片。所

以(d)是正确答案。

7. (c)

(a)As soon as 和(b)The moment 都可以引导时间状语从句,表示"一……就";(d)When 可以引导时间状语从句,表示"当……时"。这3个选择都没有明显地表示时间的先后顺序,只有(c)Before 表示"在……之前",使该句更接近课文中第11～12行的原句,所以(c)是正确答案。

8. (a)

该句需要选出同前一句中的 launched(发射)含义相同的词组,才能与前一句意思吻合。(a)sent into space(送人太空)、(b)carried away(带走)、(c)put up(举起,挂上)和(d)taken up(从事于)这4个选择中只有(a)同 launched 的含义相同,所以(a)是正确答案。

9. (b)

(a)then(那时)、(b)from the beginning(从一开始)、(c)a few years ago(几年前)和(d)before(以前)4个选择中,(a)、(c)和(d)都表示过去的时间,含义相同,只有(b)与这3个选择意义不同,它强调某一事件开始时的情况,比较符合题义,因此应该选(b)。句意为:从一开始哈勃望远镜就有问题。

10. (b)

该句的主语是 pictures(图像),需要选一个合适的词来说明图像的质量。(a)wonderful(极好的)含最高级的意义,(b)unsatisfactory(不令人满意的),(c)the clearest(最清晰的),(d)disappointed(感到失望的,扫兴的)。4个词中(a)和(c)含义相同,但与课文内容不相符;(d)词义不合乎题义,因为主语是物(图像)而不是人,故不能是"感到失望的",应该是 disappointing(令人失望的);只有(b)可以说明图像的质量,因此(b)是正确答案。

11. (d)

(a)had problems(有问题)不合乎惯用法，当主语是物时，应该是 there were problems with...;(b)was distant(远离的，遥远的)词义不对意思不通;(c)was the clearest(最清晰的)不应指镜子，而应该指图像;只有(d) requires repaires(需要修理)最合乎题义。本句句意为：哈勃望远镜的主要镜片需要修理。

12. (d)

(a)below(在……下面)、(b)over(在……正上方，盖住，遍及)、(c)within(在……内部)和(d)outside(在……外面)4个词中只有(d)最合乎题义。全句意为：哈勃位于大气层之外。所以(d)是正确答案。

Lesson 62
After the fire
大火之后

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

It took the firemen nearly three weeks to get the forest fire under control. Now that all the great trees had been burnt, there was danger that heavy rain would cause serious floods which would destroy the surrounding villages. To prevent this, the forest authorities ordered grass-seed which was sprayed over the ground by planes for nearly a month. By the time that it began to rain, the grass had taken root in many places.

(75 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. The firemen cut down trees *in order to* prevent the fire from spreading.
2. The fire, *which* raged for two weeks, caused millions of pounds' worth of damage.
3. Forest workers planted young trees quickly *so that* the whole area would *not* become a desert.

书信写作参考答案

1. I am sorry to hear that you have not been well.

2. Forgive me for not writing sooner.

3. I was so glad to hear your good news.

4. I have not heard from John for over a month now.

5. What a (pleasant) surprise to get a letter from you at last!

6. It was very kind of you to reply so quickly.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. What had happened: *had covered* (1.3); *had* ... *been put* out (11. 7-8); *had* already *taken* root (11. 10-11); *had begun* (1.12)

What had been happening: *had been fighting* (1.1); *had been planting* (11.9-10); *had been growing* (1.11)

C. (had) discovered ... appeared; had taken part ... died; happened ... claimed ... had died; had been searching ... was/had been found

注解:

过去完成时和过去完成进行时的用法对比如下:

1. 过去完成时表示在过去某一事件发生之前所完成的事情，强调两个事件中哪个发生在前:

He *had lived* in Shanghai for ten years before he came to Beijing.

他来北京之前在上海住了 10 年。

Before the 1980s, great trees *had covered* the countryside for miles around.

20 世纪 80 年代之前，参天大树还覆盖着方圆数英里的土地。

2. 过去完成进行时由 had been + 现在分词构成,表示在过去更早的时间内进行的动作,并对过去某一时刻产生结果:

Firemen *had been fighting* the forest fire for nearly three weeks before they could get it under control.
消防队员们同那场森林大火搏斗了将近 3 个星期,最后才把火势控制住。

难点练习答案

1. checked

   checked my ticket 检查我的车票

2. soil

   poor soil 贫瘠的土壤

3. checked

   checked those figures 核对那些数字

4. great

   a great composer 伟大的作曲家

8 多项选择练习

1. (a)

   根据课文第 6~9 行 ... for heavy rain would not only wash away the soil but would cause serious floods as well ... would grow quickly 可以判断只有(a) to prevent flooding 与课文的内容相符,其他 3 个选择都与课文事实不符。

2. (d)

   根据课文第 9 行 The seed was sprayed over the ground in huge quantities by aeroplanes 可以推测只有(d) this was

the quickest way to plant huge quantities of seed(这是大量撒播种子的最快方法)是课文所暗示的意思。其他 3 个选择虽然都与课文内容相符,但都不是使用飞机的原因。

3. (d)

该句是对时间的长短提问的,回答是 For nearly three weeks。(a)How much(多少)、(b)How often(每隔多久)是问频率的、(c)What time(什么时候)和(d)How long(多长时间)4 个选项中,只有(d)是问时间长短的,因此(d)是正确答案。

4. (c)

前一句 The hills threatened the surrounding villages with destruction(小山丘对周围的村庄具有毁灭性的威胁)说明村庄只是遭到威胁但还没有被毁灭。(a) were destroyed(被毁灭了)不合题义;(b)had destroyed(已经毁灭)时态和语态都不正确;(d)could destroy(能够毁灭)语态不对;只有(c)might be destroyed(可能被毁灭)表示推测,最合乎逻辑,因此(c)是正确答案。

5. (d)

该句的 If 从句是过去时,因此主句应该是 would 加动词原形,表示与现在事实相反的虚拟语气。(a) will be、(b)can be 和(c)had been 都不合乎语法,只有(d)would be 合乎语法,所以应该选(d)。

6. (c)

(a)did、(b)made 和(d)had 这 3 个词的意义都不符合该句的含义,只有(c)took 最合题义:take some time to do sth. 意为“需花某些时间做某事”。全句意为:飞机需要近一个月的时间播撒种子。因此(c)是正确答案。

7. (c)

该句是过去完成时,需要选一个合适的时间短语。

(a)since centuries 不正确，因为 since 后面不能跟表示一段时间的词，只能跟表示时间起止点的词，如：since Monday、since 1990 等等；(b) before centuries 和 (d)centuries ago 都表示“多少世纪以前”，但它们都不能用于完成时态；只有(c)for centuries(几个世纪)可以用于完成时态，因此应该选(c)。

8. (b)

该句需要选出与前一句中的动词 wash away(冲走)含义相同的词或词组才能同前一句意义相同。(a)clean it(清洗它)、(b)carry it away(把它带走)、(c)wash it(洗它)和(d)wet it(弄湿它)4 个选择中只有(b)与 wash away 含义相同，所以(b)是正确答案。

9. (d)

(a) weights(重量)、(b) meansures(计量单位，措施)、(c)tons(吨)和(d)amounts(数量)这 4 个词中只有(d)最合乎题义，所以(d)是正确答案。

10. (a)

该句需要选一个同前一句的 taken root(生根，生长)含义相同的词，使两个句子意义相吻合。(a)grow(生长)、(b)root(使生根)、(c)grow up(长大，成熟)和(d)increase(增加)中，只有(a)与前一句的动词含义相符，因此应该选(a)。

11. (d)

(a)everywhere(处处，每个地方)、(b)only in one or two places(只在一两个地方)、(c)in one place(在一个地方)和(d)here and there(各处)这 4 个选择中只有(d)意思最贴切。全句意为：一片片的绿草开始出现。到处有绿草。

12. (b)

(a)point(指，指出)、(b)show(显示，能看得见)、(c)seem

(看上去,好像)和(d)point out(指出)这4个词中只有(b)同前一句中的appear(出现)意义相同,因此应该选(b)。

Lesson 63
She was not amused
她并不觉得好笑

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

When Jeremy Hampden, who is greatly admired for his great sense of humour, was invited to make a speech at a wedding reception, he immediately agreed to do so. Since the speech contained a lot of funny stories, it was a great success. When his six-year-old daughter, Jenny, wanted to go home after his speech, Jeremy was disappointed. She had not enjoyed it because she did not like to see so many people laughing at him. (76 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. Jeremy was amused by Jenny's answer and then he explained why everybody laughed.
2. There was another reception some time later when Jeremy made a speech that was not very funny.
3. Jenny asked why no one laughed.

书信写作参考答案

1. You must be annoyed with me for not writing to you earlier. I didn't really intend to do so, but I had to prepare for the

final examinations last week.

2. I have just heard that you are getting on well with your studies. I am very glad that you are accustomed to the life at the university so soon.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. 1. 'I want to go home,' Jenny told him.

2. 'Did you enjoy the speech, Jenny?' Jeremy asked.

3. 'No,' she said.

4. 'Why didn't you enjoy it?' Jeremy asked.

5. 'I don't like to see so many people laughing at you,' she told him.

C. 1. He told me to keep quiet.

2. He suggested that I should send him a fax.

3. He told me not to worry about it.

4. He insisted that I should ask him about it.

D. 1. I wonder if he can wait a few minutes longer.

2. I wonder when he will arrive.

3. I wonder if he has passed his examination.

4. I wonder where he is.

5. I wonder why she didn't telephone.

6. I wonder when we shall see him again.

7. I wonder if she caught the wrong bus.

8. I wonder if you could spare me a moment.

注解:

1. 当直接引语是祈使句,变成间接引语时,应将其谓语动词

变成动词不定式跟在主句谓语动词后面：

'Don't make so much noise,' she said to the childrren.

She told them not to make so much noise.

如果主句的谓语动词是 suggest 或 insist，间接引语不应该变成动词不定式，而应该是"主语 + should + 动词原形"：

'Ask him about it', he insisted.

He insisted that I should ask him about it.

2. 当直接引语是特殊疑问句，变成间接引语时应将疑问词放在主句谓语动词 wonder/ask 的后面然后将疑问句变成陈述句语序，有时时态也要作相应的改变：

'When will he arrive?' she asked.

She asked me when he would arrive.

I wonder when he will arrive.

如果直接引语是一般疑问句，变成间接引语时，需要在主句谓语动词后面加 if 或 whether，然后跟陈述句：

'Did she get on the wrong bus?' he asked.

He asked me if she (had) got on the wrong bus.

I wonder if she got on the wrong bus.

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第 2 行 Everybody admires him for his great sense of humour 可以判断只有(d)he's an amusing person（他是一个有趣的人）是他深受大家欢迎的原因，其他 3 个选择都与课文内容不符。所以应该选(d)。

2. (b)

根据课文第 8～11 行，只有(b)everyone had been laughing at Jeremy's stories, not at Jeremy 是课文所暗示的情况，

珍妮没有意识到"每个人都在笑她父亲讲的故事,而不是在嘲笑她父亲本人"。其他 3 个选择都不符合逻辑。所以(b)是正确答案。

3. (a)

只有(a)he's got 符合题义。he's got = he has,因此应该选(a)。其他 3 个选项都不符合题义和语法。

4. (a)

(b)Apart (*adv.* 分开,离开)、(d)Unless (*conj.* 除非,如果不)这两个选择词性和词义都与这个句子不符,(a)和(c)都有 with the exception of(除……外)的意思,但 except 不能单独用于句首,因此正确答案只能是(a)。

5. (b)

表示喜欢或喜爱做某事应该用一般现在时,或一般过去时,而不应用进行时态,因此该句只能选(b)loves。其他 3 个选择(a)is loving、(c)has been loving 和(d)was loving 时态都不正确。

6. (d)

该句的动词 succeeded(成功)后面只能跟介词 in 加动名词表示"成功做某事"。(a)to make、(b)for making 和(c)in make 都不合乎语法,只有(d)in making 合乎语法,因此应该选(d)。

7. (d)

该句需要选出同前一句中的 a little(有点儿,有些)意义相同的词,才能使两个句子意思相同。(a)little(没有多少)、(b)somehow(不知怎么地,以某种方式)、(c)enough(足够)和(d)somewhat(一点,几分)4 个选择中只有(d)与 a little 意思相同,因此(d)是正确答案。

8. (a)

(a)think highly of(看得起,高看)、(b)laugh at(嘲笑)、

(c)estimate(估计,评定)、(d)esteem(尊敬,尊重)中只有(a)同前一句中的 admire(赞美)含义相近,所以应该选(a)。

9. (c)

(a)lastly(最后)、(b)at last(最后,最终)、(c)lately(最近)和(d)at least(至少)4个词中只有(c)同前一句的 recently(最近)意义相同,因此(c)是正确答案。

10. (d)

该句需要选出与前一句中的 reception(招待会)含义相同的词才能使两个句子意义相同。(a)wedding(婚礼)、(b)marriage(结婚)、(c)ceremony(典礼,仪式)和(d)party(聚会)4个词中只有(d)同 reception 的含义比较接进,所以(d)是正确答案。

11. (c)

该句需要选出同前一句中的 sort(种类,类别)意思相同的词才能使两个句子意思相吻合。(a)species(同一种类的植物或动物)、(b)category(分类,门类)、(c)kind(种类)和(d)class(阶级,等级)这4个选择中只有(c)同 sort 意义相同,因此(c)是正确答案。

12. (a)

该句需要选出与前一句中的 included some funny stories(加进了一些逗人的故事)含义相同的短语,以使两个句子意义吻合。(a) put them in(把它们加进去)、(b)consisted of them(由它们组成)、(c)contained them(包含它们)和(d)comprised them(包含它们,由它们组成)中,只有(a)与前一句的动词含义最接近,因此(a)是正确答案。

4 句子结构答案

He *prepared the speech carefully and went to the wedding with Jenny*.

Lesson 64
The Channel Tunnel
海峡隧道

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The tunnel, which the French engineer, Aimé Thomé, planned to build under the English Channel in 1858, would be ventilated by tall chimneys built above sea level. An Englishman, William Lowe, suggested a better plan two years later. Passing trains would solve the problem of ventilation in his proposed double railway-tunnel because they would draw in fresh air behind them. Though work began forty-two years later, it was stopped because the British feared invasion. However, the tunnel was officially opened on March 7, 1994.

(85 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. Thanks to the English Channel which separates Britain from Europe, the country has not been invaved since 1066.
2. However, now that modern warfare is far more complex, such fears no longer exist.
3. Both Britain and Europe benefit enormously from a Channel Tunnel.

书信写作参考答案

1. I am very glad to hear that you have been engaged.
2. Thank you very much for sending me a telegram on my birthday.
3. It's very kind of you to send me information which I need badly.
4. Please forgive me for not keeping my appointment with you.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. Three sentences: 1.5, Type 2; 1.9, Type 2; 1.10, Type 3

C. 1. would have been able　　2. could have come

3. would not have made　　4. were　　5. is

注解:

非真实条件句:在第 40 课关键句型中已经涉及非真实条件句,即表示与现在事实相反的虚拟语气:

If I were in your position, I would act differently.

假如我处于你的位置,我会采取不同的做法。

本课的关键句型是与过去事实相反的非真实条件句:if 从句用过去完成时,主句动词用 would have + 过去分词:

If, at the time, the British had not feared invasion, it would have been completed.

如果不是因为那时英国人害怕入侵,隧道早已建成了。

If I had been in your position, I would have acted differently.

如果我当时处于你的位置上,我会采取不同的做法。

难点练习答案

1. up

   draw up a plan 拟定计划

2. back

   drew back in horror 恐惧地退了回来

3. up

   The car drew up... 汽车停在……

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

   根据课文第 6～9 行 In 1860, a better plan was put forward by an Englishman ... This would solve the problem of ventilation... 可以判断只有(c) his tunnel would be better ventilated(他的隧道会通风更好)是课文所暗示的情况,因为它说明了为什么威廉·洛的计划比干蒙的好的原因,其他 3 个选择都与课文的实际内容不符。

2. (c)

   根据课文第 9～10 行 Forty-two years later a tunnel was actually begun 可以看出,只有(c)began a long time after William Low put up his plan 与课文事实相符,其他 3 个选择都与课文实际内容不符。

3. (c)

   前一句 It would be possible to build a platform 意为"建造一座平台是可能的"。该句的主语是 A platform,需选一个合适的动词作谓语,使它同前一句含义相同。(a)could build 和(d)would build 都是主动语态,但是本句的主语是物而不是人,故不应该用主动语态。(b)would be built 和(c)could be built 都是被动语态,合乎语法,但是 could

be built(可能或能够被建成)比 would be built(会被建成)意思更贴切,更接近前一句的含义,所以(c)是最佳答案。

4. (c)

该句的谓语动词 suggested 后面只能跟动名词短语或 that 从句,从句中用 should 加动词原形才合乎语法。(a)to build、(b)build 和(d)that building 都不符合语法,只有(c)building 是动名词,最符合语法,因此(c)是正确答案。

5. (b)

(a)would been 语法错误;(c)would have been 与前一句时态不符;(d) had been 也与前一句时态不符;只有(b)would be 与前一句时态相符,因此(b)是正确答案。

6. (b)

因为主句的动词是 would 加原形动词,所以 if 引导的条件从句应该是一般过去时,才能成为与现在事实相反的虚拟语气。(a)would enter、(c)will enter 和(d)enters 都不是一般过去时,只有(b)entered 是一般过去时,因此只能选(b)。

7. (c)

(a)interesting in、(b)interested for 和(d)interesting for 这3个选择都不合乎惯用法,不是正确表达方式。只有(c)interested in(对……感兴趣)是固定短语,最合题义,因此应该选(c)。

8. (c)

只有(c)ventilation(通风)是前一句中的动词 ventilated(通风)的名词形式,因此(c)最合乎题义,应该选(c)。其他 3 个选择(a)air、(b)airing 和(d)circulation(循环,流通)都不是 ventilate 的名词形式,故都不正确。

9. (a)

该句需要选一个同前一句中的 put forward(提出)含义相同的动词,才能使两个句子意义相同。(a)suggested(建议)、(b)intended(想要,打算)、(c)aimed at(瞄准,对着)和(d)planned(计划)4 个词中只有(a)同 put forward 含义最接近,所以(a)是正确答案。

10. (b)

该句需要选一个同前一句中的动词 feared(害怕)意义相同的词或词组,才能同前面句子意义相同。(a)in favour of(赞成,支持)、(b)afraid of(害怕)、(c)prevented(阻止)和(d)ended(结果)中,只有(b)同 feared 意义相同,因此应该选(b)。

11. (b)

该句需要选一个同前一句中的动词 connects(连接)含义相同的词或词组,以使两个句子意义相吻合。(a)mixed(混合)、(b)joined together(连接在一起)、(c)rejoined(再接合)和(d)combined(联合,结合)中,只有(b)同 connects 含义最接近,所以(b)是正确答案。

12. (b)

该句需要选一个同前一句中的 completed(完成的)意义相同的词,以使两个句子意义相同。(a)ended(结束)、(b)finished(完成,做完)、(c)prevented(阻止)和(d)stopped(停止)中,只有(b)同 completed 意义相同,所以应该选(b)。

4 句子结构答案

In 1860, a better plan was put forward by an Englishman, William Low. He suggested that a double railway-tunnel should be built.

Lesson 65
Jumbo versus the police
小象对警察

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

After having decided to take some presents to a children's hospital, the circus owner, Jimmy Gates, dressed up as Father Christmas and set off down the main street of the city riding an elephant called Jumbo. On being told that he was holding up the traffic, Jimmy agreed to go at once but Jumbo refused to move, so fifteen policemen had to push him off the main street. As he had a good record, however, Jumbo was not arrested.

(79 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. The children were waiting at the hospital when Jimmy and the guard of honour arrived.
2. After a great welcome, Jimmy gave presents to the children.
3. They rode on Jumbo at the time to leave, but Jumbo refused to move.

书信写作参考答案

1. I really hate to complain, but I have to say that I am tired of

still as sweet as honey.

书信写作参考答案

It's very kind of you to invite me to go to the circus with you. I am eager to go, since I have never been to a circus before.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. had the plane packaged,(had the plane) moved,have the plane restored,have only three of them rebuilt

B. 1. The French authorities had the plane packaged and moved in parts back to France.

2. A group of enthusiasts are going to have the plane restored.

3. The group will need to have only three of the engines rebuilt.

C. 1. He is having a new house built.

2. She will have a new dress made.

3. I did not have the house decorated.

4. They had the washing machine repaired.

5. We must have this dangerous tree cut down.

6. We have to have this new television set installed.

注解:

本课的关键句型是使役结构 have + 宾语 + 过去分词,表示让别人做某事,即某事不是句子的主语完成的而是让别人做的:

The French authorities had the plane packaged and

moved in parts back to France.

法国政府让人把飞机包装起来，一部分一部分地运回法国。

Now a group of enthusiasts are going to have the plane restored.

一群热心人打算(让人)修复这架飞机。

难点练习答案

1. has　　2. were　　3. Have　　4. is

注解：

集合名词后面的动词可以是单数，也可以是复数。

1. 当我们把这个名词当作非人格化的东西看待时，即当作一个整体，动词应当为单数：

   The government *has* taken strong measures against inflation.

   政府已经采取强硬措施对付通货膨胀。

   This class *is* a pleasure to teach.

   教这个班是件令人愉快的事。

2. 当我们把这个名词人格化时，即看作组成整体的若干成员时，连用动词应为复数：

   The shipwrecked crew *were* rescued from the water by helicopter.

   遇难船上的全体船员被直升飞机从水中救出。

   Have the staff been informed of the meeting?

   通知全体工作人员有关开会事宜了吗？

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

根据课文第6～7行 By this time, a Lancaster bomber in reasonable condition was rare and worth rescuing 可以判断只有(c)it was a rare model(它是一个罕见的型号)是人们对修复这架飞机感兴趣的原因。其他3个选择虽然是课文提及的情况,但都不是原因。

2. (b)

根据课文最后一句 A colony of bees had turned the engine into hive and it was totally preserved in beeswax! 可以看出只有(b)A colony of bees(一群蜜蜂)保护了其中的一台发动机,因此(b)是正确答案。其他3个选择均与课文实际情况不符。

3. (a)

前一句中的 west of Samoa 意为萨摩亚群岛以西,本句需要选一个同这个短语意思相同的短语。(a)to the west of Samoa(在萨摩亚群岛之西)指不在这个岛上;(b)to the east of Samoa 意为在萨摩亚群岛之东;(c)in the west Samoa(在萨摩亚群岛的西部)指在这个岛上;(d)in the east of Samoa 意为在萨摩亚群岛的东部。只有(a)与前一句的含义相同,因此应该选(a)。

4. (a)

前句中的 undisturbed 意为"没有受到打搅",本句应该选一个同这个词含义相同的词。(a)moved(移动)、(b)damaged(损害,损伤)、(c)packaged(把……打包)和(d)restored(修复)中,只有(a)同 undisturbed 含义相同,因此(a)是正确答案。

5．(d)

该句中的 worth(值……的)是形容词，它后面只能跟动名词或名词，只有(d)saving 是动名词，最合乎语法，所以(d)是正确答案。其他 3 个选择(a)to be saved、(b)to save 和(c)saved 都不合乎语法。

6．(a)

(a)will have to be 意为“需要被”；(b)need have been 不合乎惯用法；(c)are being 意为“正在被”；(d)had to be 意为“不得不”；只有(a)最适合这个句子，因此应该选(a)。

7．(a)

该句的动词不定式短语 to have the plane 后面只有跟过去分词才合乎语法。have sth. done 意为“让人做某事”。(b)repairing、(c)reparation 和(d)being repaired 都不是过去分词，故都不合题义。只有(a)是过去分词，最合乎语法，因此应该选(a)。

8．(b)

前一句中的词组 in parts 意为“一部分一部分地”，本句需要选一个同这一词组含义相同的词组。(a)as a whole(作为整体)、(b)bit by bit(一点一点地)、(c)completely(完全地)和(d)totally(完全地)中，只有(b)与 in parts 的含义相同，所以应该选(b)。

9．(a)

只有(a)far away(遥远的)与前一句中的 remote(遥远的)意思相同，其他 3 个选择(b)well-known(著名的)、(c)popular(流行的，大众化的)和(d)close to the European continent(紧靠欧洲大陆)都与前一句意思无关，因此(a)是正确答案。

10．(b)

(a)Between(在两者之间)、(b)During(在……期间)、

(c)While(当……的时候)和(d)Among(在……之中)这 4 个词中，只有(b)最合乎题义，因此应该选(b)。

11. (b)

该句只有选同前一句中的形容词 rare(珍奇的，罕见的)含义相符合的词才能同前一句意思吻合。(a)common(普通的，寻常的)、(b)uncommon(不寻常的)、(c)popular(流行的)和(d)well-known(著名的)中，只有(b)同 rare 的含义相近，因此(b)是正确答案。

12. (a)

(a)fair(相当好的，还行)，(b)bad(坏的)，(c)perfect(完美无缺的，极好的)有最高级含义，(d)terrible(可怕的)。4 个选择中(b)和(d)含义相同，因此都不应该选。(c)perfect很少用于形容状况好坏，只有(a)fair适合形容状况，因此(a)是最佳答案。

4 句子结构答案

A Lancaster bomber crashed on Wallis Island, a remote place in the South Pacific, a long way west of Samoa.

Lesson 67
Volcanoes
火山

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Tazieff, the Polish scientist, went to Lake Kivu in the Congo in 1948 to observe a new volcano which he called Kituro. After taking photographs, he had to leave almost at once because a river of liquid rock threatened to surround him. He escaped just in time but he returned two days later when the volcano had become quiet. This time he climbed into the mouth of Kituro in order to take photographs and measure temperatures. (76 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. Tazieff went into the mouth of Kituro.
2. There he saw the boiling centre with ash and lumps of rock shooting up.
3. In great danger, he took photographs and then returned to his camp.

书信写作参考答案

1. Thank you for sending me your catalogue.
2. What a delightful surprise to hear from you!

3. Forgive me for not answering your letter earlier.

4. I have not written before as I had lost your address.

5. I am sorry you've been ill and hope you're feeling better now.

6. It was very nice to hear from you.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

C. 1. He did not manage to get into town this morning.

2. They did not manage to find the boy who had run away.

3. He did not manage to find a new job.

4. I did not manage to translate the passage into English.

5. They did not manage to swim to the other side of the river.

注解:

managed to 同 was able to 含义相同,后面跟一个成功地完成了的动作;could 是 can 的过去式,意思是"能",强调有能力做某事:

Tazieff *was able to* set up his camp very close to the volcano ...

塔捷夫有办法把帐篷搭在离火山最近的地方……

This time, he *managed to* climb into the mouth of Kituro...

这次他设法爬进了基图罗火山口……

... he *could* not stay near the volcano for very long.

……他不能在火山附近停留太长时间。

难点练习答案

1. tell　　2. said/would say　　3. say... tell

4. tell　　5. told　　6. say

注解：

1. say 后面常跟直接宾语＋间接宾语：say sth. to sb.；或者只带一个宾语：say sth.：

　　Did he say anything to you about it?

　　No, he said nothing.

2. tell 后面常跟间接宾语＋直接宾语：tell sb. sth.：

　　Please tell us a story.

　tell 后面也可以只带一个宾语（直宾），通常是固定搭配：

　　tell a lie 说谎

　　tell the time 报时

　　tell the difference between... 区别……

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第 2～3 行 In 1948, he went to lake Kivu in the Congo to observe a new volano which 可以看出只有(d)to investigate a new volcano（调查一座新火山）与课文内容相符，其他 3 个选择都与课文实际情况不符，所以(d)是正确答案。

2. (a)

根据课文第 9－10 行... but Tazieff managed to escape ... He waited until the volcano became quiet and he was able to return two days later 可以判断，只有(a)and Tazieff had to leave but he returned later 与课文的实际情况相符，其他 3 个选择都与课文实际情况不符，所以(a)是正

确答案。

3. (d)

前一句中的 managed to 表示“成功地完成了的动作”，本句需要对这一动词解释说明。(a)might have taken(本来应该做)、(b)could have taken(本来可以做)、(c)should have taken(本应该做)这 3 个选择含义相同都表示“过去该做，但却没做”，与 managed to 含义不同。只有(d)succeeded in taking 与 managed to 意思相同，因此应该选(d)。

4. (d)

前一句 He escaped just in time 意为“他刚好及时逃离了”，句中的 just 是表示强调语气的副词，它的含义是“正好”、“勉强地”，本句是对前一句的进一步解释。(a)just only 的意思不通；(b)only(只是，仅仅)与前一句含义不符；(c)soon(不久，很快)与前一句意思不符；只有(d)only just(只是勉强地)与前一句含义相符，因此应该选(d)。

5. (d)

该句的动词 waited(等待)是不及物动词，后面只能跟 for 引导的短语。(a)to the volcano to become、(b)the volcano to become 和(c)the volcano became 这 3 个选择都不合乎语法。只有(d)for the volcano to become 合乎语法，所以只能选(d)。本句意为：他等待火山平静下来。

6. (d)

前一句的 was able to return(设法返回)表示“成功地办成了”，本句需要对这一动词短语解释说明。(a)could(可以)、(b)might(可能)、(c)could have(本来应该)这 3 个选择都与前一句意思不符合，只有(d)did 表示“做成了”，与前一句含义相符，因此应该选(d)。

7. (b)

(a)considering(考虑到)词义不对，不合逻辑；(b)on the subject of 意为“关于”、“论及”；(c)in relation 不是正确表示方式，应该是 in relation to(关于)；(d)referring 不合语法，应该是 referring to(论及，谈及)。只有(b)是正确表达方式并合乎题义，因此应该选(b)。

8. (b)

该句需要选出与前一句中的 Polish(波兰的)相应的国名，以便使两个句子含义相同。(a)Pole(波兰人)、(b)Poland(波兰)、(c)Polish(波兰的，波兰语)和(d)the Pole(波兰人)中，只有(b)是国名，因此应该选(b)。

9. (a)

该句需要同前一句中的 named(取名)意义相同的词，才能同前一句意思相符。(a)called(起名，叫)、(b)shouted(喊叫，呼喊)、(c)cried(大声哭喊)和(d)screamed(尖叫，大笑)中，只有(a)同 named 意义相同，所以应该选(a)。

10. (d)

只有选出同前一句中的 liquid(液体的)意义相反的词，才能使这个句子同前一句意思吻合。(a)firm(坚定的，稳固的)、(b)stable(稳定的，不变的)、(c)whole(整个的，全部的)和(d)solid(固体的，结实的)中，只有(d)是 liquid 的反义词，因此(d)是正确答案。

11. (d)

前一句中的 measure temperatures 意为“测量温度”，本句需要一个能够替换 measure(测量)的动词，以便使两个句子含义相同。(a)count(数，计算)、(b)make(制造，做)、(c)do(做)这 3 个选择都不能与 temperatures 连用，只有(d)take 可以同 temperatures 连用，take temperatures 表示“量体温或量温度”，所以应该选(d)。

12. (d)

该句需要一个合适的形容词放在 person 前作定语。(a)alive(活着的)常作表语,若作定语只能放在名词之后;(b)lively(快活的,活泼的)词义不符合这个句子;(c)live可以作形容词,意为"活着的"、"有生命的";(d)living意为"活着的"、"有生命的";(c)和(d)都可以作定语,修饰 person,但含义有所区别:a live person 有"精力充沛"的意思,而 a living person 则是指"活着"。因此应该选(d)。本句意为:他所告诉我们的情况比任何在世的人都要多。

4 句子结构答案

Tazieff noticed that a river of liquid rock was coming towards him. It threatened to surround him completely, but he managed to escape just in time.

Lesson 68
Persistent
纠缠不休

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Even though Elizabeth tried to avoid meeting Nigel Dykes, she was not able to do so. As he always insisted on accompanying her, she had to think of a way of preventing him from following her around all morning. When she told him she was going to the dentist, he said he would come with her because there was always plenty to read in the waiting room.

(67 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. *As* there was a dentist nearby *whom* she knew well, Elizabeth decided to go there *in order to* explain what had happened.
2. *While* Nigel was in the waiting room, Elizabeth spoke to the dentist *and* he told her to leave at once through another door.
3. *After* Elizabeth had left, the dentist went into the waiting room *and asked Nigel if* he wanted to have his teeth examined.

书信写作参考答案

1. You must be very annoyed with me for not remembering your birthday.
2. I have just heard that my sister is returning from Canada.
3. I really hate to complain, but your workmen made a terrible mess in my house today.
4. Some time ago, I asked you to send me your catalogue and I still have not received it.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

C. (sample sentences)

1. It's no use trying to reason with him.
2. Let's go swimming.
3. Forgive my interrupting you.
4. Do you deny having taken/taking the money?
5. He came rushing towards me.
6. I'm busy writing letters.
7. I always enjoy going to the cinema.
8. Would you mind closing the door, please?

注解:

动词+-ing可以是动名词,也可以是现在分词,要根据它在句子里充当的成分而定:

1. 动名词具有名词的性质,它可以充当名词所能充当的句子成分,尽管像动词一样可以带宾语。动名词可以作主语:

It was no use pretending that I had not seen him.

若装作没有看见他已经是没有用了。(It 是形式主语,动名词短语是真正主语)

Dancing is fun. I love it.

跳舞是有趣的。我爱跳舞。

动名词也可以作宾语:

I never enjoy meeting Nigel Dykes.

我从来就不喜欢见到奈杰尔·戴克斯。

动名词前可以加所有格或宾格代词作其逻辑主语:

Would you mind my coming with you?

我跟你一道去可以吗?

Please excuse him not writing to you.

请原谅他没有给你写信。

2. 现在分词具有形容词的性质,在句子中可以作状语、定语,分词短语常可以代替从句:

He saw me and came running towards me.

他看到我并朝我跑过来。(running 作方式状语)

3. 动词 + -ing 形式的习惯用法:

see sb. doing sth. 看见某人做某事

hear sb. doing sth. 听见某人做某事

be busy doing sth. 忙于做某事

go shopping 去买东西

go swimming 去游泳

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第 3 行和第 7 行 I never enjoy meeting Nigel Dykes. 'Hello Nigel,' I said. 'Fancy meeting you here!' 可以推测(b)out of politeness(出于礼貌)是伊丽莎白向奈

杰尔打招呼时的态度和口气，其他3个选择均与课文实际内容不符。

2. (b)

根据课文的情景，可以判断(b)insensitive(感觉迟钝的)能最恰当地描绘奈杰尔是什么样的人，其他3个选择(a)funny(可笑的，有趣的)、(c)nuisance(讨厌的人)、(d)cruel(残酷的)都不够恰当，不符合课文的内容。

3. (c)

只有(c)running最合乎语法，running在此句中是现在分词作状语，表示方式。其他3个选择都不合乎语法。(a)run是动词原形，不能放在went后面；(b)to running前面不应该有to；(d)ran是过去式，更不能用在went后面。因此(c)是正确答案。

4. (d)

该句中的worth(值得……的)是形容词，它后面只能跟名词或动名词。(a)to do、(b)do和(c)done都不是动名词，故都不合乎语法，只有(d)doing是动名词，所以应该选(d)。

5. (b)

该句需要一个同前一句中的never has anything to do (从来无事可做)意义相同的短语，才能同前一句意思吻合。(a)has to do nothing(什么都不必做)同前一句意思不符；(c)nothing has to do和(d)to do nothing has都是语序混乱，没有意义；只有(b)has nothing to do(无事可做)同never has anything to do意义相同，因此(b)是正确答案。

6. (b)

该句动词insisted(坚持)后面需要跟on + 动名词或that引导的从句，其谓语一定要用should加动词原形。(a)to go、(c)to going和(d)in going这3个选择都不合乎语法，

只有(b)that he should go 可以跟在 insist 后面作宾语，因此(b)是正确答案。

7.(b)

该句中的动词 mind(介意)后面可以直接跟动名词也可以在动名词前加宾格或所有格代词，但所表达的含义不同。(a)-若什么也不加，虽然合乎语法，但句子意思有些含糊不清，因为主语 she 同最后的 her 不知是否是一个人，如果是一个人，句子前后矛盾，如果是两个人，没有上下文可以证明，故不能选(a);(c)he 是主格代词;(d)himself是自反代词。3者都不合乎语法。只有(b)his 是所有格代词，既合乎语法又合题义，因此应该选(b)。全句意为：她不介意他同她一起去。

8.(c)

该句需要一个后面能跟动名词作宾语的动词或词组。(a)prevent(阻止)后面不能直接跟动名词，应该是 prevent sb. from doing sth.;(b)prevent from 不合乎语法，因为 prevent 是及物动词后面应该带宾语，即 prevent sb. from...;(d)escape from(逃避，避免疾病、痛苦、事故等)后面跟名词，但很少接动名词，词义也不太符合这个句子；只有(c)avoid(避开)后面只能接动名词作宾语，因此(c)是正确答案。

9.(c)

该句需要一个同前一句中的动词 pretend(假装)含义相同的短语，以便同前一句意思相吻合。(a)make as if(制做得好像……一样)、(b)do as if(做得好像……一样)和(d)conduct as if(表现或举止好像……一样)这3个选择都与 pretend 含义不同。只有(c)act as if(假装像……一样)与 pretend 的含义相同，act 有“假装”的意思，所以(c)是正确答案。

10. (c)

前一句中的谓语动词 waved to 意为“向……招手”，本句需要选同这个词含义相同的词，才能使两个句子意思相同。(a)shook（握手，shake 的过去式）和(b)saluted（向……致敬，敬礼）、(c)greeted（问候，打招呼）和(d)called（叫喊，召唤）中，只有(c)同 waved to 含义最接近，所以应该选(c)。

11. (a)

前一句 Fancy meeting you here! 是感叹句，意为“想不到在这儿见到你！”fancy 是动词，表示“想像”，本句需要选一个同这一动词意义相同并且表示“惊异”的词作感叹句。(b) Think（考虑）、(c) Consider（考虑）、(d)Contemplate(沉思)3 个选择都与 Fancy 的含义不符，也不能作感叹词。只有(a)Imagine（想像）同 fancy 意义相同，并能作感叹词，表示惊异，因此应该选(a)。

12. (a)

该句需要选一个合适的词，以便进一步解释前一句 She lied to him(她向他说谎)。只有(a)false(假的)最能说明前一句的“说谎”。而其他 3 个选择中：(b)true(真实的)与“说谎”含义相反；(c)lie(谎言)是名词，虽然合乎题义，但是它前面应该有冠词 a；(d) wrong（错的）词义不如 false 贴切。因此应该选(a)。

4 句子结构答案

No *matter how busy you are, he always insists on coming with you.*

Lesson 69
But not murder!
并非谋杀！

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Mr. Eames had driven successfully through heavy traffic during his third driving test when the examiner instructed him to drive out of town. He told him to suppose that a child would suddenly cross the road in front of him. Mr. Eames would have to stop the car within five feet when the examiner tapped on the window. Though he tapped loudly, Mr. Eames did not react quickly enough and was told that he had just killed the child. (79 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. Three months later Eames appeared for his fourth test, and while driving, he was told to stop again.
2. This time, the examiner was thrown forward, but the child's life was saved.
3. Eames passed his test at last, but the examiner said: 'You nearly killed me this time.'

书信写作参考答案

1. I was pleased to hear from you again after such a long time.

2. I am sorry it has taken me so long to write...

3. Thank you for the nice birthday card you sent me last week...

4. I was very pleased to receive the postcard you sent me yesterday.

5. What a surprise it was to receive a birthday present from you...

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *was being tested* (l. 1); *had been asked* (ll. 1-2); After *having been instructed* (ll. 2-3); *must have been pleased* (l. 5); *could be heard* (l. 9); *were* both *thrown* forward (l. 10)

(关于被动语态请参见第10、21、34课关键句型)

难点练习答案

1. enjoy... practising
2. amused
3. advised... licence
4. entertain
5. entertained
6. amused

注解:

1. practice *n*. 实践,练习
   practise *v*. 实践,练习
   advice *n*. 劝告,忠告
   advise *v*. 向……提出劝告,建议
2. enjoy *vt*. 享受……的乐趣,喜爱,后面需要跟名词或动名词短语,也可以跟反身代词:

enjoy practising the piano 喜欢练习弹钢琴

enjoy oneself 过得快活,玩得痛快

3. amuse *vt*. 使欢乐,逗……乐,以……消遣:

We were all amused by the jokes he told us.

我们都被他讲的笑话逗乐了。

4. entertain *v*. 使欢乐,招待,请客,可以作及物动词和不及物动词:

We rarely entertain these days.

我们这几天很少请客。

He entertained everybody with his clever tricks.

他精彩的戏法使大家都很高兴。

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

根据课文第 3~4 行 I began to acquire confidence. Sure I had passed 可以看出只有(a)he was sure that he hadn't failed this time(他确信他这次考试没有失败)与课文所描述的情况相符,而其他 3 个选择虽然都是课文提及的内容,但不合乎逻辑。

2. (b)

根据课文第 6~11 行可以推断只有(b)he didn't stop quickly enough(他停车不够快)是他考试没有通过的原因。而(a)he ran over a child 与课文实际不符,因为只是假设有一个小孩穿过马路,(c)he pressed the brake pedal too hard 和(d)he and the examiner were thrown forward 虽然都是课文中提及的情况,但不是他考试失败的原因,因此应该选(b)。

3. (c)

只有选(c) was testing 最合乎语法，而(a)was being testing、(b)was been testing 和(d)was tested 都不符合语法和题义。

4. (b)

前一句中的 must have been 表示猜测，意为"想必是"。(a)had to be(不得不)、(c)was certainly(确定无疑地)、(d)should be(应该)这 3 个选择都与 must have been 的含义不符，只有(b)was probably(可能是)与其含义相同，因此应该选(b)。

5. (b)

前一句 Let us suppose that a child suddenly crosses the road 中的主要动词 suppose 和从句中的 crosses 都是一般现在时，表示当时发生的动作，意为"让我们假设一个小孩突然穿过马路"。该句只有选(b)Imagine it happening(想像它正在发生)才与前一句含义相符。(a)would happen 是过去将来时；(c)had been happening 过去完成进行时；(d)will have happened 将来完成时。这 3 个选择都不能表示现在发生的情况，因为时态都与 imagine 不符。

6. (c)

该句中的动词 continue(继续)后面只能跟名词、动名词和带 to 的动词不定式才合乎语法。(a)to driving 和(b)drive都不合乎语法；(d)to have been driving 意思不通；只有(c)to drive 是动词不定式，合乎语法，因此应该选(c)。

7. (d)

前一句 I want the car to be stopped(我想让车停下来)其中的动词不定式是被动语态 to be stopped，意思是"被别

人停下来”，而不是我自己把车停下。(a)want to stop(想去停)意思是说话人自己去做，与前一句含义不符；(b)want stop 和(c)want you stop 都不合乎语法；只有(d)want you to stop(想让你去停车)与前一句的含义最接近，因此(d)是正确答案。

8. (a)

只有(a)drive a car(开汽车)最合乎题义，因为前半句 When you have passed a driving test 的意思“是当你通过了驾驶执照考试后”，主句应该是“就允许你开汽车了”，而(b)buy a car(买一辆小汽车)、(c)sell a car(卖一辆小汽车)和(d)keep a car(保留一辆小汽车)都与驾驶执照考试没有直接的关系，因此(a)是正确答案。

9. (a)

该句中的 confident(有信心的，自信的)是形容词作表语，因此它前面的词应该是一个相当于动词 be 的系动词才符合语法。只有(a)became 是系动词，后面可以跟形容词，而(b)came、(c)obtained(获得)和(d)took 都不是系动词，后面都不能跟形容词。因此(a)是正确答案。

10. (b)

前一句中的 was instructed 意思是“被命令(做)”，本句只有选(b)told 才能与前一句的含义相符，而(a)taught(教)、(c)trained(培训)、(d)prepared(准备)都与前一句的意思不一致。

11. (c)

该句需要选出同前一句中的 performance(执行工作，成绩)意思相同的词，才能使两个句子含义相同。(a)act、(b)behaviour 和(d)doings 这 3 个选择都有“行为”、“举止”的意思，因此都不可能是正确答案。只有(c)efforts(努力，艰难尝试的结果；成绩)与 performance 的含义最

接近，所以应该选(c)。

12. (d)

该句需要选出同前一句中的 mournful(悲哀的)意义相同的词。(a)lamentable(可悲的，使人痛苦的)、(b)sorry(惋惜的，抱歉的)、(c)pitiful(可怜的)和(d)sorrowful(悲伤的，悲哀的)中只有(d)与 mournful 的意义相同，因此应该选(d)。

4 句子结构答案

After *having been instructed to drive out of town, I began to acquire confidence*.

Lesson 70
Red for danger
危险的红色

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

A drunk suddenly wandered into the middle of the ring during a bullfight and shouted rude remarks and waved a red cap. Ignoring the matador, the bull charged at the drunk, but he stepped aside to let it pass. The crowd cheered and the drunk bowed. Just after this, three men dragged the drunk to safety while the bull looked on sympathetically before it once more turned its attention to the matador. (72 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. *When* the man became sober, it was possible to discover his identity.
2. He was Domingo Cordova, *a man who* had been a great matador in his youth *but*, *having* failed in the ring, he had taken to drink.
3. He had changed *so much that* no one recognized him.

书信写作参考答案

I have not forgotten that I owe you some money and will pay you back when I see you.

You will find it hard to believe, but I've just won £100 on the football pools!

I am afraid I cannot meet you next week as I shall be in Singapore.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *unaware* of (1.2); *busy* with (1.3); *sensitive* to (1.5); *sure* of (1.7); *close* to (1.8); *sorry* for (1.10)

B. 1. of

be jealous of 妒忌

2. in...at

be well qualified in 在……很胜任　be efficient at one's work 工作效率高

3. in...for

be fortunate in 在……很幸运　for the winter 在那个/这个冬季

4. to...about

contrary to 与……相反　be uneasy about 对……感到不安

5. with...on

be familiar with 对……熟悉　be keen on 热心于,喜爱

6. at...with

be slow at 对……迟钝　be patient with 对……有耐心

7. to...for

be obvious to 对……清楚的　be responsible for... 对……负责

8. in

be honest in one's intentions 目的纯正

9. to...to

be indifferent to 对……冷漠,不关心　be rude to 对……粗暴无礼

10. of

be fond of 喜欢,爱好

11. on

be dependent on 依赖于

12. for

be gratedful for 因……而感激

13. from

different from 不同于

14. at...of

be quick at (头脑反应)很快,灵敏　be capable of 能够

15. on...about/of

be intent on 专心于　be doubtful about/of 对……有疑问,怀疑

16. for...with

be sorry for 对……感到遗憾　be angry with 对……生气

17. at

be good at 对……擅长

18. of

be ahead of 在……前面

19. to...to

be cruel to 对……残忍　be faithful to 忠实于

20. with

be consistent with 与……一致

21. to

be useful to 对……有用

22. of

be sure of 肯定，对……有把握

23. of

be guilty of 有……的罪

24. to

be sensitive to 对……敏感

25. for

be valid for 对……有效

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第5～6行 Apparently sensitive to criticism, the bull forgot all about the matador and charged at the drunk 可以判断，只有(d)and attracted the bull's attention 与课文的内容相符合，其他3个选择都与课文事实不符。

2. (b)

只有选(b)before he was removed 才与课文内容相符，其他3个选择均不是课文所暗示的情况，不符合课文所描述的内容。

3. (c)

前一句中的谓语动词 charged at 意为"朝着……冲上去"，本句只有选(c)at 才能同前一句的意思吻合，因为 run at 有"朝某个目标冲去"的含义，(a)to(朝某个方向跑去)目标不够具体；(b)against(碰上，偶然遇见)、(d)for(为某种

目的而跑)这两个选择均与前一句的含义不吻合,所以(c)是正确答案。

4. (c)

本句的谓语动词 was sure 是过去时,后面从句的动词也应该是过去时才合乎语法。(a)he will、(b)that he will、(d)he may 这 3 个选择都不是过去时,故此都不是正确答案。只有(c)he would 是过去将来时,最合乎语法,因此应该选(c)。

5. (d)

本句中的动词 let 后面只能跟宾语加不带 to 的动词不定式(let sb. do sth.)才合乎语法。(a)passing、(b)to pass、(c)in passing 都不能用在 let 后面,只有(d)pass 是不带 to 的动词不定式,因此应该选(d)。

6. (b)

该句的谓语动词是(had come)过去完成时,需要选一个相应的时间状语。(a)Up till that time 和(d)Until then 都有"到那时为止"的意思,都可以用于过去完成时,但它们都不能同表示瞬间动作的动词(如 go、come 等)的完成时连用,故不能选(a)和(d);(c)So far(到目前为止)只能用于现在完成时;只有(b)By then(那时,此时)可以用于过去完成时,因此(b)是正确答案。

7. (c)

本句的谓语动词 looked on 是一般过去时,从句也应该是相应的过去时态。(a)turn 和(b)to turn 都不合乎语法;(d)it was turning 是过去进行时,一般不适合用于以 before 或 after 引导的状语从句中;只有(c)it turned 是一般过去时,最合乎语法,所以应该选(c)。

8. (a)

前一句中的 unaware of 意为"没有意识到",本句需要选

出与它含义相反的词组，以使两个句子意思相同。(a)consious of（意识到的，知道的）、(b)knowledgeable about（对……有见识的，有知识的）、(c)sensitive to（对……敏感的）、(d)sensible about（对……觉察的，敏感的）中，只有(a)是 unaware of 的反义词，所以应该选(a)。

9. (c)

前一句中的动词 grew（变得）是系动词，后面跟形容词作表语，本句需要选一个同 grew 意义相同的系动词，以使两个句子含义相同。(a)increased（增加）、(b)began（开始）、(d)behaved（表现）这 3 个词都不能作系动词，因此都不是正确答案。只有(c)became（变得）与 grew 含义相同，可以作系动词，所以应该选(c)。

10. (d)

该句需要选出与前一句中的 aside（到一边，向旁边）含义相近的短语，以使两个句子意思相同。(a)in 与 aside 意思相反；(b)on 与 aside 意思不同，不合题义；(c)this 不是正确表达方式，意思不通；只有(d)与 aside 的含义相符，因此应该选(d)。

11. (d)

本句只有选(d)felt sorry for 才能同前一句（It looked on sympathetically）的意思最接近。而(a)liked 和(b)loved 都不符合题义。(c)sympathised 不符合语法，应该是 sympathised with。因此应选(d)。

12. (c)

(a)taking care of 和(b)looking after 都是"关照"的意思，不合乎题义；(d)minding（当心，留意）也不符合题义；只有(c)paying attention to（注意）最适合于这个句子，所以应该选(c)。

Lesson 71
A famous clock
一个著名的大钟

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

After the Houses of Parliament were burnt down in 1834, Sir Benjamin Hall was made responsible for the construction of huge clock, which became known as Big Ben. It is very accurate despite its immense size, for officials from the Greenwich Observatory have the clock checked twice a day. This clock, which has rarely gone wrong, can be heard on the B. B. C. when it is striking, because microphones are connected to the clock tower. (74 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. Big Ben not only tells correct time, but it also tells us when Parliament is in session.
2. There is a light in the clock tower which is kept on until the House closes.
3. Sometimes it is on all night.

书信写作参考答案

1. I wonder how you learnt that I had changed my address. Actually, we moved to this new appartment only last month.
2. You will never guess what happened the other day. I had passed

my driving test and got my driving licence at last.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

C. 1. shall have been working

 2. have finished

D. 1. had to go

 2. should/ought to buy

 3. should/ought to have telephoned

注解:

1. shall have been working 是将来完成进行时,表示动作从将来某一时间开始一直持续到说话人所提及的时间。
2. 关于 should、ought to 和 have to,请参见第 65 课关键句型。

难点练习答案

1. shop assistant 2. hung 3. hanged

注解:

动词 hang 既有"悬"、"挂"的意思,又有"吊死"、"绞死"的意思。当"悬"、"挂"讲时过去式和过去分词是 hung,而当"绞死"讲时其过去式和过去分词为 hanged。

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

 根据课文第 3～4 行 If the Houses of Parliament had not been burned down in 1834 可以判断只有(b)符合课文的内容,其他 3 个选择都与课文实际内容不符。

2. (d)

根据课文第 8 行 Officials from Greenwich Observatory have the clock checked twice a day 可以推断,只有(d)与课文事实相符,其他 3 个选择都与事实不符。

3. (b)

本句前半句陈述的是一个公认的事实,后半句则表示一个经常性或习惯性的动作,应该用一般现在时才合乎逻辑,即“每当你到伦敦的时候”。(a) will visit、(c) have visited、(d)will be visiting 这 3 个选择时态都不正确,只有(b)visit 是一般现在时,最合乎语法,所以应该选(b)。

4. (b)

只有选(b)最合乎题义,符合语法。(a)famousest 不是正确的最高级形式,famous 的最高级应该是 the most famous;(c)the more famous:比较级前不应该有定冠词,另外本句也没有表示比较的连词 than;(d)famouser不是正确的比较级形式。

5. (c)

本句若选(a)and、(b)also 和(d)together 都不合乎语法,也不符合题义。只有选(c)both 才合乎语法,意思通顺。所以(c)是正确答案。

6. (c)

该句是疑问句,因此需要用疑问句的语序,(b)they have it 和(d)they do have it 都是陈述句语序,故不能选;(a)have they it 意思不完整;只有(c)do they have it 是疑问句语序,而且合乎题义,因此应该选(c)。

7. (d)

(a)who、(b)had been 和(c)had 都不合乎语法,只有不加任何词,这个句子才是正确的,因此(d)是正确答案。

8. (b)

前一句中的 erected 意为"建造"、"建立",该句只有选(b)up 与 put 构成词组表示建造,与 erected 的含义相同,这样两个句子的意思才能吻合。而(a)in、(c)off、(d)down 这 3 个选择均不符合题义。

9. (b)

该句只有选(b)duty(责任,职责)才能同前一句意义相同。(a)responsible(负责的)虽然词义正确,但词性不对,应该是名词才适合这个句子;(c)charge(责任,职责)虽然词义和词性都正确,但一般不用于这类句子中,而常用于词组里,如 in charge of(负责)、take the charge of(主管,负责);(d)control(控制,支配)不符合题义。

10. (c)

前句中的形容词 immense 意为"巨大的"、"庞大的",该句需要一个与它含义相同的形容词,才能使两个句子意义相同。(a)great(大的,重大的)主要强调等级上重要的;(b)large(大的,巨大的)主要强调空间的宽敞、广博;(d)huge(非常大的,巨大的,庞大的)主要强调体积的大;(d)big(大的)主要指体积的大,也可以指力量的大,但它强调超出一般体积或程度的大。这 4 个词中只有(c)huge 与 immense 含义最接近,所以应该选(c)。

11. (b)

该句需要一个与前一句中引导时间状语从句的连词 when 意义相同的词,以使两个句子含义相同。(a)the hour 不能引导状语从句;(c)really 和(d)indeed 都是副词,都不能引导从句;只有(b)the moment(当……时,一……就)与 when 含义相同,并可以引导时间状语从句,因此应该选(b)。

12. (a)

前一句 The clock slowed down 的含义是"钟变慢了",该句只

有选(a)was slow(慢了)才和前一句含义相符。而(b)was behind(在后面)、(c)went back(回去)和(d)went slowly(慢慢地走)都与前一句含义不吻合。

4 句子结构答案

If the Houses of Parliament had not been burned down, the great clock would never have been erected.

Lesson 72
A car called *Bluebird*
"蓝鸟"汽车

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Sir Malcolm Campbell set up a land-speed record in 1935 driving a car called *Bluebird*, which had been specially built for him. His average speed was incorrectly declared to be 299 miles per hour, but this mistake was corrected later. He had averaged 301 miles an hour. Years later, his son, Donald, also broke a record and his car was also called *Bluebird*. (63 *words*)

作文参考答案

1. During a car race, the leading car suddenly skidded and overturned.
2. But fortunately the driver was not hurt, and he got his car on to the course.
3. Finally he won the race.

书信写作参考答案

I have not forgotten that it's your birthday tomorrow.

You will find it hard to believe, but I've decided to move into the country.

I am afraid I owe you a letter of apology.

I wonder how you learnt that I had changed my address.

You will never guess who turned up/what happened the other day.

2 语法、词汇练习

难点练习答案

A.

1. miss	2. expecting	3. raise	4. lying
5. beats	6. quite	7. am used to	8. pick
9. price	10. cost	11. value	12. checked
13. accept	14. dress up	15. practise	16. amused
17. hung	18. late	19. hard	20. nearly

B. 1. I told him about it in order to help you.

2. I opened the door quietly so as not to disturb him.

3. He left the letter on the table in order that I might/should see it.

C. 1. up 2. down 3. out 4. up 5. off

D. 1. say...told 2. tell 3. say 4. said 5. telling

(请参见第 50～71 课难点练习答案)

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

根据课文第 9～10 行，只有(a)是课文所暗示的情况，其他 3 个选择均与课文内容不符。

2. (c)

根据课文第 10～11 行可以看出，只有(c)是课文暗示的情况，其他 3 个选择都与课文内容不符。

3. (a)

只有选(a)before 才能与前一句含义相吻合。(b)ago 不合乎

语法，因为 ago 不能用于完成时；(c)since 也不合乎语法，可以是 since then，用于现在完成时的句子中；(d)again 虽然意思讲得通但与前一句含义不符；所以(a)是正确答案。

4. (d)

本句是一个疑问句，回答是 30 feet，表示“长度”，所以应该选问长度的疑问词。(a)How long ago 是对时间提问的；(b)Which length 表达方式错误；(c)How length 语法错误，how 后面不能跟名词；只有(d)How long 是对“长度”提问的，所以应该选(d)。

5. (b)

(a)It was difficulty for him 和(c)It was difficulty 都有语法错误，应该用形容词 difficult 作表语才正确；(d)He was difficult 也不正确，因为本句的主语是后面的动词不定式，所以前面应该用 it 作形式主语才正确；只有(b)It was difficult for him 最合乎语法，所以(b)是正确答案。

6. (a)

前面的疑问句是针对速度提问的，后面的回答需要一个表示速度的介词。(b)With、(c)To 和(d)By 都不能引出表示速度的短语，只有(a)At 可以表示速度，所以应该选(a)。

7. (c)

只有选(c)called 最合乎语法，因为过去分词 called 可以放在名词后面作定语，表示被动的意思“被称作”。其他 3 个选择(a)to call、(b)calling 和(d)calls 都不能用在名词 car 后面作定语，更没有被动的含义。

8. (c)

该句需要选一个与前一句中的 set up(创立)意义相同的动词才能与前一句含义相同。(a)did(做)、(b)played(玩)、(d)found(发现)这 3 个选择都不是 set up 的同义词。只有(c)created(创造)与 set up 含义相同，created a record 和 set

up a record 都有“创纪录”的意思，所以(c)是正确答案。

9. (d)

前一句中的 30 feet in length 表示长度，本句需要一个说明长度的形容词，才能使两个句子含义相同。(a)length(长度)因为是名词，不能用在 how 后面；(b)tall(高的)和(c)large(大的)都不合乎题义；只有(d)long(长的)是形容词，最符合语法和题义，所以应该选(d)。

10. (b)

前一句中的 301 miles per hour(每小时 301 英里)说明的是速度，本句需要一个说明速度快慢的副词才能与前一句意思吻合。(a)speed(速度)只是名词，不能说明速度快慢；(c)soon(快，不久)是副词，一般不指速度的快，而是强调时间上的早晚；(d)rapid(迅速的，急促的)是形容词，一般不说明速度的快慢，而是强调动作的节奏快，另外词性也不合乎要求；只有(b)fast(快，迅速)既可以作形容词也可作副词，可以指速度的快慢，所以应该选(b)。

11. (a)

本句需要一个与前一句中的 disappointed(失望的，不满意的)含义相同的词，以便使这两个句子意义相同。(a)sorry(惋惜的，遗憾的)、(b)hopeless(无望的，绝望的)、(c)despair(绝望，灰心)和(d)desperate(拼命的，绝望的)这 4 个词中只有(a)与 disappointed 的含义最接近，所以应该选(a)。

12. (d)

本句需要一个与前一句中的 mistake(错误)含义相同的形容词，才能使两个句子意思相吻合。(a)mistake 是名词或动词，不合乎语法，若是过去分词 mistaken 就适合这个句子了；(b)correct(正确的)和(c)right(对的)都与 mistake 含义相反，因此都不正确；只有(d)wrong(错的)与 mistake 含义相同，所以应该选(d)。

Following *his father's footsteps many years later, Sir Malcolm's son, Donald, also set up a world record.*

测试4答案

关键句型练习答案

A. 1. He missed the train *because* he did not hurry.

2. *Although* he ran fast, he failed to win the race.

3. I was *so* tired *that* I went to sleep immediately.

4. My neighbour, *who* went to Tokyo for a holiday, could not return home *because* he did not have enough money.

5. *Finding* the door unlocked, I went into the kitchen.

6. I bought a picture *which* was very valuable.

7. He walked quietly down the corridor *so that* no one would hear him.

8. They cleared the ground *to* build a house.

(复合句中的语序:请参见第 49 课关键句型练习答案)

B. One day, a workman who was digging in a field accidentally struck a 6,000-volt electricity cable with his spade. Although he was thrown twenty feet, he was unhurt. However, that night the neighbouring town was in darkness and no one knew what had happened.

C. a. I'd (would) prefer ... don't understand ... doesn't matter ... does *that word* mean ... don't know ... is bringing

b. got ... decided ... began ... wrote ... included ... paid ... rang ... was not surprised ... led ... hid ... was embarrassed

c. looked ... arrived ... have been waiting ... said ... answered ... Were ... went ... said ... got ... weren't ... came ... said ... waited ... didn't come

... have *you* been doing ... asked ... have *just* been... answered

d. came ... was used ... used to hide ... would *often* bury/*often* buried ... (would) fail/failed ... went ... was examining ... showed ... was ... dug ... found

注解:

一般现在时和现在进行时:请参见第 26 课关键句型练习答案注解。

一般过去时:请参见第 3 课和第 27 课关键句型答案注解。

现在完成时和现在完成进行时:请参见第 28 课和第 52 课关键句型练习答案注解。一般过去时同上。

过去进行时、过去时和表示过去习惯性动作:请参见第 7、31、55 课关键句型练习答案注解。

e. is setting out/will set out ... will send ... receive ... receive/have received ... will try ... locate/have located ... will fire ... will carry ... will pour ... will be sent

f. will soon be sending up ... will be taking ... will grab ... will soon be sending ... will tell ... will have sent

g. (had) discovered ... appeared ... had taken ... died ... happened ... claimed ... had died ... had been searching ... had been found

h. was taking ... had been asked ... having been instructed ... must have been pleased ... be stopped ... could be heard ... were *both* thrown

i. 1. He told me to keep quiet.

2. He suggested (that) I should send him a telegram (*or* He suggested sending him ...).

3. He insisted (that) I should ask him about it (*or* He

insisted on my asking him ...).

4. He told me not to worry about it.

j. 1. I wonder if he can wait a few minutes longer.

2. I wonder when he will arrive.

3. I wonder if he has passed his examination.

4. I wonder where he is.

k. 1. had listened 2. had written 3. would have had

l. meeting ... running ... pretending ... meeting ... coming ... preventing ... following ... meeting ... doing ... coming ... speaking

注解：

将来时：请参见第 12 课关键句型。

一般将来时、将来进行时、将来完成时和将来完成进行时：请参见第 13、36、37、61 课关键句型。

一般过去时、过去完成时、过去完成进行时：请参见第 3、27、38、62 课关键句型注解。

直接引语和间接引语：请参见第 15 课和第 39 课关键句型。

以 I wonder 开头的句子和间接引语疑问句：请参见第 63 课关键句型练习答案。

if 条件句(非真实条件句)：请参见第 40、64 课关键句型练习答案注解。

填空(动名词)：请参见第 20 课关键句型练习答案注解。

D. a. 1. should/ought to come

2. had to do

3. should have/ought to have come

4. should have/ought to have asked

b. 1. He is *having* a new house *built*.

2. She *will have* a new dress *made*.

3. I *had* my hair *cut* yesterday.

4. We *must have* this tree *cut* down.

c. 1. I *did not manage to* get into town this morning.

2. They *did not manage to* find the boy who had run away.

3. He *did not manage to* find a new job.

4. I *did not manage to* translate the passage into English.

注解：

should、ought 和 have to 的用法：请参见第 65 课关键句型练习答案注解。

含有 have 的使役结构：请参见第 66 课关键句型练习答案注解。

managed to 和 could 的用法：请参见第 67 课关键句型练习答案注解。

E. breakfast ... *the* children ... school ... (*the*) market ... *the* children ... school ... work ... *the* house ... *some* tarts for tea ... *a* short time ... butter and flour ... sticky pastry ... *the* telephone ... *the* receiver ... two sticky fingers ... *the* voice ... *the* receiver ... *a* mess ... pastry ... *the* telephone ... *the* doorknobs ... *the* kitchen ... *the* door bell ... *the* dead ... *the* postman ... *a* registered letter

注解：

the 和 some 的用法：请参见第 6 课和第 30 课关键句型练习答案注解。

F. of ... deal ... most ... most ... oldest ... many ... Many ... more ... few ... than ... lot of ... deal ... from ... less

G. 1. in . . . at . . . in . . . in

2. at . . . out of

3. to . . . in . . . with . . . in . . . in

H. 1. with

angry with 生……的气,发怒

2. at

good at 擅长(……)

3. of

fond of 喜欢

4. for

thankful for 感谢的

5. to

faithful to 忠实于……

6. for

responsible for 负责的

7. of

sure of 确信

8. to

obvious to 明显的

难点练习答案

A. 1. loose 2. rise 3. laid 4. hard

5. won 6. quiet 7. used to 8. dropped

9. at 10. pick 11. grown 12. invented

13. let 14. part 15. reason 16. amused

17. checking 18. advise

(请参见第 50～71 课难点练习及答案注解)

B. (sample sentences)

If you promise not to mention it to anyone else, I'll *tell* you

a secret.

Have you *said your prayers* tonight, Johnny?

He *told* me *a lie*.

She *said nothing* to me or to anyone else.

I always *tell* the children *a story* before they go to bed.

'Are they really coming tonight?'—'Of course. They *said so*.'

C. 1. *Our school dining room* is very large.

2. He told us a *ghost story*.

3. She gave me a *birthday present*.

4. We stopped at a *village pub*.

5. *The party leader* made a speech.

Lesson 73
The record-holder
纪录保持者

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

A boy who played truant travelled 1,600 miles. He hitchhiked to Dover where he slept in a boat, only to find himself in Calais the next morning. A lorry driver gave him a lift and something to eat, and the boy got off near Paris. He stopped another car but, instead of being taken to Paris, he was taken to Perpignan on the French-Spanish border. After being picked up by a policeman, he was sent home by the local authorities. (80 *words*)

A boy played truant from school and travelled 1,600 miles. After hitchhiking to Dover, he slept in a boat. The next morning he found himself in Calais, where a lorry driver gave him a lift and something to eat. On getting off near Paris, he stopped another car which did not take him to Paris but to Perpignan on the French-Spanish border. There he was picked up by a policeman and sent home by the local authorities.

(77 *words*)

作文参考答案

The boy who went across the border of his country while playing truant finally returned home. As he did not have enough food to eat for two days, he got sick, cold and hungry. His parents were worried about his safety while he was away, and they looked for him everywhere. When they unexpectedly met him at the harbour, they got so excited and happy that they could hardly believe their eyes. His parents' reactions made the boy feel ashamed of himself.

When the boy returned to school after playing truant for several days, he was afraid he would be punished by the headmaster. But all the boys gave him a hero's weclome, and asked him questions about his adventures. And to his surprise, the headmaster punished him by making him give a talk to the whole school about his experience abroad.

(143 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

You will never guess what happened the other day. I bought a new car with all my savings!

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *who*(1.1); *or*(1.2); *as far as*(1.3); *who*(1.4); *while*(1.4); *and*(1.5); *When*(1.6); *as*(1.8); *and*(1.9); *and*(1.9); *as*(1.10); *but*(1.10); *and*(1.11); *who*(1.12)

C. 1. The climbers not only reached the top of the mountain,

but (they) spent the night there as well.

2. When a fire broke out in a cinema, several hundred people tried to leave the building and a number of them were injured.
3. James Sullivan, whose book on the Antarctic was published recently, will give a lecture at the local library next week.
4. Although the police searched everywhere, neither the missing boy nor his dog could be found.
5. In spite of the fact that fares have increased, the railway company is still losing money because the employees have demanded higher wages.
6. He gave me such a fright that I knocked the teapot over.
7. After making sure that the alarm clock worked, I set it so that it would ring at six o'clock.
8. I hid the Christmas presents under the desk quickly so that my young daughter would not see them when she entered the room.
9. Refusing the offer, I explained that I had already been offered a job by another company.
10. He fought the wolves off for three hours before help arrived.

8 多项选择练习

1. (c)

根据课文第 5 行 He hitchhiked to Dover(他搭便车到了多佛)可以判断只有(c)Someone gave him a lift(某人让他搭

便车)与课文内容相符,并能说明他是怎么到达多佛的,其他 3 个选择都与课文内容不符。所以应该选(c)。

2.(a)

根据课文第 9～10 行 The next car ... did not take him into the centre of Paris as he hoped it would, but to Perpignan ...,可以看出只有(a)与课文内容相符,其他 3 个选择均不符合课文内容。所以(a)是正确答案。

3.(d)

这是一个针对行走的路程提问的疑问句,回答是 1,600 miles。因此需要选一个合适的疑问词。(a)How long 是对长度或时间长短提问的;(b)How long ago 是问时间的;(c)How much further 是对程度提问的;只有(d)How far 是问行走的路程的,因此应该选(d)。

4.(a)

此句是针对方式提问的,因此需要一个表示方式的短语作为简短的回答。只有(a)By hitchhiking 是说明方式的,其他 3 个选择(b)With hitchhike、(c)Hitchhiking 和(d)With hitchhiking 都不正确,所以(a)是正确答案。

5.(c)

(a)no one、(b)none 和(d)not one 都表示否定意义,而这个句子已经是否定句,因此不应该再填表示否定意义的词,所以这 3 个选择都不正确。只有(c)anyone 能用在否定或疑问句中,所以(c)是正确答案。

6.(d)

本句是将前一句的主动语态转换成了被动语态,因此原来的宾语 him 需要变成本句的主语,作主语就需要用主格人称代词,所以(d)He 是正确答案,而其 3 个选择(a)To him、(b)Him、(c)For him 都不是主格人称代语,都不能作主语。

7. (a)

只有选(a)being picked up by a policeman 最符合语法和题义，After 后面可以跟一个动词 + -ing 形式或一个句子，作时间状语。(b)he picked up 虽然是一个句子，但不合乎语法，因为它后面有 by a policeman 应该用被动语态 he was picked up 才正确；(c)been picked up 语法错误；(d)picking up 虽然是动词 + -ing 形式，但不能表示被动的意义。所以这 3 个选择都不正确，只有(a)是正确答案。

8. (d)

该句中的 play truant 有“逃学”、“故意不去上学”的含义，因此只有选(d)on purpose 最符合题义，合乎逻辑。其他 3 个选择(a)because they are ill、(b)because they have left 和(c)because they are not allowed to 都不合乎逻辑。

9. (a)

前一句中的 unimaginative 意为“缺乏想像力的”，该句需要选一个与它含义相反的名词才能使两个句子意思相同。只有(a)imagination(想像力)与 unimaginative 含义相反，所以应该选(a)。(b)fantasy(幻想，幻觉)词义不够贴切；(c)imaginary(想像中的，空想的)词性不合适；(d)fantasia(幻想曲，幻想作品)词义不合适。

10. (a)

本句需要选与前一句中的 put to shame(使惭愧，羞耻)含义相同的形容词，才能使两个句子意义一致。(b)shy(胆怯的，害羞的)词义不够贴切；(c)shyness 词义和词性都不正确；(d)shameful(丢脸的，可耻的)的主语一般是物而不是人，该句的主语是人 They，因此不应该选(d)；只有(a)ashamed(感到羞愧的，羞耻的)的主语往往是人，符合题义，因此(a)是最佳答案。

11. (d)

只有选(d)found才能使这一句同前面的句子意思相吻合,因为前一句中的was picked up在这里有“被偶然发现”的意思。(a)gathered(使聚集,采集)、(b)collected(收集)、(c)assembled(集合,集中)这3个选择都不合乎题义。

12. (b)

本句要求选一个与前句中的evading(逃避,逃离)含义相同的词,这样两个句子意思才一致。(a)escaping(逃脱,逃离)、(b)avoiding(躲开,回避)、(c)preventing(阻止)中(d)running away(逃跑)这4个词中只有(b)同evading的含义最相近,所以应该选(b)。

4 句子结构答案

When *he woke up next morning*, *he discovered that the boat had*, *in the meantime*, *travelled to Calais*.

Lesson 74
Out of the limelight
舞台之外

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

After an ancient bus had stopped by a dry river bed, a party of famous film stars descended. They were dressed in dark glasses and old clothes so as not to be recognized. Two of the actors carried some picnic things to a shady spot and everyone sat down. Just then a sheriff arrived and told them rudely that they must leave because camping was not allowed. Even when they told him who they were, he did not believe them. (80 *words*)

An ancient bus stopped by a dry river bed. A party of famous film stars descended, dressed in dark glasses and old clothes in order that no one should recognize them. Two of the actors carried the picnic things to a shady spot. Everyone had sat down when a sheriff appeared and told them rudely that they must leave, as camping was not allowed there. They told him who they were but he did not believe them. (77 *words*)

作文参考答案

Last weekend, we got up early. As it was a fine day, my

father suggested that we go for a picnic. We made preparations for it first, and then we set out at ten o'clock. We drove into the country and stopped by a dry river bed. Getting out of our car, we found a quiet place under some trees and unpacked our hampers. After we had made ourselves comfortable we had our picnic together.

As we were enjoying our picnic, there were a few wasps flying over our heads, and then a great many of them swarmed to us. We made an effort to drive them away, but suddenly my father saw a wasp nest in a tree nearby. Knowing that it was impossible to get rid of the wasps, we seized our things quickly, returned to our car and drove away quickly to our dismay. (148 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

B. 1. are *now* investigating　2. travels
3. resembles　4. delivers
5. looks　6. loves
7. is coming　8. do *you* prefer

C. (sample sentences)
1. This box is empty, but that one contains old papers.
2. What does 'No Camping' mean?
3. I don't believe a word he says!
4. I'm sorry, but I don't understand what you mean.
5. They want (to buy) a new house.
6. Don't hurry. It doesn't matter if we're late.

难点练习答案

a. 1. over　2. into　3. through　4. off

5. on ... with　6. on with

b. 1. No Smoking (in this compartment)

2. No Parking

3. No Waiting on this side of the street today

注解:

1. get over 从(疾病、震惊等)中恢复过来,忘怀
2. get into 进入
3. get through 通过(考试)
4. get it off 把它取下,拿下
5. get on well with 与……相处得好
6. get on with 继续

8 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第2~3行只有(b)最符合课文内容,其他3个选择都不能说明这些演员化装的目的。

2. (d)

根据课文最后一段 'Oh, is it?' said the sheriff with a sneer... 'Now you get out of here fast!' 可以判断只有(d)didn't believe that they were famous actors 是课文所暗示的情况,其他3个选择均与课文内容不符。

3. (c)

前一句中的 too perfect 意为"过分完美",本句需要找出与它含义相近的表达方式。(a)perfect(完美)、(b)quite perfect(相当完美)、(c)more perfect than is convenient(非常的,超常的完美)和(d)almost perfect(几乎完美的)中,只有(c)同 too perfect 的含义最接近,所以应该选(c)。

4. (c)

本句是一个感叹句，需要一个合适的感叹词引导。(a)How和(d)How a 都不合乎语法，因为它们不能修饰名词 place；(b)What 可以修饰名词，但是 place 是可数名词，因此还应该有不定冠词 a 才正确；只有(c)What a 最符合语法，所以应该选(c)。

5. (d)

前面的句子中的 Why don't 结构经常用来提出建议，它的含义是"我们应该经常来"。只有选(d)should 最符合题义和时态，因为 should 是情态助动词，意为"应该"，是指现在。而其他 3 个选择(a)could、(b)would 和(c)might 分别是 can、will 和 may 的过去式，它们的词义和时态都与前面的句子含义不符。

6. (c)

这一句中的 No camping 意为"禁止野营"，在公告牌上经常用这类省略句形式。只有(c)you aren't allowed to camp(不允许你野营)与 No camping 的含义相同，而(a)there isn't any(没有任何什么)、(b)it's without camping(没有野营)、(d)you needn't camp(你没必要野营)这 3 个选择都与 No camping 含义不符。所以(c)是正确答案。

7. (a)

本句只有选(a)If(如果)最合乎语法和题义。If 可以用来引导一个条件从句，从句用现在时，主句用将来时 will，(b)Providing that(以……为条件，假如)不如 If 常用，而且仅用在非常正式的书面用语中，故不能选(b)；(c)Whether(是否)不能引导条件从句；(d)In the situation(处于这种形势)是介词短语不能引导从句。

8. (c)

该句需要一个同前一句中的 clothes(衣着，服装)意义相

同的词，才能使两个句子意思相吻合。(a)cloth(布，织物)；(b)cloths (cloth 的复数形式)；(c)clothing(衣服，衣着)；(d)dresses(衣服)主要指某种场合穿的衣服、礼服。只有(c)最接近 clothes 的含义，所以应该选(c)。

9. (b)

该句需找出与 disguise(化装，伪装)含义相关的词。(a)computer (计算机)、(c)bus(公共汽车)、(d)train(火车)这 3 个选择均与 disguise 无关。只有(b)mark(面具，掩盖物)与 disguise 含义相关，因为面具是化装或伪装的一种手段，所以(b)是正确答案。

10. (c)

本句的 fan 是指"(运动、娱乐等的)狂热爱好者"，只有(c)enjoys seeing 才符合题义，因为 enjoy seeing 是"喜欢看"的意思，同 fan 的含义相符，而其他 3 个选择(a)makes(制造)、(b)see(看)和(d)possesses(拥有)都与 fan 的含义不相符。

11. (a)

本句需要选出与前一句中的 notice(通告，招牌，标记)含义相同的词。(a)sign(招牌，标记，记号)、(b)label(标签，商标，牌子)、(c)signal(信号)和(d)board(木板)这 4 个词中只有(a)与 notice 的含义相同，其他 3 个选择含义都与 notice 不同，所以应该选(a)。

12. (b)

前一句中的 with a sneer 意为"带着冷笑/嘲笑"。本句要选一个与它含义相同的词。(a)pleased(使高兴，使喜欢)；(b)scornful(轻蔑的，藐视的)；(c)teasing them(嘲弄他们)；(d)mocking them 不合语法，mock 常与 at 连用。只有(b)最接近 with a sneer 的含义，所以应该选(b)。

Lesson 75
SOS
呼救信号

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

A plane crashed in the mountains, but the only passengers, a young woman and her two baby daughters, were not hurt. It was midwinter and extremely cold, so the woman put the children in a case, covered them with clothes and kept close to them all night. When she heard planes early next morning, she stamped out SOS in the snow. This was seen by a pilot, who sent a radio message, and they were soon rescued by a helicopter. (80 *words*)

When a plane crashed in the mountains, the only passengers, a young woman and her two baby daughters, were not hurt. However, it was midwinter and extremely cold. After putting the children in a case and covering them with clothes, the woman kept close to them all night. On hearing planes early next morning, the woman stamped out SOS in the snow, which was seen by a pilot. A message was sent and they were soon rescued by a helicopter. (80 *words*)

作文参考答案

Some time ago, a light aeroplane with a heavy cargo took off. It flew smoothly at the beginning, but after a while, it flew off course because of a sudden storm and high winds. The pilot made a crash while trying to make a quick landing in the snow.

Fortunately, the pilot was unhurt. He found some ropes and got off the crashed plane. And then he roped the plane to a rock. As it was the middle of winter, it was terribly cold. The pilot set up a tent by the plane, and spent the night in it. But when he woke up the next morning, he found that the plane had been swept away by the wind and had been smashed into pieces. Only some cargo and wreckage were left in the snow.

(133 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

Forgive me for not writing earlier. I should have written a thank-you letter for the lovely scarf you sent me for my birthday upon receiving it. But I have been kept in bed with 'flu' for quite a few days. Now I'm feeling better, well enough to drop a few lines to say 'many thanks' to you.

(57 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *flew* (1.1); *crashed* (1.2); *was killed* (1.2); *grew* dark (1.5); *turned* (1.6); *put* (1.6); *could find* (1.7); *got*

(1.8); *kept* (1.8); *could* (1.8); *tried* to get (1.9); *heard* (1.9); *wondered* (1.10); *could send* (1.10); *had* (1.10); *stamped* out (1.11); *saw* (1.11); *sent* (1.11); *arrived* (1.12)

(Note: Other past tenses 〈e.g. *lay*, [1.4]; *knew* [1.5]; *was* [1.12]〉 are descriptive, i.e. they do not indicate something that *happened*.)

难点练习答案

1. grew/got/turned　2. fell　3. grew

4. turn/go　5. come/become　6. grew

7. growing/getting...growing/getting

8. got/grown　9. fell　10. come

注解:

以上动词都有 become(变成)的意思。它们后面都可以跟形容词作表语。

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

根据课文第1~2行可以推断,只有(c)it wasn't flying in the right direction 才是飞机坠毁的原因,所以只有(c)是正确答案。其他3个选择都不能说明飞机坠毁的原因。

2. (a)

根据课文第11行 a pilot saw the signal and sent a message 可以推测,只有(a)是课文所暗示的内容,其他3个选择均与课文内容不符。

3. (b)

只有选(b)young 才能使该句与前一句意思相同。若选

(a)a youth 同前一句意思不符；(c)a young 不合乎语法；(d)youth 既不符合语法也不合乎题义。

4. (d)

此句是一般过去时疑问句。因为有助动词 did 提问，所以句子的谓语动词要用原形。(a)lay 是动词原形，词义为"使……躺下"、"放置"，它也是动词 lie 的过去式；(b)laid是 lay 的过去式和过去分词形式；(c)lain 是动词 lie 的过去分词；(d)lie 是动词原形，意为"平放着"、"处于某种状态"；只有 lie 最符合语法和题义，所以应该选(d)。

5. (b)

只有选(b)big enough 才能使本句与前一句 It was too small 意思吻合。而(a)enough big 词序不对，不合乎惯用法；(c)fairly big(相当大)和(d)rather big 意思相同，它们都很少用于否定句中。

6. (a)

该句的谓语动词 hear 后面应该跟名词 + 不带 to 的动词不定式，或跟名词 + 动词 + -ing。只有(a)pass 是不带 to 的不定式，最合乎语法，其他 3 个选择(b)to pass、(c)to passing、(d)in passing 都不符合语法。

7. (b)

只有(b)soon afterwards(不久，很快)与前一句中的 not long before 的含义相同，其他 3 个选择(a)after(在……之后)、(c)behind(在……后面)、(d)much later(更晚)都不符合题义，所以(b)是正确答案。

8. (b)

该句需要一个与前一句中的 light(轻型的)意思相反的词才能与前一句意思吻合。(a)dark(黑暗的)、(b)heavy(重的)、(c)black(黑的)和(d)deep(深的)这 4 个词中只有 heavy 是 light 的反义词，因此(b)是正确答案。

9. (d)

该句应选与前一句中的 terribly(可怕地,极端地)含义相近的形容词,才能使两个句子意义相同。(a)frightening(使惊恐,恐吓)是动词 frighten 的现在分词形式,很少作形容词用,因为它的形容词形式是 frightful;(b)horrifying(使毛骨悚然,使震惊)也很少用作形容词,因为它已有形容词形式 horrible;(c)shocking(令人震惊的,骇人的,极坏的)语气比 terrible 要强烈;(d)frightful(惊人的,可怕的,极大的,非常的)是动词 frighten 的形容词形式;只有(d)与 terribly 含义最接近,因此应该选(d)。

10. (d)

该句需要选一个与前句中的 signal(信号)含义相同的词,才能与前一句意思吻合。(a)a letter(信,字母)、(b)a sign(记号,标志)、(c)a signature(签名,署名)和(d)a message(消息,信息,音信)这 4 个选择中只有(d)与 signal 含义相符合,因为 send a signal(发个信号)就等于 send a message(发个消息或信息),所以应该选(d)。

11. (c)

该句需要一个能够同句中的动词 stamped(跺,踩)配合的名词才能使句子意思完整。(a)hands(手)、(b)head(头)、(d)knees(膝盖)这 3 个词与 stamp 搭配都不合适,都不合乎情理,只有(c)feet(脚)能与 stamp 配合使用,因此(c)是正确答案。

12. (c)

该句需要一个能够作表语的词或短语,才能使句子意思完整。(a)live(生活,居住)是动词,不能作表语;(b)lively(活泼的,快活的)是形容词,可以作表语,但词义不符合这个句子;(d)in life(在生活中)是介词短语,它不是习惯用法,不适合作表语;只有(c)alive(活着的)是形容词,可

作表语，词义也符合题义，所以应该选(c)。

4 句子结构答案

When *it grew dark*, *she turned a suitcase into a bed and put the children inside it*, *covering them with all the clothes she could find*.

Lesson 76
April Fools' Day
愚人节

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

To end the special news bulletin, the television announcer showed viewers the macaroni fields of Calabria, where macaroni has been grown for over six hundred years. Harvesting has begun earlier this year and the whole village has been working hard, gathering and threshing the crop before the September rains. The crop is processed in the local factory. After the harvest, the famous Calabrian macaroni-eating competition, which Signor Fratelli has won every year since 1991, will take place. That ended the news bulletin for April 1st. (85 *words*)

To end the news bulletin, the television announcer showed viewers the fields of Calabria. Here, macaroni has been grown for over six hundred years. This year, harvesting has begun earlier. The whole village has been working hard, gathering and threshing before the September rains so that the crop can be processed in the local factory. After the harvest, the famous macaroni-eating competition will be held. This has been won by Signor Fratelli every year since 1991. With that, the news bulletin for April 1st ended. (85 *words*)

作文参考答案

Last Friday, a Macaroni-eating competition took place in Calabria where macaroni has been grown for over six hundred years. Six competitors were taking part in it. They were all very fat and they had all won in such competitions before. But this time, they hoped to get even better scores than ever. As usual, huge quantity of macaroni had been prepared and weighed before the competition, and it was served continuously during the competition.

In such a competition, it was quantity not speed that was important. The competitors had been eating for three hours without stopping. After that, they began to give up one after another. Finally, there was only one man left. He still asked for more! (118 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

I have just heard that Tom Blake will be staying with you for a week. You know I haven't seen him for years, since we met each other at the International Book Fair in London in 1996. So I would love to meet him again. Please tell me his schedule. (53 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. What has happened: *has been grown* (1.3); *has begun* (1.6); *have* just *finished* (1.7); *has won* (1.13)

What has been happening: *have been expecting* (1.5); *has*

been working(11.8-9); *has been helping*(1.10)

难点练习答案

1. among 2. usual 3. manager 4. headmaster
5. usual 6. director 7. between 8. usually

8 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第 9～10 行 Mrs Brabante is talking to the manager of the local factory where the crop is processed 可以判断出(d)是正确答案，而其他 3 个选择均与事实不符。

2. (b)

根据课文内容，事情发生在 4 月 1 日愚人节，按照西方国家的风俗，这一天人们往往以愚弄别人作为乐事，所以(b)to play a trick on viewers 是课文所暗示的情况。其他 3 个选择虽然也都与课文情形有关，但都不是电视节目的意图，因此(b)是正确答案。

3. (d)

本句只有选(d)say 最合乎题义和语法，因为 say 后面可以跟一个从句作宾语。而(a)tell 后面通常要带两个宾语(直接宾语和间接宾语)tell sb. sth.，此处若填 tell 意思不够完整；(b)tell that 同(a)一样，也不能选；(c)say to me 不符合惯用法，应该是 say sth.，或 say sth. to sb.。所以(d)是最佳答案。

4. (a)

该句只有选(a)hasn't finished 才能同前一句的时态保持一致，因为前面句子是现在完成时，其他 3 个选择均在时

态上与前一句不符合。

5. (a)

该句只能选(a)in 才合乎语法，因为在月份前面要用介词 in，而其他 3 个词 on、the、at 都不能用于月份前。

6. (b)

该句是对前面疑问句的回答。因为是以 How long(多久)提问的，因此需要一个能引导表示一段时间的从句的连词。(a)From then 不是正确的表达方式，也不能回答 How long 的问题；(c)For 只能引导原因状语从句；(d)By then(到那时)虽然能引导表示时间的句子，但不能回答 How long 的问题；只有(b)Since 能引导时间从句意思是“自……以来”，可以回答 How long 的提问，所以只能选(b)。

7. (b)

该句是一个被动语态疑问句，需要主谓倒置，(a)the crop is processed 是陈述句语序；(c)is processed the crop 的语序有错误；(d)processed is the crop 的语序混乱，不合语法；只有(b)is the crop processed 是主谓倒置语序，合乎语法，所以(b)是正确答案。

8. (a)

该句需要选同前一句的谓语动词 end(结束)含义相同的词，才能与前面句子意义相符。(b)stop(停止，阻断，阻挡)、(c)prevent(防止，阻止，阻挡)、(d)halt(使停止，停顿)这 3 个词意思相近，都不是 end 的同义词，因此都不能选。(a)conclude(结束，终止)与 end 的含义相同，所以(a)是正确答案。

9. (c)

前一句中的 six hundred years 等于 six centuries(6 个世纪)，所以只有(c)centuries 是正确答案，其他 3 个选择

(a)sentries(卫兵，岗哨)、(b)ages(年纪，时期，时代)和(d)eras(时代，阶段，年代)都与 hundred years 的含义不同。

10.(b)

动词 wait(等待)是不及物动词，它后面需要跟一个介词才能带宾语。(a)waiting 后面没有介词 for，不合乎语法；(c)waiting to 后面的介词不正确，不符合惯用法；只有(b)waiting for(等待，期待)和(d)waiting on(伺候，服侍)是正确的表达方式，waiting for 与前一句中的 expecting(等待，期待)含义相同，所以应选(b)。

11.(d)

(a)assembling it(集合，集中，聚集)、(b)picking it up(捡起它，拾起它)、(c)collecting it(收集，采集资料、邮票等)和(d)bringing it in(收庄稼等，收人)中，前 3 个选择都不用来指收庄稼，只有(d)与前一句中的 gathering this year's crop(收今年的庄稼)含义相符合，所以(d)是正确答案。

12.(d)

只有(d)in charge of(负责管理，主管)与前一句的意思相吻合，而(a)(be) charged with(指控，控告)、(b)in the charge of(在……的控制之下，受……保护)、(c)charged(使承担任务)3 个选择都不符合题义，所以只能选(d)。

Lesson 77
A successful operation
一例成功的手术

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Doctors have just operated on the mummy of an Egyptian woman who died in 800 B.C. They wanted to find out whether she died of a rare disease. After removing a section of the mummy, they sent it to a laboratory. During the operation, they unexpectedly found a small wax figure of a god. Though they were afraid the mummy would fall to pieces, it successfully survived the operation. (69 *words*)

Doctors have just operated on the mummy of an Egyptian woman who died in 800 B.C., in order to find out if she died of a rare disease. They removed a section of the mummy, which they sent to a laboratory. Inside the mummy, they unexpectedly found a small wax figure of a god. They were afraid the mummy would fall to pieces, but it survived the operation.

(69 *words*)

作文参考答案

A mummy disappeared from a museum. This was really good material for the newspaper reportings! According to some

newspaper reports, there are some strange stories about the mummy. It is believed that this mummy is that of an Egyptian woman who died in 800 B.C. In order to find out whether the woman died of a rare disease, the doctors had given an operation to the mummy. But the public became alarmed when they learned this news.

Later on, an official announcement was issued from the museum, which said that some scientists were studying the mummy. They have not yet decided how the woman died, but the mummy successfully survived the operation, and it would be back to its place soon. (124 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. What happened: *died* (1.1); *died* (1.5); *lasted* (1.6); *proved* to be (1.7); *covered* (1.8); *removed* (1.8); *sent* (1.9); *found* (1.9); *did not show* (1.9); *was* normally *placed* (1.10); *died* (1.11); *feared* (1.11); *cut* (1.12); *survived* (1.12)

What has happened: *has* just *had* (11.1-2); *have not* yet *decided* (1.10)

What has been happening: *have been trying* (1.4)

C. 1. for 2. ago 3. since
4. since 5. for 6. ago...since
7. since 8. ago 9. since
10. for

注解：

1. for 后面常跟表示一段时间的词或词组，如 for two weeks、for five years，只能用作完成时或完成进行时的时间状语。
2. since 后面要跟表示一段时间起点的词，如 since Monday、since 1993，只能用于完成时或完成进行时。
3. ago 是副词，要用在表示时间的词或词组的后面，如 five years ago、a long time ago，不能用于完成时态，只能用于过去时。

难点练习答案

1. complexion　2. leather　3. skin　4. candle
5. B.C.

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

根据课文第 4～5 行 ... doctors have been trying to find out whether the woman died of a rare disease(……医生们一直试图搞清这位妇女是否死于一种罕见的疾病)可以判断只有(a)to find out what the woman had died of 是医生给她做手术的目的，而其他 3 个选择虽然都是课文中提及的情况，但不能说明手术的目的，所以(a)是正确答案。

2. (c)

根据课文第 10～11 行 The doctors have not yet decided how the woman died(医生至今还未确定这位妇女的死因)可以推断，只有(c)haven't yet found out what they were looking for 是课文所暗示的情形，而其他 3 个选择都与课文内容不符。所以只能选(c)。

3. (a)

前一句中的 die of 是“死于”的意思，它后面跟的名词往往表示死的原因。What did the woman die of? 意为“这妇女死于什么(疾病)?”是针对死亡原因提问的。因此该句需要选一个针对原因提问的疑问词才能与前一问句意义相同。(b)Where、(c)What 和(d)When 都不是问原因的。只有(a)How是对原因提问的，所以应该选(a)。

4. (b)

前面的短语 The only way to do this... 意为“做此事的惟一办法是……”。该句需要一个能引导定语或表示所属关系的介词才能与前面的短语意思相一致。(a)in 表示地点或处所；(c)by 可以引导表示方式的短语；(d)to 可以引导动词不定式或作介词表示“向着某个方向”；只有(b)of能引导定语，最合乎题义，所以应该选(b)。

5. (c)

该句若填(a)difficult 或(d)difficult the 都不合乎语法，因为(a)前面缺少冠词，(d)冠词位置不对。(b)the difficult 和(c)a difficult 前面都有冠词。但是根据惯用法，当一个单数可数名词在句子中作表语时它前面应该用不定冠词，若有形容词修饰，应在形容词前加不定冠词，只是当该名词后有定语从句或其他限定词或短语时前面才应该用定冠词，它前面的形容词是最高级时也应该用定冠词。该句中的名词 operation 是可数名词，它后面既没有定语从句也没有其他限定成分，修饰它的形容词又不是最高级，前面不应该用定冠词，只能用不定冠词才合乎惯用法。所以(c)是最佳答案。

6. (d)

该句只有选(d)covering 意思才完整又合乎语法。covering 是现在分词可以作定语，相当于一个定语从句

which covered 或 which was covering。其他 3 个选择都不合乎语法：(a)covered 是过去分词，也可作定语，但表示被动的意义，不合乎逻辑；(b)which covering 语法错误，应该是 which was covering 才正确；(c)in covering 不能用作定语。所以(d)是正确答案。

7. (d)

前一句 They haven't deceded yet 是完成时否定句，句中的 yet 是副词，意思为"还"、"仍然"，它只能用于完成时否定句或疑问句中。而此句是一个肯定句，只是用 undecided(尚未决定的)表示否定意义的词作表语，需要选一个与前一句中的 yet 含义相同的词，才能使两个句子意思相近。(a)even 和(c)more都与 yet 意思不同。因为该句不是否定句，故也不能选(b)yet。只有(d)still (还，仍然)与 yet 意思相同，它只能用于肯定句中，因此应该选(d)。

8. (d)

(a)doctor(医生的总称)、(b)dentist(牙医)、(c)scientist (科学家)和(d)surgeon(外科医生)这 4 个词中只有(d)最合乎题义，因为只有外科医生才能做手术，所以(d)是正确答案。

9. (a)

(a)markings(痕迹，斑点，疤痕)、(b)notes(标记，记录)、(c)signs(记号，标志，征兆)和(d)messages(口信，消息)中，只有(a)可以指图画或 X 光片子上的斑点，而其他 3 个选择均无此含义，所以应该选(a)。

10. (a)

只有(a)illness(疾病)最合乎题义。(b)pain、(c)ache、(d)hurt都有"疼痛"的意思，因此都不应该选。所以只有(a)是正确答案。

11. (b)

该句需要填一个同前一句中的动词 lasted(持续)意义相同的词,才能同前一句意思相吻合。(a) went (去)、(b) went on (继续)、(c) went over (复习,察看,横穿)、(d) went off(离开)这 4 个选择中只有(b)同 lasted 的含义最接近,所以(b)是正确的答案。

12. (a)

本句是对前一句 There was a small wax figure in it 中的 wax figure(蜡制的塑像)作进一步的解释和说明。(a) a carving(雕刻品)、(b) a shape(形状,外形)、(c) a number (数,数字)、(d) a body(身体,躯体)这 4 个选择中,只有(a)与 figure 的含义最接近,也最能解释 wax figure,而其他 3 个选择都与 figure 的含义不一致,所以应该选(a)。

Lesson 78
The last one?
最后一枚吗？

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Having read an article on smoking, the writer smoked his last cigarette. He did not smoke for a week and his wife suffered because he had a bad temper and a large appetite. Meanwhile friends offered him cigarettes and were amused to see him produce a packet of sweets from his pocket. When he went to a party, he accepted a cigarette which he was offered by a friend and since then things have returned to normal.

(77 *words*)

The writer read an article on smoking and smoked his last cigarette. He did not smoke for a week and his wife suffered because of her husband's bad temper and large appetite. Whenever his friends offered him cigarettes, they were amused because he would produce a packet of sweets from his pocket. However, at a party he accepted a cigarette from a friend. Now things have returned to normal. (69 *words*)

作文参考答案

Two young boys who had never smoked before wanted to

try. One evening, after they had their supper, Father went into the living-room to watch TV, leaving a packet of cigarettes on the table. The boys took two cigarettes from the packet and went out of the house secretly. They hid in the garage, hoping to enjoy their smoking there. However, when they lit the cigarettes and began to smoke, they could not help coughing, because the smoke was too strong for them.

Their father somehow saw the smoke coming from the garage, and rushed down quickly. But when he saw the boys there, he smiled. Instead of criticizing them, he offered them cigars and asked them to have a taste. The boys accepted them. But the cigars were even stronger than the cigarettes. When they smoked, they both felt very sick and coughed badly. This was a punishment for them. (152 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

15 Gower St
Brisbane,
Queensland,
Australia.
24th April, 19 ___

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

B. 1. I'm making some coffee. Do you want some/any?

2. Exports have increased this year.

3. My dog is afraid of thunder and lightning.

4. The boy was sent to a school for the deaf.
5. Tax laws help the rich.
6. I spent the evening listening to some music.
7. Crime does not pay.
8. Would you like an apple or an orange?
9. Are you an artist or a musician?
10. Do you take sugar in your tea?

(关于 a、the、some 或 any 的用法，请参见第 6、30、54 课关键句型)

难点练习答案

1. away from

   keep away from 避开
2. off

   keep off 离开，别靠近
3. up

   keep it up 继续做下去
4. on

   keep on doing sth. 不断地做某事
5. out

   keep sb. out of 不让某人进入
6. up with

   keep up with 跟上或不落后于
7. in

   be kept in 被关到……里

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

   根据课文第 1 句 After reading an article entitled... 可以判断,只有(a)Something he had read 与课文内容相符,其他 3 个选择都与课文内容不符,所以只能选(a)。

2. (c)

   根据课文第 10~11 行,只有(c)是课文所暗示的情况,其他 3 个选择均与课文实际内容不符。所以应选(c)。

3. (b)

   这是一个一般过去时疑问句,因为前面用助动词 Did 提问,其谓语动词要用原形才符合语法。(a)lit 是 light 的一种过去式和过去分词;(c)lighted 也是 light 的过去式和过去分词;(d)lighting 是 light 的现在分词。以上 3 个选择都不是动词原形,因此都不能选。只有(b)light 是动词原形,最合乎语法,所以应该选(b)。

4. (b)

   只有(b)on 是正确的,因为该句中的谓语动词 concentrate 后面只能跟介词 on 才符合惯用法。concentrate on 的意思是"全神贯注于"、"专心于",其他 3 个介词(a)with、(c)in和(d)for 都不能同 concentrate 搭配使用。

5. (c)

   只有(c)was hungry 最符合语法和题义,而其他 3 个选择(a)had hungry、(b)had hunger 和(d)hungered 都不符合语法或惯用法,所以应该选(c)。

6. (a)

   该句需要选一个同前一句中的短语动词 kept on offering 意义相同的词组,才能使两个句子意思吻合。只有(a)continued to do this(继续做这种事)与 keep on doing

的含义相近。(b)did so、(c)kept them 和(d)held them 都与 keep on doing 的意义不同,所以只能选(a)。

7. (c)

只有(c)They were all 与前一句 Everybody ... was smoking 的意义相同,也符合语法规则。而(a)They was all、(b)They all was 和(d)All of them was 都不符合语法,因为人称代词 they 后面应该用 were 而不能用 was,所以只有(c)是正确答案。

8. (b)

只有选(b)mood 才能与前一句 He had a bad temper 的意义相吻合。in a bad mood 是惯用法,意思是"情绪或心情不好",它等于 in a bad temper。其他 3 个选择都不合乎惯用法。(a)spirit 不合乎惯用法,不应该说 in a bad spirit,而应该是 in low spirits(情绪低落)。(c)feeling 和(d)disposition(性情,气质)都不能同介词 in 连用构成固定短语。

9. (a)

只有(a)didn't try to 与前一句中的 made no efforts to 的含义相同,而其他 3 个选择(b)didn't afford to(买不起)、(c)couldn't afford to(买不起)和(d)didn't have a trial(没有试验,没做审判)都不符合题义。

10. (b)

前一句中的 produce ... from 是"从……中取出"的意思。只有选(b)out 才能同前一句含义相同,而其他 3 个选择(a)off(脱掉一个)、(c)out of 和(d)from 意思都不完整;所以只有(b)是正确的。

11. (c)

前一句中的动词 urge 是"力劝"、"怂恿"的意思,只有(c)persuade(说服,劝说)与 urge 的含义相同。而

(a)make(迫使)、(b)pursue(追赶,实行)和(d)do(做)这 3 个选择都与 urge 的词义不同,所以(c)是正确答案。

12. (a)

该句需要选一个同前一句中的 accept(接受,收受)含义相同的词。(a) take(拿,接受)、(b) agree to(同意)、(c)receive(收到,接到)、(d)undertake(从事,进行)中只有(a)与 accept 的含义最接近,所以应该选(a)。

4 句子结构答案

They made no effort to hide their amusement whenever I produced a packet of sweets from my pocket.

Lesson 79
By air
乘飞机

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The plane took off and flew low over the city. When it was slowly gaining height, it suddenly had to return to the airport. Meanwhile the passengers were told to keep calm. After they had disembarked, they learnt that there was a very important person on board. Someone had told the police that a bomb had been planted on the plane, but though it was searched, nothing was found. Five hours later, it took off again.

(76 *words*)

After having taken off, the plane flew low over the city. Although it was slowly gaining height, it had to return to the airport. During this time, the passengers were told to keep calm until they had disembarked. Later they learnt that there was a very important person on board. Because the police had been told that a bomb had been planted on the plane, it was searched. However, nothing was found, so five hours later it took off again. (80 *words*)

作文参考答案

I am used to travelling by air, because it is both comfortable and fast. But only on one occasion did I feel uncomfortable and frightened as well. After the plane took off, we were flying smoothly over the city and slowly gaining height. Just at that point, a passenger, who had never took a plane before, accidentally threw a lighted cigarette into an air vent. He thought it was an ash tray.

Soon afterwards, the plane was filled with smoke, and the passengers began to panic. As a result, the plane turned round and flew back. Meanwhile a flight attendant told us to keep calm. The plane returned to the airport at last, and we were told to get off the plane as fast as possible. Some fire engines and ambulances were waiting there. Fortunately, no one was hurt, and the fire was put out soon. Two hours later, we were able to take off again. (156 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

You will be surprised to hear that your uncle Peter has unexpectedly returned from South America. He is staying with us at present and would like to see you very much. So I hope you will come back home during his stay here, since you have not seen him for many years. (50 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. What happened: never *had* (1.4); *turned* round (1.7);

flew back (1.7); *told* (1.8); *learnt* (1.10); *was searched* (1.11); *was found* (1.12); *were* able to take off (1.12)

What was happening: *were flying* (1. 6); and slowly *gaining* (1.6); *were waiting* (1.8)

What used to/would happen: *used to travel* (1.1); *used to live* (1.2); *used to fly* (1.2); *would take* charge (1.3)

C. (sample answers)

1. *In the past* (but not now), I habitually flew there from Europe in the holidays.
2. I am accustomed to travelling by air *now* (because I have done it many times).

注解:

used to(do sth.) 过去经常发生

be used to (sth.) 习惯于,对……适应

难点练习答案

1. over

   take over 接管

2. off

   take off 脱下(衣,帽等)

3. in

   be taken in 受骗

4. up...up

   take up 开始学

5. after

   take after 长得像

6. off

   take off (飞机)起飞

7. down

take down 记下

8. off

take off 模仿

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第 6~7 行，只有(b)与课文情形相符合，而其他 3 个选择均与课文内容不符，所以只能选(b)。

2. (d)

根据课文第 11 行，只有(d)there was fear of an explosion (爆炸)是课文暗示的情况，并能说明飞机返回的原因，而其他 3 个选择虽然都是课文提及的内容，但不是飞机返回的原因。所以应该选(d)。

3. (c)

(a)use to travel 语法错误；(b)used to travel 指过去经常性的动作，而本句的时间状语是 today，表示现在，因此不能用 used to；(d)am used to travelling(习惯于旅行)可以表示现在的情况，但与前一句没有逻辑关系，不符合题义；只有(c)travel 是一般现在时，可以表示现在经常性动作，最合乎语法和题义，因此应该选(c)。

4. (c)

本句需要填一个同前一句中的 a great deal(很多)意义相同的词或词组，两个句子才能意思相同。(a)very many (非常多)只能修饰可数名词，而不能修饰动词；(b)a great number(很多)也不能修饰动词；(d)lots(很多)常跟 of 连用，修饰可数名词。这 3 个选择都不能替换前一句中的 a great deal，只有(c)a lot 与 a great deal 意思等同，并能修饰动词，因此(c)是最佳答案。

5. (a)

本句是一个疑问句，需要一个合适的表示时间的疑问词，以便使它同后面的回答 Since I was a boy(自从我幼年时)的意义相吻合。(c)For when 不合乎语法，询问时间只需用 when 就可以了；(d)How much(多少)不能针对时间提问；(a)Since when(自何时起)和(b)when(何时)都能对时间提问，但(a)比(b)问得更具体，与后面的回答意思更吻合，所以应该选(a)。

6. (d)

本句需要一个能同 the holidays(假期)搭配的介词，使句子的意思完整，(a)on 不符合惯用法，可以是 on (one's) holiday(在休假中、在度假)；(b)to 意思不通；(c)at 意思也不通；只有(d)during(在假期)最合乎语法，意思也通顺，所以应该选(d)during。

7. (b)

(a) frightening 前面没有冠词，不合乎语法；(c) the frightening 也不够正确，因为它所修饰的名词后面没有定语从句或其他限定成分，没必要用定冠词；(d) one frightening 和(b)a frightening 意义相同，也都合乎语法；但是(d)强调数量是一个而不是两个或几个，而(b)泛指"一个"，是与特指相对的。(b)比(d)更合乎惯用法，所以(b)是最佳答案。

8. (a)

只有(a)trip 才能同句中的动词 went on a 搭配构成固定短语 went on a trip(去旅行)，而其他 3 个选择(b)travel、(c)way 和(d)distance 都不能和 went on 搭配构成惯用法，所以(a)是正确答案。

9. (d)

该句需要选一个同前句中的 take charge of(照管，负责)

含义相近的形容词，才能使两个句子的意义相吻合。(a)dutiful(尽职的，尽责任的)、(b)commanding(指挥的，有控制力的)、(c)charging(充填的，充电的)、(d)responsible(负责的，对……有责任的)中，只有(d)与take charge of的含义最接近，所以应该选(d)。

10. (a)

本句需要一个与前一句中的be used to(习惯于)含义相同的形容词，才能使该句与前一句的意思相一致。(a)accustomed(习惯的，适应了的，一般作表语)、(b)habitual(习惯性的，通常的，常作定语)、(c)customary(习惯上的，合乎习俗的，惯例的)、(d)inhabited(有人居住的)中，只有(a)与be used to的含义相同，并且它后面也可以跟介词to引导的短语，所以(a)是正确答案。

11. (a)

该句需要选一个与前一句中的形容词calm(镇定的，冷静的)含义相反的形容词，才能使两句的意义相同，(a)nervous(神经紧张的，情绪不安的)、(b)angry(生气的，愤怒的)、(c)irritated(被激怒的，生气的)和(d)annoyed(使恼怒，使生气)中，只有(a)是calm的反义词，所以(a)是正确答案。

12. (c)

该句需要选一个与前一句中的were curious to find out(急于想发现)的含义相同的词组，才能使它同前一句意思相吻合。(a)were strange(陌生的，不平常的，奇怪的、古怪的)、(b)were odd(奇特的，古怪的)、(c)wanted to know(想要知道)、(d)were peculiar(奇怪的，乖僻的，特别的)中，只有(c)最接近were curious to find out的含义，而其他3个选择意思比较一致，都不符合题义，所以只能选(c)。

4 句子结构答案

Only on one occasion *have I ever felt frightened*.

Lesson 80
The Crystal Palace
水晶宫

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The Crystal Palace , which was built for the Great Exhibition of 1851, was different from other buildings because it was made of iron and glass. Goods from various parts of the world were on display as well as a great deal of machinery. So many visitors came by boat and train that it was possible to build colleges and museums from the profits. After the exhibition, the Crystal Palace was moved to South London, where it remained until it was burnt down in 1936.

(84 *words*)

The Crystal Palace was built for the Great Exhibition of 1851. Made of iron and glass, it was different from other buildings. There were not only goods from various parts of the world on display but there was a great deal of machinery as well. This attracted thousands of visitors who travelled by boat and train. Later, colleges and museums were built from the profits. The Crystal Palace was moved to South London and it remained there until 1936 when it was burnt down.

(84 *words*)

作文参考答案

Last week we went to visit a modern exhibition in the National Art Gallery. I got there by bus. The exhibition attracted large crowds, especially young people. A lot of modernist paintings were on display there. They were all painted by the famous artists of the world.

I was deeply impressed by the paintings. They were abstract and showed a striking contrast of the colours. Though much more difficult to understand than the traditional paintings, they were more thought-provoking. I walked round the exhibition hall and appreciated every painting. Of all the exhibits on the show I liked the ones by Dali, Picasso and Manet best. I stayed in the Art Gallery the whole day. Though I was tired at the end of the day, I still hated to leave, for I was so fascinated by these modern paintings. (139 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

I have some wonderful news for you. I have at last managed to get two tickets for the Cup Final. It must be a decisive and exciting match. And I know you have been looking forward to it in the last two months. So I'd like to invite you to the match with me this weekend. I am sure you will enjoy it... (62 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *the most extraordinary building* of the nineteenth century

(1.1); *one of the biggest buildings* of all time (11.4-5), *The most wonderful piece* of machinery on show (11.8-9); travelling was *not as easy as* it is today (1.9); *one of the most famous buildings* in the world (1.13)

注解:

(关于形容词和副词比较级和最高级,请参见第 8、32、56 课关键句型练习详解)

难点练习答案

1. on duty 在值班
2. On second thoughts 经过重新考虑
3. on purpose 故意,有意的
4. on foot 步行
5. on the whole 总起来说
6. on any account 无论如何,不管怎么说
7. On the average 平均

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

根据课文第 3~4 行,只有(c)是课文所暗示的并能说明水晶宫与其他建筑不同的原因,而其他 3 个选择虽然都与课文内容相符,但都不是水晶宫与其他建筑不同的原因,所以只有(c)是正确答案。

2. (b)

根据课文第 10~11 行 ... and the profits from the exhibition were used to build museums and colleges 暗示出博览会是非常成功的,所以只有(b)highly successful 是正确的,与课文所暗示的情况相符。而其他 3 个选择(a)a

failure(失败)、(c)not very profitable(不太获利的)和(d)spoilt by fire(被烧毁)都与课文内容不符。

3. (d)

只有选(d)In 才合乎语法,因为英语中"在某年"需要用介词 in,而其他 3 个选择(a)Of、(b)On 和(c)At 都不能用在年代前面,所以(d)是正确答案。

4. (a)

本句需要选一个同前一句中的 A great many(大量的,很多)含义最接近的词组,才能与前一句意思相近。(a)quite a few(相当多,不少)只能修饰可数名词;(b)quite a little(不少,相当多)修饰不可数名词;(c)not too many(不太多)与 a great many 意义相反;(d)very much(非常,很)常作副词,修饰动词;只有(a)与 great many 意义最接近,所以应该选(a)。

5. (d)

该句是用 It 作形式主语,后面是动词 be 加形容词,需要选一个合适的短语作真正的主语,才能使此句意思完整。按照语法规则,在这类句子中只有 to + 动词不定式或动词 + -ing 形式才能作真正主语。所以(a)for travelling、(b)in travelling 和(c)in order to travel 都不符合语法,只有(d)to travel 合乎语法,所以应该选(d)。

6. (c)

前面的短语 On arriving in England 是表示时间的,意思是"一到英国",本句的前面需要一个能引导时间从句的连词,才能与前面的短语含义相同,(a)On、(b)Why 和(d)Where都不能引导时间从句,只有(c)When 可以引导时间从句,意为"当……的时候",所以只能选(c)。

7. (a)

只有(a)of 最合乎语法,一般形容词的最高级后面往往需

要介词 of 或 in 引导的短语作限定语。(b)from、(c)by 和 (d)than 这 3 个选择都不合乎语法，所以(a)是正确答案。

8. (d)

该句需要一个同前一句中的形容词 extraordinary(非凡的，特别的)含义相同的形容词，才能使两个句子意思相吻合，(a)extreme(极度的，极端的)、(b)funy(可笑的，好玩)和(c)big(大的)这 3 个选择都与 extraordinary 的含义不同，只有 (d)exceptional (异常的，罕见的) 与 extraordinary 的含义最接近，所以应选(d)。

9. (c)

本句需要选一个与前一句中的形容词 various(不同的，各种各样的)含义相同的形容词，才能和前一句的意思相吻合。(a)mixed(混合的)、(b)assorted(不同种类的，分类的)、(d)mixed up(混乱的，混淆的)这 3 个选择都与 various 的含义不同，只有(c)different(不同的，各种各样的)与 various 的意义相同，所以应该选(c)。

10. (c)

前一句 There was a great deal of machinery 意为"有很多机器"，machinery 虽然是单数形式，但却有复数含义，表示(所有)机器的总称。(a)was one big machines、(b)was one big engine、(d)was one powerful machine 这 3 个选择都只说出一台机，与前一句含义不符。只有 (c) were many machines 与前一句的意思相同，所以(c)是最佳答案。

11. (d)

(a)all 不合乎语法，因为 all 是代词，它前面不应该用定冠词；(b)whole(全部，全体，总和)虽然可以作名词，但它很少单独作表语；(c)result(结果)词义不符合这一句。只有选(d)total(总数，总额)，才与前一句意义相同。

12．(b)

(a) benifits（利益，好处）、(b) earnings（赢利，利润）、(c)winnings(获胜，胜利)、(d) excesses（超过，超过量，余额）中，只有(b)同前一句中的 profits 含义相同，所以应该选(d)。

4 句子结构答案

The Crystal Palace was different from all other buildings in the world, for it was made of iron and glass.

Lesson 81
Escape
脱逃

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

After having killed the guard, the prisoner of war dragged him into the bushes and changed into his clothes. Then he shouldered the rifle and marched up and down in front of the camp. A short time afterwards, four officers drove by in a car while he stood to attention and saluted. Then the driver came towards him. After he had knocked the driver out, the prisoner jumped into the car and drove away. (74 *words*)

As soon as he had killed the guard and dragged him into the bushes, the prisoner of war changed into his clothes. With a rifle over his shoulder, he was marching up and down in front of the camp when four officers drove up in a car. He stood to attention and saluted. When the driver came towards him, the prisoner knocked him out. Then, jumping into the car, he drove away. (72 *words*)

作文参考答案

It was a dark night, a prisoner of war who had intended to escape killed the guard and changed into his uniform. Then he

quickly dragged the dead body into the bushes. Now, dressed as a guard, he walked boldly into the camp. When the other guards discovered that a prisoner had escaped, he was still in the camp. He ran out quickly and took part in the search for the 'missing' prisoner.

He went out in a lorry with the other guards. They drove into the countryside and stopped at the edge of a forest. As they got off and went into the forest, he calmly went with them at first. After a while, they went in different directions to search for the prisoner. But he went farther and farther away from the others in the forest. Finally he successfully escaped. (140 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

1. I was very pleased to learn that you are well.
2. I am sorry to hear that you have not been well recently.
3. It was very kind of you to reply so quickly.
4. I have not heard from you for two months now.
5. Forgive me for not having written sooner.

2 语法、词汇练习

难点练习答案

1. saluted 2. clear 3. cloth 4. clothes
5. greeted

注解:

1. salute 向……致意或敬礼、欢迎
   greet 问候,打招呼,迎接,向……致意

salute 比 greet 的动作更正式

2. clear *adj*. 清澈的、清楚的、明显的、光秃的

   clean *adj*. 干净的、整洁的

3. cloth 布,织物,台布(可以有复数形式 cloths)

   clothing 衣服、衣着、衣物总称

   clothes (复)衣服、衣着

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

   根据课文第 5～7 行 He could hear shouting in the camp itself... they had just discovered that a prisoner had escaped,可以判断只有(d)与课文内容相符,其他 3 个选择都与课文内容不符,所以(d)是正确答案。

2. (a)

   根据课文第 9 行 The officers got out and the prisoner stood to attention and saluted as they passed(军官们一定是把俘虏当成了看守或卫兵),可以判断只有(a)a guard(卫兵)是正确的,而其他 3 个选择(b)a driver、(c)a prisoner 和(d)an officer 都不是课文所暗示的情形,所以应该选(a)。

3. (a)

   该句需要一个同前一句中以 when 引导的时间从句含义相同的短语,才能使其意思完整。(b)when killing 和(c)when having killed 都不合乎语法,因为 when 是连词,而不是介词,它后面一般要跟从句,而不能跟名词性短语;(a)On having killed(当杀死……的时候)和(d)On having been killed(当……被杀后)要注意:以介词 on 引导的动名词短语可以表示时间,可以代替以 when 引导的

时间从句，但是(d)表示被动的意义，与该短语的逻辑主语 he 不相符，只有(a)表示主动的意义与前一句的时间从句意思相同，所以(a)是正确答案。

4. (d)

本句的意思是“(汽车里)有几个军官”。英语里表示“某处有什么”应该用 there is 或 there are。(a)They had 和(b)There had 都不合乎题义和语法规则；(c)There was 也不合乎语法，因为句子的主语是复数形式(officers)，应该用 there were 才正确；因此(d)There were 是最佳选择。

5. (b)

该句需要一个与前句中的 as they passed(当他们经过时)含义相同的时间从句,,才能使两个句子意思吻合。(c)though they were passing 和(d)because they had passed 这两个选择都不是时间状语从句，因此都不能选；(a)while they had passed 有语法错误，while 引导的时间从句要用进行时态；只有(b)while they were passing 与 as they passed 的含义相同，因此(b)是正确答案。

6. (b)

本句需要选出与前一句中的 rather elderly(相当年长的，上了年纪的)含义相同的词组，才能使两个句子意义相同。(a)very old(非常老，很老)、(b)quite old(相当老)、(c)too old(太老)、(d)old enough(足够老)中，只有(b)与 rather elderly 意思最接近，所以(b)是最佳答案。

7. (d)

本句是对前一句 There was nothing else he could do(他没有别的事可做了)的进一步解释和说明，只有选(d)all(没有别的了)，才能使两个句子含义相吻合。而其他 3 个选择(a)the whole(整体)、(b)complete(完全的，完整的)和(c)every(每个的，所有的)都不合乎惯用法。That's all

是固定短语，所以只能选(d)。

8. (c)

(a)carried him(搬运他，运送他)、(b)lifted him(提起他，抬起他)、(c)pulled him along the ground(在地上拖着他)、(d)took him(抓住他)这 4 个选择中只有(c)与前一句中的 dragged him into(把他拖进了)的意义相同，所以应该选(c)。

9. (b)

只有选(b)wore(他穿着它们)才与前一句 He changed into the dead man's clothes(他换上了死人的衣服)的含义相符。(a)changed(替换，改变)不合乎题义；(c)dressed(给……穿衣)后面的宾语应该是人而不是衣服，因此选(c)也不正确；(d)put 词义不正确，穿上衣服应该是 put on。所以只有(b)是正确答案。

10. (d)

本句需要一个同前一句中的副词 boldly(大胆地，勇敢地)意义相同的形容词，才能使这两个句子含义相同。(a)timid(胆小的)、(b)bald(光秃的)、(c)strong(强壮的，坚定的)、(d)brave(勇敢的，无畏的)中，只有(d)与 boldly 的意义相同，所以应该选(d)。

11. (b)

本句需要一个与前一句中的 blazing(发光的，闪耀的)含义相近的词，才能同前一句意思相吻合。(a)gleaming(隐约闪光的，发微光的)、(b)shining(发光的，光亮的)、(c)reflecting(反射光的，反射的)、(d)being burnt(被燃烧的，被烧焦的)4 个词中只有(b)与 blazing 的含义最接近，所以(b)是最佳答案。

12. (d)

(a)beat him(连续地打他，狠揍他)；(b)blew him over 不

是一个词组；(c)knocked him 意思不够完整，应该是 knock sb. down 或 knock sb. over；(d)struck him(攻击他，击中他)；只有(d)与前一句的 knocked him down with a sharp blow(一拳把他打倒在地)含义最接近，所以最佳答案是(d)。

4 句子结构答案

The officers got out and the prisoner stood to attention and saluted as they passed.

Lesson 82
Monster or fish?
是妖还是鱼?

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

A strange fish was caught near Madagascar after having pulled a small fishing boat miles out to sea. Making every effort not to damage the fish, the fisherman brought it to shore. The fish, which was over thirteen feet long, with a head like a horse, was sent to a museum. It is being examined by a scientist, who said that it was an oarfish and that such creatures live at a depth of six hundred feet. (77 *words*)

A strange fish was caught near Madagascar. Though it pulled a small fishing boat miles out to sea, the fisherman made every effort not to damage it. On being brought to shore, the fish was found to be over thirteen feet long and to have a head like a horse. Now that it has been sent to a museum, it is being examined by a scientist. It is called an oarfish and lives at a depth of six hundred feet. (80 *words*)

作文参考答案

A man in a bar once told the others how he caught a big fish in rough seas. Some time ago, he set out on his fishing

boat. It was an adventurous voyage. As it was windy, he sailed with great difficulty. Suddenly he saw an unusual creature in front of him. It was the biggest fish he had ever seen at sea. Realizing that this was no ordinary fish, he made every effort to pull it back to shore, meanwhile not to damage it in any way. But instead of pulling it back, he and his boat was carried miles out to the sea.

After struggling with the fish for several hours, he eventually pulled it up his boat. It was over twelve feet long, with a head like a horse, big protruding eyes, shining silver and black skin, and a yellow tail. But just as he tried to tie it up, it suddenly jumped up, slipped out of his boat and got away at last. (144 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

I am very sorry to hear that you have not been well recently. I am worried about your health, and I want to know how you are now. I suggest you go to see the doctor regularly, and take some medicine every day. But you also need some outdoor exercises. I hope you feel better soon. (56 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

1. wash up　2. laugh at　3. washed　4. laughed
5. wash

注解：

1. laugh 笑，大笑

   laught at 嘲笑，讥笑

2. wash 洗，冲洗

   wash up（饭后）洗餐具

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

   根据课文第 3～4 行 ... these 'monsters' ... are simply strange fish，可以推测只有(a)are probably unusual fish（或许是不寻常的鱼）与课文内容相符，而其 3 个选择都与课文描述的情形不符，所以(a)是最正确答案。

2. (b)

   根据课文第 6 行 ... a peculiar fish was caught near Madagascar（在马达加斯加附近的海里捕到了一条奇怪的鱼）可以判断，只有(b)an unusual fish 与课文的内容一致，而其他 3 个选择均与课文内容不符。所以只有(b)是正确答案。

3. (a)

   该句中的谓语动词 claim（声称）是及物动词，它后面可以跟名词或以 that 引导的从句，也可以跟 to 加动词不定式作宾语。只有(a)that they have seen 是个从句，可以作 claim 的宾语。而其他 3 个选择都不正确。(b)have seen 既不是从句，又不是不定式，因为前面没有 to，因此不能用在 claim 后面；(c)to be seen 虽然是不定式，但不定式的被动式不合乎这个句子的要求；(d)to being seen 不符合语法，所以应选(a)。

4. (d)

本句中的关系从句应该是被动语态才合乎语法，才能使其意思完整。(a) which 和 (b) which have 不合乎语法；(c) which have being 也不合乎语法。只有选 (d) which have been 能构成被动语态关系从句，句子意思完整，语法正确，所以应该选(d)。

5. (c)

(a)realising 和 (b)having realised 都不合乎语法，因为它们都不能直接跟在 when 后面，when 是连词，它后面应该跟从句。(c)he realised 和(d)he has realized 都可以用在 when 后面作时间从句，但(d)是现在完成式，与主句的谓语动词时态不一致，主句的动词是一般过去时，(c)是一般过去时，与主句时态一致，所以(c)是正确答案。

6. (c)

(a)Been 意思讲不通，不合乎语法，因为它不能引导时间从句；(b)When being 也不合乎语法，when 后面应该跟从句；(d)When it was being 是时间从句，但它是过去进行式的被动式，与句中的副词 eventually(终于)不协调一致，eventually 往往强调做完的动作，不应该用进行时态。只有(c)On being 可以作时间状语，意为“当……时”，最合乎题义，所以应该选(c)。

7. (d)

本句需要一个所有格形容词作定语，句子意思才完整。(a)It、(b)It's(It is)、(c)Its' 都不是所有格表达方式，只有(d)Its(它的)是所有格形容词，最合乎语法，所以应该选(d)。

8. (a)

该句需要选一个与前一句中的动词 claim(声称，宣称)的含义相同的动词，才能使两个句子意义相同。(a) state

(陈述，声明)、(b)own(拥有，承认)、(c)owe(欠，把……归功于)和(d)persist(坚持，主张，持续)这 4 个词中只有(a)与 claim 的含义最接近，所以(a)是正确答案。

9．(a)

只有(a)haven't taken them seriously(没有认真对待他们)才与前一句的时态和含义相符合。(b)enjoyed them(欣赏或喜爱他们)不合乎题义；(c)teased them(嘲弄，戏弄他们)虽然与前一句中的 have laughed at these stories(对这些故事付诸一笑)的意思相近，但时态不一致；(d)mocked them 不是正确表达方式，应该是 mocked at...。

10．(c)

本句需要一个与前一句中的(be) sighted(被看到的)含义相同的词，才能使其与前一句意义相同。(a)viewed(仔细观察到的或看到的)、(b)glanced at(匆匆瞥见的)、(c)seen(看见的)、(d)caught(抓住，赶上)中，只有(c)与 sighted 的含义相同，所以(c)是最正确答案。

11．(b)

(a)dynamic(动力的，力学的，强有力的)、(b)strong(强壮的，有力气的，强大的)、(c)forceful(坚强的，有说服力的)、(d)wilful(故意的，任性的)中，只有(b)与前一句中的 powerful(强大的，强有力的)含义最接近，所以(b)是最佳选择。

12．(d)

(a)never(从来没有，永不)、(b)unusually(异常地，奇怪地，罕见地)、(c)always(一直，总是)和(d)seldom(不常，极少地)中，只有(d)与前一句中的 rarely(稀有地，不常发生地)意思相同，它们可以互换，所以(d)是正确答案。

4 句子结构答案

The fish, which has since been sent to a museum where it is being examined by a scientist, is called an oarfish.

Lesson 83
After the elections
大选之后

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

After having been defeated in the recent elections, the former Prime Minister, Mr. Wentworth Lane, retired abroad. My friend Patrick, who has always been a fanatical opponent of Mr. Lane's Radical Progressive Party, went to his house three times and asked the policeman on duty whether it was Mr. Lane's house. When he asked for the third time, the angry policeman told him again of Mr. Lane's defeat and retirement. Patrick said that it was something he loved to hear.

(80 *words*)

Since being defeated in the recent elections, the former Prime Minister, Mr. Wentworth Lane, has retired abroad. As my friend Patrick has always been a fanatical opponent of Mr. Lane's Radical Progressive Party, he went to his house three times. Each time he asked the same policeman if it was Mr. Lane's house. The third time he was told again by the angry policeman of Mr. Lane's defeat and retirement, but Patrick said it was something he loved to hear. (80 *words*)

作文参考答案

The politician was giving a pre-election speech, in order to win the election. But he was so self-confident and ambitious that he gave big promises: he would provide more houses for the workers, set up some new schools for the poor children, and adopt better economic and foreign policies.

Then the audience began to ask him questions. He answered them one by one patiently at first. But when the members of the audience asked him some rude questions, he lost his temper, and said that the audience did not deserve more houses, high wages, etc. and he walked off angrily. As a result, the politician was defeated in the election.

(110 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

I have heard that you lost your new car. It's really a great loss for you. You must feel sad and frustrated, for without a car, you have to go to work by bus. I am very sorry for all the trouble this has caused you. And I wish you good luck in getting it back with the help of the police. (61 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

1. He refused to help us and I *lost my temper with him*.
2. They were very rude but I managed to *keep my temper*.
3. He isn't usually *in* such *a good temper* on a Monday morning!

4. Don't ask him for a rise now. He's *in a very bad temper* today.

5. She's just won a prize in the lottery, so she's *in a very good mood*.

6. He's just lost a lot of money, so he's *in a very bad mood*.

7. Let's go out. I'm *in the mood for* a celebration!

注解：

temper和 mood 都有"心情"、"性情"、"情绪"的意思，但temper还有"脾气"的意思。这两个词构成的短语含义有所不同：

lose one's temper 发脾气，生气

keep one's temper 捺住性子，不使脾气发作

in a good temper 脾气好，心情好

in a bad temper 性子不好、生气、脾气坏

in a good mood 心境好

in a bad mood 心境不好(但未必生气)

in no mood for sth. /to do sth. 不想或无意做某事

in the/a mood for sth. /to do sth. 有兴致或想做某事

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文的内容可以推测(b)是正确的，课文暗示出如果温特沃兹·莱恩先生在最近的大选中获胜，他还会当首相的，但事实上他没有获胜。只有(b)与这一暗示相符，而其他 3 个选择都与课文的内容不符。

2. (a)

根据课文最后一行 but I love to hear it，可以判断(a)是课文所暗示的情形，其他 3 个选择都与课文含义不符。

3. (c)

本句的前半部分用的是现在完成时 He has always been a fanantical opponent(他一直是强烈的反对者),后半部分只有用一般现在时才能与前面的时态协调,并合乎逻辑。应该选(c)。其他3个选择都不正确:(a)has been 是现在完成时,与前面时态重复,意思不通;(b)was 是过去时不合乎逻辑;(d)has 不合乎题义,此外需要的是动词 be,而不是 have。所以(c)是最佳答案。

4. (c)

只有选(c)to 才符合惯用法,因为 be opposed 后面需要同介词 to 搭配才能构成固定短语,be opposed to 意为"反对",其他3个选择(a)against、(b)for 和(d)from 都不能同 opposed 连用,所以应该选(c)。

5. (a)

该句需要选一个与前一句中的连词 if(是否)意义相同的词,才能使两个句子意思相同。只有(a)whether(是否)与 if 意义相同,其他3个选择(b)that、(c)unless(如果不除非)和(d)providing that(以……为条件,假如)都与 if 的含义不同,所以(a)是正确答案。

6. (b)

只有选(b)of 才符合惯用法,因为句中的 suspicious 后面只能跟介词 of 或 about 构成固定短语,be suspicious of/about 意为"对……感到怀疑",其他3个选择(a)to、(c)for和(d)from 都不能同 suspicious 连用,所以(b)是正确答案。

7. (c)

本句的时间状语是 for some time(一段时间)表示一段时间的状语应该同完成时态连用才合乎逻辑;(a)has gone 是完成时,但它表示的是瞬间完成的动作,不应该同表示

一段时间的短语连用；(b)went 和(d)did go 都不是完成时；只有(c)has been 是完成时，可以同表示一段时间的短语连用，表示某种状态持续的时间，所以应该选(c)。

8. (b)

本句需要一个同前一句中的形容词 former(先前的、过去的)含义相同的词，才能使两个句子意思相吻合。(a)first(第一的)、(b)previous(先的，以前的)、(c)latter(最近的)、(d)before(以前，在……之前)中，只有(b)与 former 的意义和词性相同，所以应该选(b)。

9. (c)

本句需要一个同前一句中的 defeated(被击败)含义相同的词，以使两个句子意义相吻合。(a)conquered(被征服的)、(b)won(被赢得的，胜利的)、(c)beaten(被击败的)和(d)destroyed(被毁坏的)中，只有(c)与 defeated 的意义相同，所以(c)是正确答案。

10. (d)

只有选(d)against，才能使此句与前一句 Patrick has always been a fanatical opponent(帕特里克一直是强烈的反对者)的含义协调一致。而若选(a)opposite(对面)与前一句意义不符；(b)anti 一般不能单独使用，它常作前缀表示"反对"、"防"、"抗"等，在口语中可以作名词或形容词，意为"持反对态度的人"、"反对的"，也不适合这个句子；(c)at 意思讲不通。所以(d)是最佳答案。

11. (a)

本句需要选一个同前一句中的 lost his temper(生气，发脾气)含义相同的词组，才能与前一句含义吻合。(a)got angry(生气)、(b)was in a bad mood(心境不好)、(c)lost his nerve(畏缩、害怕)和(d)was in a bad humour(情绪不好、不高兴)中，只有(a)与 lost his temper 的意义最接近，

所以(a)是最佳答案。

12. (b)

本句需要选一个与前一句中的 election(选举)意义相关的词,才能使其意思与前一句相符合。(a)marks(分数、记号)、(b)votes(投票,选票)、(c) points(点,得分)、(d)grades(等级,成绩,分数)中,只有(b)的词义与 election 有关,而其他 3 个选择意义相同,一般都不用来指选举的得票数,所以(b)是最佳答案。

4 句子结构答案

The same policeman *was just walking slowly past the entrance, when Patrick asked the same question.*

Lesson 84
On strike
罢工

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The busmen's strike, which begins on Tuesday, may last a week. Because of this, car owners have offered to give rides to people going to work. University students, too, have volunteered to drive buses but they will have to pass a special test. Though it will be difficult to get to work, the public is grateful to the students. Only one or two people have objected that the students will drive too fast. (73 *words*)

Because of the busmen's strike, which begins on Tuesday and may last a week, car owners have offered to give rides to people going to work. University students who have volunteered to drive buses will have to pass a special test. Despite the fact that it will be difficult to get to work, the public is grateful to the students, except for one or two people who have objected that they will drive too fast. (75 *words*)

作文参考答案

Busmen were not satisfied with their low pay and poor working conditions, so they went on strike. The strike began

last Tuesday. No one knew how long it would last. This caused great trouble to those who have to go to work by bus everyday. A number of university students volunteered to drive buses, and they even offered 'free rides' to people on their way to school while the strike lasted. This would relieve pressure on the trains to some extent. But the students drove badly, as they were not expert drivers. As a result, the buses were seldom on time, and they were often crowded. The public began to complain, but the busmen were pleased.

Then the students threatened to go on strike, and they did so. This angered the busmen as well as the government. Finally, general agreement was reached and the busmen returned to work. (149 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

1. I am looking forward to seeing you next week.
2. I am very sorry for any inconvenience I have caused you.
3. I hope you will accept my apologies.
4. I wish you every success in your new job.
5. Please give my regards to your parents.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. What will happen: *will last* (1.2); *will continue* until... *is reached* (11.3-4); *will last* (1.5); *are going to offer* (1.6); *will relieve* (1.7); *will have to pass* (1.10); *are going to take* (1.10); *are going to find* (11.10-11); *will*

drive(1.12)

难点练习答案

1. He thought it safe to cross the road.
2. He finds it unnecessary to practise for long.
3. You'll find it hard to find a job.
4. She thinks it important to speak clearly.
5. I thought it unwise for him to wait so long.
6. I considered it a good thing that she gave up smoking.

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

   根据课文第 3～4 行可以判断(c)与课文内容相符,而其他 3 个选择都与课文情形不符合。所以只能选(c)。

2. (c)

   根据课文第 6～7 行,可以判断出(c)The train will be crowded(火车会变得拥挤)会是罢工所带来的后果,而其他 3 个选择都与课文内容不符,不能说明罢工所造成的结果,所以只能选(c)。

3. (a)

   该句需要选一个同前一句中的短语动词 is due to begin(定于……开始)含义相同的短语,才能同前一句意义相吻合。只有(a)is going to begin(将要开始)与 is due to begin 的含义相同,它们都表示将要发生的情况,而(b)began是过去时;(c)has begun 是现在完成时;(d)will have begun 是将来完成时,强调将来某一时间完成的动作,同 is due to begin 的含义有所不同。所以(a)是正确答案。

4. (b)

本句是以 How 引导的疑问句，因此需要用疑问句语序即主谓倒置语序。只有(b)是疑问句语序，而其他 3 个选择(a)long it will last、(c)it will last 和(d)it lasts 都是陈述句语序，所以(b)是正确答案。

5. (d)

只有选(d)most 最合乎语法和惯用法。(a)most of 后面的名词前应该有定冠词 the 才合乎惯用法，如 most of the students；(b)the most of 前面不应该有定冠词，而后面又缺少定冠词；(c)the more 修饰名词时前面没必要加定冠词。

6. (c)

(a)to drive 和(b)drive 都不合乎语法，因为它们是动词，都不能用在 Before 的后面；Before 是介词也可以作连词，它后面可以跟名词或从句。(d)they will drive 可以放在 Before 后面作时间从句，但它的时态不正确，主句已经是一般将来时了，从句就不能再是一般将来时，而应该是一般现在时才对，尽管它表示的是将要发生的情况。只有(c)driving 是动名词，可以用在 Before 后面，并且符合题义，所以(c)是正确答案。

7. (c)

该句中的动词 object(反对)后面只能跟介词 to，才合乎语法，而(a)at、(b)for 和(d)against 都不能和 object 连用，因此只有(c)to 是正确答案。

8. (c)

只有选(c)won't be working(因此他们将不工作)才与前一句 They will go on strike(他们将要罢工)的含义相符合，因为 go on strike 就等于 do not work。(a) will be fighting(将战斗/打仗)、(b) will be arguing(将辩论或争

论)、(d)won't be talking(将不讲话)中,这 3 个选择都不合乎题义。所以只能选(c)。

9. (d)

该句需要选一个同前一句中的动词 last(持续)含义相同的词,才能使两个句子意义相同。(a)keep(保持,保存,保留)、(b)hold(握住,使保持某种状态)、(c)carry(拿着,运送,负担)和(d)continue(继续,持续)中,只有(d)与 last 的含义相同,所以(d)是正确答案。

10. (a)

只有选(a)more(多于一星期)才能同前一句的短语 at least a week(至少一星期)的含义相近。而其他 3 个选择(b)less、(c)much less 和(d)a good deal less 都与 at least a week 含义相反,所以应该选(a)。

11. (c)

本句需要一个同前一句中的动词 volunteer(自愿)含义相同的形容词,才能使两个句子意思相吻合。(a)eager(热切的,渴望的)、(b)anxious(忧虑的,焦急的)、(c)willing(情愿的)、(d)impatient(不耐烦的,急燥的)中,只有(c)同 volunteer 的含义相同,所以应该选(c)。

12. (d)

本句需要选一个同前一句中的动词词组 expressed its gratitude(表达感激之情)含义相同的形容词,才能与前一句意义相符合。(a)annoyed(感到烦恼的,不愉快的)、(b)thankless(不感激的,负义的)、(c)surprised(感到惊奇的,意外的)和(d)thankful(感谢的,感激的)中,只有(d)与 expresse its gratitude 含义相同,所以(d)是正确答案。

4 句子结构答案

University students have volunteered to drive buses while *the strike lasts*.

Lesson 85
Never too old to learn
活到老学到老

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Now that my former headmaster, Mr. Page, is retiring, pupils of the school will be sending him a gift and an album with the signatures of all those who have contributed. Many former pupils will be attending a farewell dinner in his honour. After having completed forty years as a teacher, Mr. Page will devote himself to gardening, which will be a new hobby for him, but one is never too old to learn. (74 *words*)

After twenty-eight years as headmaster, Mr. Page is retiring. Pupils of the school will not only be sending him a gift, but also an album with their signatures. Many former pupils will be attending a farewell dinner in honour of a man who has completed forty years as a teacher. Now he will devote himself to gardening. Though it will be a new hobby for him, this does not matter because one is never too old to learn.

(78 *words*)

作文参考答案

My former headmaster was retired last month. Pupils of

the school, old and new, all attended the farewell party in his honour. At the party, he gave a speech in which he thanked all the pupils. He remembered his pupils' past and talked about their present. Many of them, now grown-ups, were successful in their careers. He especially enjoyed recalling some humorous incidents he had experienced with his pupils.

He also thought of his own future. He would always cherish the memories of his good old days with his pupils. He said old pupils were welcome to come and visit him. After he retired, he would devote himself to gardening. For him, this would be an entirely new hobby. Perhaps it would take him forty years to put his garden in order, but it would not matter, as he had often said: 'One is never too old to learn.'

(149 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

Love; Yours; Yours sincerely

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

1. This car is too expensive to buy. This car is too expensive for me to buy.
2. This car is cheap enough to buy. This car is cheap enough for me to buy.
3. The tea is too hot to drink. The tea is too hot for me to drink.
4. This piece of music is too difficult to play. This piece of

music is too difficult for me to play.

5. This piece is easy enough to play. This piece is easy enough for me to play.

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

   根据课文第4～6行，只有(d)与课文的实际内容相符，其他3个选择虽然都是课文涉及的内容，但不符合题义。因为它们都不是在签名簿上签名的人。

2. (d)

   根据课文第11～12行 one is never too old to learn(人要活到老学到老)，可以判断只有(d)与这一名言的含义相符，而其他3个选择都与它含义相反，所以应该选(d)。

3. (b)

   只有选(b)won't，这个句子才合乎语法，因为主语是He，它后面应该用 won't。而(a)willn't 是错误表达方式；(c)shall not 和(d)shan't 意思相同，但它们只能用于第1人称 I 和 We，不能用于第3人称单数；所以(b)是正确答案。

4. (a)

   前一句 We went so unwillingly to school 中的 so 是副词，意思是"如此地"，修饰副词和形容词，表示"程度"。而后面的句子的表语是 unwilling pupils，前面就不能用 so 修饰了，只能用 such 才合乎语法。such(如此的)是形容词，只能修饰名词，后面常跟形容词加名词，所以应该选(a)such，以便前后两句意义相吻合。而(b)so 不合乎语法；(c)so much 只能修饰不可数名词；(d)such a 只能修饰单数可数名词。这3个选择都不正确。

5. (b)

在星期几前应该用介词 on 才合乎语法，(a)in、(c)the 和(d)at 都不能用在 Thursday 前，只有(b)on 能用在 Thursday 前，所以应该选(b)。

6. (a)

本句是以 How long 引导的疑问句，应该用主谓倒置的疑问句语序，才合乎语法。(b)he will have been 是陈述句语序；(c)will have he beem 语序不正确；(d)will have been he 语序也不正确；只有(a)will he have been 是正确的疑问句语序，所以(a)是正确答案。

7. (b)

前一句 One is never too old to learn 中的 One 是泛指代词，意思是"任何人"、"某一人"，本句需要选一个同 One 意义相同的人称代词，才能与前一句意思相符。(a)We 和(c)They 都不能泛指"任何人"；(d)Everyone(每个人)可以泛指"每个人"、"人人"，但它后面应该用动词第 3 人称单数形式，而本句的动词是 are，不能用于 Everyone；只有(b)you(你，你们)可以泛指"一个人"、"任何人"，同 One 的意义相同，所以应该选(b)。

8. (d)

本句需要选一个同前一句中的动词 informed(通知，向……报告)相应的名词形式，才能使两个句子含义相吻合。(a) inform 是动词；(b) informs 不是名词；(c)informations是名词，但不合乎语法，因为 information 是不可数名词，不能有用复数形式；只有(d)information 是 inform 的名词形式，所以应该选(d)。

9. (b)

只有选(b)signatures(签上自己的名字)这个句子意思才讲得通。(a) signs(记号，标记)、(c) signals(信号)、

(d)marks(痕迹,记号)这 3 个选择都不符合题义。

10. (b)

本句是对前一句 He gave us encouragement(他给予我们鼓励)的进一步解释或说明,只有选(b)helpful(帮助的,助人的)才合乎逻辑。而(a)courageours(勇敢的,无畏的)、(c)helpless(无助的,不能自立的)、(d)thankful(感谢的,感激的)都不能进一步解释前一句的含义,因此都不合乎逻辑。所以(b)是正确答案。

11. (d)

本句中的 farewell dinner 是"告别宴会"的意思,参加告别宴会的目的就是向某人告别,应该选(d)goodbye 最合乎情理。而(a)hello(表示问候)、(b)something(某事)、(c)our good wishes(我们美好的愿望)这 3 个选择都与"告别宴会"的宗旨不相符,所以(d)是最佳答案。

12. (c)

本句需要一个与前句中的 entirely(完全地)含义相同的副词,才能与前一句意义相符合。(a)eventually(终于,最终)、(b)finally(最后,最终)、(c)completely(完全地,全部地)和(d)fully(充分地,足足)中,只有(c)与 entirely 的含义相同,所以应该选(c)。

4 句子结构答案

All those *who have contributed towards the gift will sign their names in a large album which will be sent to the Headmaster's home.*

Lesson 86
Out of control
失控

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The moment the speedboat struck the buoy, both men were thrown into the water. As it moved off very quickly across the water, the men began to swim towards the shore. Turning in a circle, the speedboat came straight towards them. After it had just missed them, they swam until they were out of danger. When the boat returned it had lost speed. Soon all the petrol was used up and it floated across the water. (76 *words*)

Because the speedboat had struck a buoy, both men were thrown into the water. It moved off very quickly and, while the men were swimming towards the shore, it turned in a circle, came straight towards them and only just missed them. They had no sooner swum out of danger than the boat returned. This time, however, it had lost speed because nearly all the petrol had been used up and it floated across the water. (76 *words*)

作文参考答案

A speedboat was moving smoothly. But it sped up suddenly and got out of control in the river. Fortunately, there

was no one in it except the driver himself. He tried to keep the speedboat in control, but it continued to move very quickly across the water. It was moving towards a small fishing boat with two fishermen on it. The fishermen were greatly frightened and tried to row away.

When the fishermen noticed with dismay that the speedboat came nearer and nearer, they dived into the sea. It now came straight towards them at tremendous speed. And the fishermen swam as quickly as they could to get out of danger. Suddenly, it slowed down considerably, for it had run out of petrol. It stopped completely just before it reached the fishermen. (132 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

Yours sincerely; Yours,

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. What happened: *tried* (1.1); *came* away (1.2); *waved* (1.2); *were thrown* (11.4-5); *continued* to move (1.6); *noticed* (1.7); *came* straight towards (11.8-9); *roared* past (1.9); *swam* on (1.10); *knew* (1.10); *completed* (1.11); *dropped* (1.13); *began* to drift (1.13)

What had happened: *had* hardly *had* (1.4); *had struck* (1.5); *had* just *begun* (11.6-7); *had passed* (1.10); *had* just *had* (1.11); *had slowed* down (1.12); *had* nearly all *been used up* (1.12)

What had been happening: *had been water skiing* (1.4)

难点练习答案

1. fairly... enough　2. fairly　3. enough　4. enough
5. enough

注解:

enough 可以作形容词,也可以作副词,当它作形容词时,意为"足够的",作副词时意思为"足够地"、"相当"、"颇",与 fairly(相当,有点,颇)含义相同,但 fairly 常放在它所修饰的词前面,而 enough 则放在它所修饰的词后面,并且常用于否定句中。

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

   根据课文第 4~5 行可推测,只有(b)when the boat struck the buoy(当快艇撞上浮标时)是那两个人被抛入海里的时候,其他 3 个选择虽然都是课文所涉及的内容,但不是他们被抛入海里的时候。所以(b)是正确的。

2. (c)

   根据课文第 7~10 行可以判断(c)the speedboat was going to hit them(快艇将会向他们撞击)是课文所暗示的情况,其他 3 个选择都不是那两个人所认为的。所以(c)是正确答案。

3. (a)

   本句是疑问句,回答是 His companion(他的同伴)。需要一个合适的疑问词,以使它同后面的回答吻合。(b)Whose是对所有格形容词提问的,不合乎题义;(c)Which和(d)What都是针对物提问的,也不正确;只有

(a)Who是针对人提问的，可以用 His companion 回答，所以只能选(a)。

4. (b)

前一句中的主语 Both men 意为"两人都"，后面的句子需要一个与它意义相反的词组作主语才合乎逻辑，前后两句意思才能保持一致。(a)They neither 不是正确表达方式，不合乎语法；(c)Neither they 也不是正确表达方式，应该是 Neither of them；(d)Either of them(两个中的任何一个)合乎语法，但不符合题义，因为它没有否定的意义，不是与 Both men 相对应的反义词组；只有(b)Neither of them(两个都不)是正确的表达方式，既合乎语法，又合乎题义，所以(b)是正确答案。

5. (b)

只有选(b)when 才合乎语法，因为句中的 hardly 只能跟连词 when 搭配。hardly... when... 意思是"刚……就……"，而其他 3 个选择(a)than、(c)as 和(d)so 都不能同 hardly 连用。所以(b)是正确答案。

6. (b)

只有选(b)At 才合乎惯用法，因为名词 speed(速度)前一般用介词 at 构成短语。如 at top speed(高速地)。而其他 3 个选择(a)With、(c)In 和(d)From 都不适合用于 speed 前，所以(b)是正确答案。

7. (d)

该句需要一个同前一句中的副词 considerably(相当多地、很大地)含义相同的词或词组，才能使两个句子意义相同。(a)much(非常，很)修饰动词时常和 very 合用；(b)many(许多的，许多)不能修饰动词；(c)very(很，极其，非常)不能单独用来修饰动词；(d)a lot(很大地)可以修饰动词；只有(d)a lot 与 considerably 含义相同，并且合

乎语法，所以(d)是正确答案。

8. (c)

本句需要选一个同前一句中的 swing the boat round(让船转弯)意义相同的动词短语，方能使两个句子含义相同。(a)circle it(环绕它)、(b)twist it(使它扭曲，使它旋转)、(c)make it turn(使它转弯，使它转过去)、(d)wind it(使它转动，使它弯曲前进)这 4 个选择中只有(c)同 swing the boat round 的意思相同，而其 3 个选择含义大致相近，都不如(c)准确，所以(c)是最佳选择。

9. (a)

本句需要一个同前一句中的副词 desperately(拼命地，绝望地)含义相同的词或词组，才能与前一句意思一致。(a)in despair(绝望地，陷于绝望)、(b)helplessly(无助地，无依无靠地)；(c)desperate(拼命的，绝望的)是形容词，不能修饰动词；(d)with despair 不是固定短语，不符合习惯用法；只有(a)与 desperately 的意义相同，所以应该选(a)。

10. (b)

该句缺少谓语动词，需要选一个合适的动词，以使它同前一句 It roared past them(它呼啸着驶过去)的含义相符合。(a)past 不是动词，它可以作形容词，名词和介词，意思为"过去的"、"过去"、"过"、"超过"；(c)pasted 是动词 paste(用浆糊粘贴)的过去式或过去分词，不合乎题义；(d)passing 是动词 pass(通过，穿过)的现在分词，不能作谓语；只有(b)passed 是 pass(通过)的过去式，可以作句子的谓语，并符合题义，所以(b)是正确答案。

11. (b)

本句需要一个同前一句中的副词 straight(垂直地，立刻)含义相同的词，方能使两个句子意思相同。(a) in

direction 不是固定短语，意思不通；(b)directly(径直地，立即)、(c)in the way(在路上，挡道的，妨碍人的)、(d)on the way(在路上，在途中)这4个选择中，只有(b)与straight含义相同，其他3个选择都不符合题义，所以应该选(b)。

12. (c)

本句需要一个同前一句中的动词 drifted(漂动，漂流)含义相同的词，才能使它同前一句意义相吻合。(a)stopped(停止)、(b)ran(跑)、(c)floated slowly(慢慢漂泊，漂动)和(d) wondered(感到奇怪，急欲知道)中，只有(c)同drifted的含义相近，所以应该选(c)。

4 句子结构答案

After it had passed, they swam on as quickly as they could because they knew that the boat would soon return.

Lesson 87
A perfect alibi
极好的不在犯罪现场的证据

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

At the time of the murder, the man claimed that he had been travelling on the 8 o'clock train to London and had arrived at work on time. When the inspector asked if a later train would get him to work on time, the man agreed it would but said that he always travelled early. The inspector suggested that he was lying because, that morning, the 8 o'clock train broke down, so the man must have caught the 8.25. (79 *words*)

When the murder was committed, the man claimed that he was travelling on the 8 o'clock train to London. He said that he arrived at work on time. Then the inspector asked if a later train would get him to work on time. Though the man agreed it would, he said he always travelled early. In reply, the inspector suggested he was lying, as the 8 o'clock train broke down that morning and therefore the man must have caught the 8.25.

(80 *words*)

作文参考答案

'I'm sorry. I was mistaken. I remember now that I

caught the later train, as the 8 o'clock train did not come at the usual time,' said the man.

'Did you notice anything unusual?' asked the inspector.

'I don't think it unusual for a train to be late,' answered the man.

'Then how did you spend the time?' asked the inspector.

'I just waited on the platform for 25 minutes, reading a newspaper.'

'I suggest,' said the inspector, 'that you are lying again. A neighbour, one of the witnesses, saw you leave the house at 8.15, just after the murder, so you are the one to be suspected. Now come to the police station with us.'

Finally, the man proved to be the murderer, and was arrested. (127 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

1. I am looking forward to seeing you soon.

 Yours love,

 Mary

2. I miss you, dear.

 Yours ever,

 Tom

3. I shall be looking forward to your answer.

 Yours respectfully,

 Peter Lee

4. I wish you a happy holiday.

 Best regards,

 Linda

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. The man said that he was travelling on the 8 o'clock train to London at the time the murder was committed. The inspector asked him if he always caught such an early train. The man said that he did because he had to be at work at 10 o'clock, and that his employer would confirm that he was there on time. The inspector then asked him if a later train would get him to work on time. The man supposed that it would, but said that he never caught a later train. The inspector asked at what time he had arrived at the station. The man said that he had arrived at the station at ten to eight. He added that he had bought a paper and waited for the train. When the inspector asked him if he had noticed anything unusual, the man said he hadn't. The inspector suggested that he was not telling the truth and that he did not catch the eight o'clock train, but (caught) the eight twenty-five, which would still get him to work on time. The inspector pointed out that on the morning of the murder, the eight o'clock train did not run at all, as it had broken down at Ferngreen station and had been taken off the line.

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

根据课文第 5 行和第 14 行，可以判断只有(c)he arrived at work on time 是极好的不在犯罪现场的理由，而其他 3

个选择虽然都是课文所涉及到的情况，但都不是充分的不在犯罪现场的证据。所以应该选(c)。

2. (d)

从课文最后一段可以看出(d)与课文内容相符，而其他 3 个选择都不是课文中提及的内容，所以应该选(d)。

3. (c)

表示“在某个城市”应该用介词 in，因此只有选(c)in 才符合语法，其他 3 个介词(a)at、(b)to 和(d)on 都不合乎语法。

4. (d)

前一句 he catches an early train(他乘早班火车)是用的一般现在时，表示现在习惯性的或经常的动作，因此只有选(d)always does 才能与前一句的含义相吻合。(a)use to 不合乎语法，也不合乎题义；(b)used to 表示过去经常性的动作，与前一句时态不一致；(c)is accustomed to(习惯于)意思不完整。

5. (a)

前一句中的 not telling the truth 意为“不讲实话”，本句应该选(a)telling(说谎)才合乎惯用法，并与前一句含义相符。其他 3 个选择(b)saying(说)、(c)talking(讲话、交谈)、(d)speaking(讲说)中，虽然都有“说”、“讲”的含义，但不用于“说谎”或“说实话”这类短语中，只有 tell 常用于 tell the truth 和 *tell* a lie 这样的固定短语中，所以应该选(a)。

6. (c)

在钟点前面要用介词 at，所以应该选(c)at 才合乎语法。其他 3 个选择(a)on、(b) - 和(d)in 都不能用在钟点前面。

7．(c)

(a)can't catch(不能赶上)是现在时，与前半句的动词(broke down)的时态不致；(b)mightn't catch(可能不会赶上)表示现在或将来的概念，也与前面的时态不一致；(d)mightn't have caught(不应该或不可能赶上)，一般might + have done表示对过去发生的事情的猜测，语气是不肯定的；只有(c)couldn't have caught(不能赶上)是对已发生的事情推测或判断，语气比(d)更肯定，所以(c)最符合前半句的时态和题义。

8．(a)

前半句是个直接引语，是对某人提问的一个简短回答，它后面需要一个动词作全句的谓语。(a)replied(回答)、(b)responded(作答，答复，响应)、(c)returned(返回，归还，回报)、(d)told(讲，说)中只有(a)replied比较通俗常用，而(b)虽然也有"回答"的含义，但比较正式，常用于正式场合。其他两个选择均不符合题义，所以(a)是最佳答案。

9．(d)

(a)assure(使信服，使……确信，担保)、(b)be sure(肯定，对……有把握)、(c)make sure(弄清楚，查明，弄确实)、(d)certify(证明，证实)中，只有(d)最符合这个句子的要求，而其他3个选择均与原句中表达的意思不符，因此(d)是正确答案。

10．(a)

本句需要选一个同前句中的形容词unusual(不寻常的，异常的)含义相同的词或词组，才能使它同前一句意义相同。(a)out of the ordinary(不寻常的，特殊的)、(b)unused(不使用的，新的)、(c)unaccustomed(不习惯的)和(d)inquisitive(好询问的，好奇的)中，只有(a)同

unusual 意义相同，所以应该选(a)。

11. (a)

本句需要对前面的疑问句作出肯定、简短的回答。(a)Certainly(无疑地，当然)、(b)Surely(确实，有把握地)、(c)Doubtlessly(无疑地)和(d)Truly(正确地，的确)中，只有(a)Certainly 常单独使用，并与 not 连用，作出回答，符合习惯用法，而其他 3 个选择都不常单独用来回答问题，因此不符合惯用法。所以(a)是最佳答案。

12. (d)

(a)lost(丢失)、(b)didn't find(没有找到)、(c)essaped(逃跑)和(d)missed(漏掉，错过，没赶上)中，只有(d)missed 与前一句中的 didn't catch(没赶上)含义相同，所以(d)是正确答案。

4 句子结构答案

I suggest *that you are not telling the truth*.

Lesson 88
Trapped in a mine
困在矿井里

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Six men who have been trapped in a mine for seventeen hours may lose their lives because rescue operations are proving difficult. Since explosives might cause the roof of the mine to collapse, rescue workers are drilling a hole through hard rock, but progress is slow. Two hours ago, a microphone was lowered into the mine and the men have been in touch with their relatives. They are running short of food and drink but they are in good spirits. (80 *words*)

Six men have been trapped in a mine for seventeen hours and may lose their lives. Rescue operations are proving difficult as explosives might cause the roof of the mine to collapse. Because of this, rescue workers are drilling a hole through hard rock, yet progress is slow. Now that a microphone has been lowered into the mine, the men are in touch with their relatives. Though they are running short of food and drink, they are in good spirits. (80 *words*)

作文参考答案

Several men had already been trapped in a mine for nearly twenty-four hours. And the rescue was still going on. The rescue workers had been drilling holes for over twenty hours but they still had a long way to go. During the rescue operation there was a loud explosive noise and vibration as well, which caused the roof of the mine to collapse. Meanwhile, a microphone, which had been lowered into the mine to keep in touch with the men inside, became silent owing to the collapse. An hour later, the men's voices were heard again through the microphone. This proved that they were all right.

The workers began drilling again. The collapse, however, had made the things easier, and the rescue operation was progressing more smoothly. Finally, the men were brought to the surface one by one. At this moment, all the people outside became excited, and the men's relatives were moved to tears.

(155 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

1. Yours sincerely,

Tom

P.S. Do you have an E-mail now? If you have, would you please let me know your address?

2. Best wishes,

Linda

P.S. I'll send you the photos we took together as soon as they have been developed.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. The word *if* is contained in four sentences.

C. 1. would not have been injured 2. had been

3. will find 4. had given 5. is forbidden

难点练习答案

1. into

run into 碰到，偶然遇见

2. out of

run out of 用完，耗尽

3. in

run in 对(机器)进行试转，试开(新车)

4. over

run over (车辆等)辗过，压过，撞倒

5. after

run after 追赶，追求

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

从课文第3~8行可以看出，只有选(c)safest才与课文内容相符合，而其他3个选择都与课文内容相反，所以(c)是正确答案。

2. (b)

根据课文所描述的情景，营救工作正在进行，并且非常困难，营救的结果怎样？困在井里的人能否被救出？还是个未知数，所以只有(b)so it is not certain that the men

will be saved(因此还不能肯定那些人会被救出)与课文内容相符合,而其他3个选择都是肯定句,表示"一定会",与课文内容不符,因此只能选(b)。

3. (b)

只有选(b)ago才合乎语法,并同前一句的含义相符合。若选(a)since、(c)for和(d)since then都不合乎语法,意思也讲不通,所以(b)是正确答案。

4. (c)

只有选(c)Unless(如果不把他们尽快救到地面上来,他们就有可能丧生)才合乎语法和题义。(a)Except(除了,除……之外)是介词,后面不能跟从句;(b)Without(没有)后面不能跟从句,也不合乎题义;(d)Whether(是否)不合乎题义;所以只有(c)Unless(除非,如果不)是正确答案。

5. (c)

这是一个以It作先行主语(形式主语)的句子,在这种句子中真正的主语往往是后面的动词不定式、动名词或名词从句。本句只有选(c)to rescue才合乎语法,因为(c)是不定式,可以作主语,而其他3个选择(a)for rescuing、(b)to rescuing和(d)in rescuing都是介词短语,不能作这类句子的真正主语,所以(c)是正确答案。

6. (a)

本句需要选一个与前一句中的动词词组cause the roof to...含义相同的词组,才能使两句意义相同。(c)do it to和(d)do it都与cause the roof to含义不符,意思讲不通;(b)make it to(使它)含义与cause the roof to相同,但不合乎语法,因为动词make后面要求用不带to的动词不定式;只有(a)make it既符合题义又合乎语法,所以(a)是正确答案。

7.(b)

本句只有选(b)but for(若无,要不是)最合乎语法和题义。(a)except(除了,除……之外)不符合惯用法;(c)if not 不合乎语法,应该是 if not for 才正确;(d)unless(除非,如果不)后面只能跟从句,也不合乎语法。

8.(b)

本句需要一个同前一句中的动词 collapse(倒塌)含义相同的词或词组,才能使两个句子意义相同。(a)explode(爆炸,爆发)、(b)fall down(倒下,倒坍)、(c)fall over(从……落下,翻倒)、(d)blow up(使爆炸,破坏)中,只有(b)与 collapse 含义相同,所以(b)是正确答案。

9.(c)

本句只有选(c)possible 最符合语法和题义。make it possible for sb. to do sth. 是固定结构,意为"使某人做某事成为可能"。其他 3 个选择都不能用于这个结构。(a)able常用于 be able to do sth.(能够/会做某事)这种结构中,主语往往是人或动物,而不是事物;(b)capable 常用于短语 be capable of,后面跟动名词或名词,意思是"能……的"、"有……能力的"、"有……本领的",是指人有能力;(d)probable(可能发生的,很可能的)不适合于这种结构。

10.(c)

前一句中的 are running out of 意为"快要耗尽了",但并不是说"已经用光了";本句需要选一个同它含义相符的短语才能与前一句意义相吻合。(a)have none(一点也没有)、(b)have a lot(有很多)、(c)haven't much(没有太多)和(d)can't eat it(不能吃)中,只有(c)与 are running out of 含义相近,而其他 3 个选择都不合乎题义,所以应选(c)。

11. (c)

(a)、(b)和(d)都不符合习惯用法，只有(c)是正确的选择。

12. (b)

本句需要一个同前句中的动词词组 lose heart(失去信心)含义相同的词组，才能使其同前一句意义相符合。(a)give(给，给予)、(b)give up(放弃，对……丧失信心)、(c)give off(发出，散发)、(d)give over(交给，移交，停止)中，只有(b)与 lose heart 含义相同，因此应该选(b)。

4 句子结构答案

If *they knew how difficult it was to drill through the hard rock*, *they would lose heart*.

Lesson 89
A slip of the tongue
口误

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The local cinema was packed because the P&U Bird Seed Company was presenting a free comedy show. As many of the artistes who should have appeared failed to turn up, the show was very dull. The funniest thing we heard came at the beginning from the advertiser who introduced the programme saying, 'This is the Poo and Ee Seed Bird Company. Good ladies, evening and gentlement!' (68 *words*)

The local cinema was packed. The P&U Bird Seed Company was presenting a free comedy show but many of the artistes who should have appeared failed to turn up. Because of this, the show was very dull. The funniest thing we heard came at the beginning from the advertiser who introduced the programme saying, 'This is the Poo and Ee Seed Bird Company. Good ladies, evening and gentlemen!' (70 *words*)

作文参考答案

Yesterday afternoon, a comedy show was given at our local cinema by the P. and U. Bird Seed Company. Before the

show began, there was already a long queue of people outside, but many of them failed to come in. Fortunately the show was one of the dullest ones. So they were the lucky ones.

There was a bare stage with only a microphone in the middle and an ugly model of a yellow bird beside it. And some free packets of bird seed were prepared for the audience. The only funny thing about the show was the advertiser. As he was too nervous to speak, he stood awkwardly before the microphone for some minutes. As soon as he opened his mouth, everyone burst out laughing. The audience knew what he should have said, though he kept making mistakes. The rest of the show was not as amusing as the audience had expected, so they felt somewhat disappointed. (159 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

1. I am looking forward to seeing you soon.

Yours love,

Peter

P.S. I'll send you a copy of the novel by separate post.

2. I shall be looking forward to hearing from you soon.

Best regards,

Lily

P.S. I am leaving for Shanghai on a business trip, and shall be back in a week.

3. I wish you a happy holiday.

Yours sincerely,

John

P.S. Will you please send me some pictures you have taken during the holiday?

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

C. 1. must not 2. need not

D. 1. had to go 2. should have gone 3. should begin

(关于 must、have to、need、should 的用法请参见第 17、41、65 课关键句型练习答案详解)

难点练习答案

A. 1. queue 2. single

B. (sample sentences)

1. It was so *funny* that I still laugh whenever I think about it!
2. It's *funny* (that) he hasn't replied to your letter.

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

   根据课文第 1 行 People will do anything to see a free show...,可以判断出(a)they didn't cost anything 是课文所暗示的情形,而其他 3 个选择虽然是课文所提及的内容,但不是 There was a big demand for tickets 的原因。所以应该选(a)。

2. (a)

   根据课文第 9～10 行,可以看出,只有(a)与课文内容相符合,而其他 3 个选择均与课文内容不符。所以应选(a)。

3. (d)

只有选(d)bad 才合乎语法。而其他 3 个选择都有语法错误。(a) badly 是副词，不能用在动词 be 后面作表语；(b)bad one 前面应该有冠词 a 才正确；(c)bad 是形容词，前面不应该有冠词 a。

4. (a)

本句是以 How long 提问的疑问句，因此后面需要主谓倒置的疑问句语序，才合乎语法。只有(a)did they have to 是疑问句语序。而(b)they had to 是陈述句语序；(c)had they to 不是正确的表达方式，意思不通；(d)they did have to 语序不正确，应将 did 提前。所以(a)是正确答案。

5. (d)

前一句 There must have been several hundred people present(肯定有好几百人到场)中的 must + 不定式完成式，表示对过去发生的事情的推测。只有选(d)I think there were(我想是的)才与前一句含义和时态相符合。(a)There had to be 没有“推测”的含义，不合乎题义；(b)There must be 虽然表示推测，但不是对过去情况的推测，同前一句时态不一致；(c)It was necessary to be 意义讲不通。所以只能选(d)。

6. (d)

(a)ought to appear(应该出场)、(b)should appear(应该出场)这两个选择意义相同，都是现在时，而本句的时态是一般过去时，它们都与本句时态不一致。(c) had to appear(必须出场，不得不出场)意思不符合这个句子；只有(d)ought to have appeared(早应该出场而实际却没有)最符合题义，所以(d)是最佳答案。

7. (a)

(c)on top of(在……顶上)、(d)instead of(代替，而不是)

这两个选择均不符合题义；(a)in front of 和(b)ahead of 都有“在……的前面”的含义，但 ahead of 主要强调“(在时间上)先于”、“早于”、“在……以前”；而 in front of 则表示“(在时间和空间上)在……前面”，它也有“面对着……”的含义；in front of 更符合这个句子的要求，所以应该选(a)in front of。

8. (d)

本句是对 A comedy show(喜剧表演)的解释或说明，需选一个能够说明喜剧性质的形容词。(a)serious(严肃的，庄重的)、(b)different(不同的)、(c)unusual(不寻常的，庄重的)、(d)light(轻松的，有趣的，消遣性的)这 4 个词中，只有(d)light能较准确说明喜剧的性质，所以(d)是正确答案。

9. (b)

本句需要选一个合适的名词同 wait 构成固定短语，并与前一句中的 queue(排队)含义相同。(a)queue(队列)、(b)turn(依次轮流的顺次，轮班)、(c)row(行列，排)和(d)line(线，线路)中，只有(b)能同 wait 构成固定短语 wait one's turn(等轮到自己)，与 to queue 的含义相吻合。所以应该选(b)。

10. (d)

本句需要一个同前一句中的形容词 dull(枯燥的)含义相同的词，才能使它同前一句意义相符合。(a)disinterested(公正的，不关心的)、(b)uninterested(不感兴趣的，不关心的)、(c)interesting(有意思的，有趣的)和(d)uninteresting(枯燥无味的)中，只有(d)与 dull 含义相同，所以应该选(d)。

11. (d)

本句需要一个同前一句中的形容词 nervous(紧张的，不

安的）含义相近的词，才能使它同前一句意义相同。(a)angry（气愤的，生气的）、(b)bad-tempered（脾气坏的）、(c)annoyed（使烦恼的，苦恼的）、(d)anxious（焦虑的，心神不定的）中，只有(d)与 nervous 的含义最接近，因此应该选(d)。

12. (b)

只有选(b)laughter 才合乎语法，并与前一句意义相符。(a)laughs 不合乎语法，laugh 是动词，很少作为名词，其名词形式是 laughter；(c)laughings 也不合乎语法，因为它是复数形式，不能同 There was 配合；(d)laugh 也不合乎语法。所以只有(b)是正确答案。

Lesson 90
What's for supper?
晚餐吃什么?

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

Divers working on North Sea oil rigs are often terrified by giant fish that bump into them when they are working in deep water. These fish are not sharks or whales. On the contrary, they are favourite eating varieties that grow to unnatural sizes. Three factors have caused this to happen: the first is the warmth from oil-pipes; the second is the supply of plentiful food; the third is the absence of fishing round the rigs.

(76 *words*)

Divers who work on the North Sea oil rigs have been terrified out of their wits by giant fish bumping into them while they work in deep water. The fish are not sharks or whales, but favourite eating varieties like cod and skate which have grown to unnatural sizes. Three factors have caused this to happen: the warmth from the hot oil-pipes, the plentiful food thrown from the rigs and the absence of fishing around the rigs.

(76 *words*)

作文参考答案

Now I want to tell you a strange story which I heard from the divers during our visit. The divers had to work at a depth of sixty feet under water. At first, their work went on well. But some time later, one diver reported that he got a nasty bump in the dark, and all the divers were frightened out of their wits. As a result, they dared not go on with their work. This sounded like a joke. Upon hearing this, the men on the rigs all laughed. They thought there must be a monster in the deep ocean.

Then, a second team went down. But they came up immediately, for they were again bumped by some giant creature as they worked. It turned out to be some huge fish: a cod eight feet in length, and a skate twelve feet across. So the divers refused to go down again. The managers had to promise to have special cages made to protect them. (153 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

B. 1. They *have had* special cages *made* to protect the divers from these monsters.

2. The oil companies *have had the rigs repaired* frequently.

3. The divers often *have to work* in total darkness.

4. He *has had* a book *published*.

5. We *have to* protect fish stocks.

6. We *have not had* the letter *sent* to his new address.

7. 'I *will have* the package *sent* to you,'she promised.

8. *Do you have to* go so soon?

9. Are you going *to have* this suit *cleaned*?

10. When will you *have* this loose handle *fixed*?

11. I have to take this cap in to *have* new brakes *fitted*.

12. How long is it since you *had to* see a doctor?

13. The doctor told me I *had to* get more exercise.

难点练习答案

1. is　　2. is　　3. are　　4. Is　　5. have

3　多项选择练习

1. (b)

根据课文第1～3行可以判断,只有(b)与课文所暗示的情形相符,并能说明为什么"听说北海石油钻井平台上的潜水员受到大鱼的恐吓,让人很吃惊"的原因。而其他3个选择都不能说明这一原因,所以(b)是正确答案。

2. (c)

根据课文第6～7行,可以判断出只有(c)the fish are huge(鱼是巨大的)是课文所暗示的情形,并能说明为什么"潜水员受到惊吓",其他3个选择虽然都是课文所提及的内容,但不是潜水员受到惊吓的原因,所以都不正确,只有(c)是正确答案。

3. (c)

该句中的These eating varieties(这些食用品种)指的是鱼类,它的大小不应该用"深度"来量。因此(b)depth和(d)deep都不符合题义。(a)length(长度)和(b)long(长)都合乎题义。但(a)不合乎语法,应该是in length才正

确；(b)合乎语法，twelve feet long 就等于 twelve feet in length，所以只有(c)是正确答案。

4. (c)

前一句中的 total absence of 意为"一点没有"、"根本没有"，本句需要一个与它含义相同的词，才能与前一句意义相同。(a)few和(b)a few 都与 a total absence of 含义不符，因此都不正确；(c)no 和(d)not 都是"不"、"没有"的意思，与 a total absence of 含义相同，not 不合乎语法，应该是 not any 才正确，所以(c)是正确答案。

5. (a)

只有选(a)ought to be 才合乎语法，并与前一句含义相吻合。(b)need to、(c)have had 和(d)require(需要)都不符合语法，所以(a)是正确答案。

6. (b)

本句需要一个合适的介词，意思才完整。(a)as 可以作介词，意为"作为"、"如同"；(b)like 可以作介词，意为"像"、"如"；(c)similar是形容词，意为"相像的"、"类似的"；(d)resemble(像，类似)是动词；(c)和(d)都不是介词，不合乎题义。(a)和(b)都是介词，但(b)比(a)更符合题义，只有选(b)like 这个句子意思才更通顺，所以(b)是最佳答案。

7. (c)

只有(c)as long as 才能同句中的 twelve feet 搭配，as long as twelve feet(长达 12 英尺)。(a)so much as 不能说明长度；(b)longer 不合乎语法，因为它不能放在 twelve feet 前；(d)bigger 既不合乎语法又不符合题义。

8. (b)

只有选(b)are hit by(遭到袭击)这个句子意思才讲得通。(a)come over(从远处来，过来，胜过)、(b)bump off(〈美

俚)残杀,杀死)、(d)are terrifying(正在惊吓)这3个选择都不如(b)符合题义,所以(b)是最佳答案。

9. (a)

只有选(a)surprising(惊人的)才与前一句The report comes as a surprise(这报道使人吃惊)的含义相符合。(b)surprised(感到吃惊的)应该以人作主语,所以不能用于这个句子。此句的主语是It。(c)delightful(令人高兴的)不符合题义;(d)shocked(使震惊,震动的)主语也应该是人,所以也不合乎这个句子。

10. (d)

本句需要一个同前一句中的词组unnatural sizes(出奇得大)含义相同的形容词,才能使它与前一句意义保持一致。(a)expensive(昂贵的)、(b)overfished(对鱼类过量捕捞的)、(c)lovely(可爱的)和(d)huge(巨大的)中,只有(d)huge与unnatural sizes含义相同,所以(d)是正确答案。

11. (d)

本句需要一个与前面句子中的terrified(使……受惊吓)含义相近的词或词组,才能同前一句意义相符合。(a)terrifying(吓人的)、(b)at their wits' end(不知所措,智穷才竭)、(c)frightening(威胁人的,吓人的)、(d)frightened out of their wits(吓得惊慌失措)中,只有(d)与terrified的含义最接近。(a)和(c)虽然也有"惊吓"的意思,但它们没有被动的含义,不符合这个句子的要求,所以(d)是最佳答案。

12. (d)

只有选(d)keep the fish away(阻止鱼接近),这个句子才合乎逻辑。(a)catch the fish(捕鱼)、(b)attack sharks and killer whales(攻击鲨鱼或逆戟鲸)、(c)terrify divers(恐吓

潜水员)都与课文内容不符,所以(d)是最佳答案。

4 句子结构答案

Divers, who often have to work in darkness a hundred feet under water, have been frightened out of their wits by giant fish bumping into them as they work.

Lesson 91
Three men in a basket
三人同篮

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

While circling the balloon, the pilot saw three men in the basket, one of whom was holding a pair of binoculars. When it flew over the station, one of the men took photographs. Then it landed near an airfield, but the police could not arrest anyone because the basket contained two Members of Parliament and the Commanding Officer of the station. Afterwards the Commanding Officer explained that one half of the station did not know what the other half was doing. (81 *words*)

The pilot circled the balloon, under which there was a basket containing three men, one of whom was holding a pair of binoculars. Before landing near an airfield, it flew over the station and someone took photographs. As two of the men were Members of Parliament and the other was the Commanding Officer, the police could not arrest anyone. The mystery was explained when the Commanding Officer admitted (said) that one half of the station did not know what the other half was doing. (83 *words*)

作文参考答案

The men in the basket struggled hard with the balloon for some time. Soon afterwards, the balloon began to descend and it landed near an airport. The three men tried to explain who they were, but they were not believed. Being suspected to be spies, they were finally taken to the police station.

The police questioned the men over and over again, but they refused to answer any questions. Just then, the Commanding Officer of a Royal Air Force Station telephoned the police station and said that three of their Commanding Officers disappeared. Soon a senior officer arrived. He immediately identified the three Commanding Officers in disguise. The police was greatly surprised at this, and they apologized to them. (120 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

1. Dear Bill,

   I haven't heard from you for a long time.

2. Dear Mary,

   Please forgive me for not answering your letter earlier.

3. Dear Aunt Alice,

   Thank you very much for taking me to dinner and to the theatre last weekend.

4. Dear Tom,

   I have just heard that you have successfully passed a difficult examination. My heartfelt congratulations!

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *was able to* explain (1.3); *can be* a great danger (1.5); *managed to* circle (1.7); *could* make out (1.8); *could* not arrest (1.11)

C. 1. Can/Could　　2. could/was (*soon*) able to

3. were able to　　4. can

(请参见第 67 课关键句型练习答案详解)

难点练习答案

1. out

make out a new set 重新写一套

2. out

make out what you've written 弄明白/理解你写的东西

3. for

make for home 往家走

4. up

make up stories 编造故事

5. up for

make up for all those lessons you missed 把你耽误的课全部补上

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第 3～5 行 The officer in the ... was angry ..., because balloons can be a great danger to aircraft,可以判断只有(d)he was worried about aircraft safety(他担心飞

机的安全)符合课文内容,并能说明那官员生气的原因,其他 3 个选择虽然是课文提及的内容,但都不是生气的原因,所以(d)是正确的。

2. (b)

从课文第 11~13 行可以推测(b)是课文内容所暗示的,而其他 3 个选择都与课文内容不符合,所以应该选(b)。

3. (c)

该句的谓语动词 noticed 可以跟宾语 + 不带 to 的不定式或动词 + -ing 形式:(b)to make 和(d)in making 都不能用在 notice 后面,因此都不正确;(a)make 和(c)making 都可以用在 notice 后面作宾语补语,但它们表达的含义不同。不带 to 的不定式 make 是指整体的动作,即动作的全过程;而 making 是指正在进行的动作。因此,(c)更符合这个句子的含义:A pilot noticed a balloon making for a Royal Air Force Station(一个飞行员发现了一只气球正飞往附近的一个皇家空军基地),强调气球正在飞往而不是已经飞向了……。所以(c)是最佳答案。

4. (b)

本句的谓语动词 informed 后面只有跟介词 of 搭配才符合惯用法:to inform sb. of sth.(通知某人某事)。所以只有(c)of 是正确答案,而其他 3 个选择(a)for、(b)about 和(d)from 都不合乎语法。

5. (c)

本句需要一个同前一句中的时间从句 when he heard 含义相同的短语,才能使两个句子意义相同。只有(c)on hearing(当听到……时)与 when he heard 的含义相同,而其他 3 个选择(a)with hearing、(b)in hearing、(d)for hearing 都不符合惯用法,所以(c)是正确答案。

6. (d)

只有选(d)was 最合乎语法,因为 news 是不可数名词,后面只能跟第 3 人称单数形式的动词。(a)were 和(b)are 都不合乎语法;(c)had 不是动词 be,不合乎题义,所以(d)是正确答案。

7. (b)

只有选(b)There were 才能使这个句子与前一句(The balloon contained two MPs)的含义相同。英语中表示某处"有"或"存在"要用 there is 或 there are 这样的结构,而不能用 have。因此,(a)They were、(c)They had 和(d)There had 都不合乎语法,只有(b)是正确答案。

8. (b)

本句需要选一个同前一句中的形容词 nearby(在附近的,在旁边)含义相符合的词或短语,才能使它同前一句意义相吻合。(a)quite far(当相远)、(b)quite close to(很靠近)、(c)beside(在……旁边)和(d)rather far from(离……相当远)4 个选择中只有(b)与 nearby 的含义相同,(c)beside 往往指比较确定的地点,如 beside the window(在窗户旁),nearby 只是指附近的,范围比较宽泛,两个词含义有些不同,所以(b)是最佳答案。

9. (c)

本句需要一个与前一句中的动词短语 keep track of(跟踪)含义相同的动词,才能使它同前一句意义相同。(a)record(录音,记录)、(b)control(控制,操纵)、(c)follow(跟随,追踪)和(d)check(检查,核实)中,只有(c)与 keep track of 含义相同,所以应该选(c)。

10. (b)

前一句中的 make out 是"看出"、"辨认出"的意思,本句需要一个与它含义相同的动词,以使两个句子意思相吻合。

(a)find(找到,发现)、(b)see(看见,辨认出)、(c)follow(跟随)和(d)watch(看守,观看)中,4 个词中只有(b)see 与 make out 的含义最接近,所以(b)是最佳答案。

11. (c)

只有选(c)down 才与前一句 The balloon began to descend (气球开始降落)的意义相符合。come down(下降)就等于 descend。其他 3 个选择(a)over、(b)off 和(d)away都不合乎题义,所以(c)是正确答案。

12. (b)

本句需要一个与前一句中的动词 landed(降落、着陆)意义相同的短语,才能使两个句子含义相同。(a)came along(跟着走,沿着)、(b)came down(落下)、(c)came over (走过来)和(d)came off(分离,停止)中,只有(b)与 landed 含义相符合,所以应该选(b)。

4 句子结构答案

A pilot *noticed a balloon which seemed to be making for a Royal Air Force Station nearby. He informed the station at once, but no one there was able to explain the mystery.*

Lesson 92
Asking for trouble
自找麻烦

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The writer returned home at about two in the morning and rang the doorbell. Having failed to wake up his wife, he put a ladder against the wall and began climbing towards the bedroom window. Suddenly a policeman called out, but the writer answered him rudely. He told him he had forgotten his key. The shouting woke his wife. She opened the window just as the policeman had started climbing the ladder after him.

(74 *words*)

On arriving home at about two in the morning, the writer rang the doorbell but failed to wake up his wife. After having put a ladder against the wall, he was climbing towards the bedroom window when a policeman called out. Answering him rudely, the writer told him he had forgotten his key. The shouting woke his wife, who opened the window at the moment when the policeman started climbing the ladder after him. (74 *words*)

作文参考答案

Just as the policeman started to climb towards me, my wife woke up. She opened the window and looked out. At first she did not recognize me. She just took me for a thief. As she saw the policeman behind me, she called for help.

Hearing my wife's cry, the policeman was assured that I was a thief. As a result, he pulled me down the ladder. But as he was about to take me to the police station, my wife was able to see me clearly and realized her mistake. Then she tried to explain to him who I was and asked him to release me. Finally the policeman believed her explanation. She apologized to the policeman, and then the policeman apologized to me, too.

(125 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

Mrs. D. Thompson,
17 Bunyan St.,
Sevenoaks,
Kent,
England.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

B. (sample sentences)

1. I am accustomed to working late at night.
2. Fancy seeing you here!
3. I always avoid going to expensive restaurants.

4. He accused me of telling lies.

难点练习答案

1. He likes classical music and *so do I*.
2. He has had breakfast and *so have I*.
3. He doesn't like classical music and *neither do I*.
4. She will buy a new dress and *so will I*.
5. He hasn't had any breakfast and *neither have I*.
6. They ran quickly and *so did we*.
7. She won't buy a new dress and *neither will I*.
8. You are late and *so am I*.
9. They didn't run quickly and *neither did we*.
10. He could speak French and *so could I*.
11. He could not speak French and *neither could I*.

3 多项选择练习

1. (b)

从课文第 5~7 行可以判断出，只有(b)suspected that the writer was a thief 是课文所暗示的情形，而其他 3 个选择都与课文内容不符。

2. (c)

根据课文第 12~14 行只有(c)与课文内容相符合，其他 3 个选择都与课文内容不符，所以应该选(c)。

3. (d)

本句只有选不定式的被动语态才能与前一句 I don't think the windows need cleaning(我认为不必擦窗子)的意义相符合。(a) to clean、(b) to be clean 和 (c) to be cleaning 这 3 个选择都不是不定式的被动语态，因此都不

正确，只有(d)to be cleaned是不定式的被动语态，所以应该选(d)to be cleaned。

4. (c)

只有选(c)to have done(我很后悔这样做了)才与前一句 I regretted answering like that 的含义和时态相吻合。因为前一句是一般过去时，表示对做过的事情感到后悔，所以只有选不定式的完成式(c)to have done才与前面时态一致。(a)to do是不定式现在时，与前面时态不符；(b)in doing和(d)to be doing都不符合惯用法，意义讲不通，所以(c)是最佳答案。

5. (b)

excuse sb. for doing sth. 是固定短语，表示抱歉做了某事。

6. (a)

只有选(a)you to come才能与前一句 Would you mind coming with me? 的含义相吻合。若选(b)to come和(c)coming都不符合逻辑，意义不通；(d)you coming不合乎语法。所以(a)是正确答案。

7. (b)

只有选(b)rather do(那是我宁愿做的)才能同前一句 I'd prefer to stay here 的含义相符合。would rather do与would prefer to do意义相同。而其他3个选择(a)do、(c)have done和(d)do best都与前一句意义不符合，所以(b)是正确答案。

8. (b)

只有(b)sound能和asleep构成固定短语。sound asleep意为"酣睡"，与前一句中的fast asleep(酣睡)意义相同，因此应该选(b)sound。而(a)deeply、(c)quick和(d)soon都不能和asleep连用，所以都不是正确答案。

9. (a)

本句需要一个同前一句 I got a ladder from the shed(我从小棚里搬来了一个梯子)中的动词 got 含义相近的词,才能与前一句意义保持一致。(a)fetched(去拿来,取来)、(b)took(拿,取)、(c)brought(带来,拿来)、(d)carried(拿着,手提,运送)中,只有(a)fetched 与前一句中的 got 含义最接近,其他 3 个选择虽然都有"拿"的意思,但都没有"去拿来"的含义,意思都不如(a)更贴切,所以(a)是最佳答案。

10. (d)

本句需要一个同前一句中的形容词 sarcastic(讽刺的,讥笑的)意义相同的词,才能与前一句意义保持一致。(a)funny(可笑的,好玩的)、(b)laughing(笑的,欢乐的)、(c)despicable(可鄙视的,卑鄙的)和(d)mocking(嘲笑的)这 4 个词中只有(d)与 sarcastic 的含义最接近,所以应该选(d)。

11. (c)

本句需要一个同前一句中的动词短语 fell off the ladder(从梯子上掉下来)含义相同的词组,才能与前一句意义相同。(a)fell in(坍陷,下沉)、(b)fell over(向前跌倒,翻倒)、(c)fell down(掉下,倒下)和(d)fell away(离开,疏远)中,只有(c)与 fell off the ladder 意义最接近,所以应该选(c)fell down。

12. (a)

本句需要一个同前一句中的 Fortunately(幸运地)意义相同的词和短语,才能与前一句意义吻合。(a)luckily(幸运地)、(b)By chance(碰巧)、(c)By accident(偶然,意外地)和(d)On purpose(故意地)中,只有(a)与 Fortunately 意义相同,所以(a)是正确答案。

4 句子结构答案

It must *have been about two in the morning when I returned home*.

Lesson 93
A noble gift
崇高的礼物

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The Statue of Liberty, which was presented to the United States of America by the French people in the 19th century, was designed by Bartholdi and built on a metal frame constructed by Eiffel. The site chosen for it was an island at the entrance of New York Harbour, where a pedestal had to be built. The statue was erected in Paris in 1884 and re-erected two years later in America. It was officially presented in October, 1886. (78 *words*)

The Statue of Liberty was presented to the United States of America by the French people in the 19th century. Though designed by Bartholdi, it was built on a metal frame constructed by Eiffel. The site chosen for it was an island at the entrance of New York Harbour and a pedestal had to be built. The statue was first erected in Paris in 1884, but it was re-erected two years later in America and officially presented in October, 1886. (80 *words*)

作文参考答案

Now our ship is sailing into New York Harbour between Long Island and Staten Island. The first thing that catches my eye is the great monument of the Statue of Liberty, standing firmly at the entrance of N. Y. Harbour. It is 151 feet tall, and it looks so grand and charming that I am deeply impressed by it. As a symbol of liberty, the statue has attracted millions of people to New York, and to America as well.

I have a first glimpse of New York City from Manhattan, which is one of the five boroughs of the city. There are many skyscrapers towering into the sky. The most striking ones are the Empire State Building and the United Nations Building. Great ships are busy sailing into or out of the harbour. Besides, there are long bridges with a lot of cars, buses and trucks, and many people are walking on the pavements. (155 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

1. It was very kind of you to answer my letter so promptly.
2. I have not heard from you for over a month.
3. Forgive me for not answering your letter earlier.
4. Thank you for sending me a birthday present.
5. I have not forgotten that it is your birthday tomorrow.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A. *was presented* (1.2); *was designed* (1.4); *took* (1.4); *was made* of (1.5); *supported* by (1.5); *had been*...

constructed (1.6); *could be transported* (1.7); *had to be found* (11.7-8); *had to be built* (1.8); *was* (1.8); *was* (1.9); *had been erected* (1.9); *was taken* to pieces (1.10); *sent* (1.10); *had been put ... was ... presented* (1.10); *has been* (1.12); *have passed* through (1.12)

难点练习答案

1. '*exported* ... '*imported*

   (Note: the direct contrast between EXported and IMported in this sentence makes it necessary to stress the prefixes of these verbs. Normally, of course, the stress would be: *ex'ported ... im'ported*.)
2. 'records ... 'exports
3. *pro'tested* ... '*increase*
4. *in'sulted* ... '*accent*
5. *con'duct*
6. 'contest ... '*record*

3 多项选择练习

1. (c)

   根据课文第 9～10 行，可以看出只有(c)in Paris 与课文内容相符合，其他 3 个选择都与课文内容不符。
2. (d)

   根据课文第 11～12 行，只有(d)是正确的，其他 3 个选择都与课文内容不符。
3. (b)

   本句是用 who 提问的被动语态疑问句，需要一个能表示被动意义的介词，使其意思完整。(a)from、(c)to、(d)at

这3个介词都不能表达“被”的意思，只有(b)by能用于被动语态，表示“被”的意思，所以应该选(b)。

4. (a)

本句缺少主语和谓语，只有选(a)he took才合乎语法，并能同前一句含义相吻合。若选(b)him took不合乎语法，因为him是宾格，不能作主语；(c)took him也不合乎语法，因为没有主语，宾语又多余；(d)he was taken是被动语态，不合乎题义；所以应该选(a)he took(他花的时间)。

5. (c)

只有选(c)of才合乎题义和惯用法。made of表示“用某种材料制成”，而(a)made by(由……制造)表示制造人；(b)made from(指用多种材料制成)不同于made of；(d)made in (a country)表示产地。这3个选择都不正确。

6. (c)

本句是以It作主语的强调句，在强调句中，如果强调的成分是人，要用代词who，如果强调物或其他成分都要用that。本句强调的是人Eiffel，所以应该选(c)who。其他3个选择(a)whom、(b)which、(d)whose都不符合语法。

7. (c)

只有选(c)for a site to be found最合乎语法。It is necessary for sb. to do sth.是固定结构，意思是“某人有必要做某事”，也可以把它后面的不定式变成被动语态It is necessary for sth. to be done，其意义同前面的相同。(a)a site to be found、(b)for to be found a site和(d)to be found a site这3个选择都不合乎语法。所以(c)是惟一正确的答案。

8. (d)

本句需要对主语Copper(铜)作出正确的解释说明。

(a)stone(石头)、(b)marble(大理石)、(c)wood(木材)、(d)metal(金属)这 4 个选择中,只有(d)metal 能说明 copper 的属性,所以应该选(d)metal。

9. (c)

只有选(c)for a special purpose(特意)才与前面的句子 It was especially constructed by Eiffel 的含义相符合,especially constructed(专门建造的)。(a)in particular(尤其,特别)、(b)particularly(详细地,尤其地,特别地)、(d)on purpose(故意)这 3 个选择都不如(c)for a special purpose(为了特别的目的)意思更完整、贴切,所以(c)是最佳答案。

10. (b)

本句需要选一个与前一句中的名词 a site(一块场地)含义相符合的词或短语,才能同前一句意思保持一致。(a)A land(陆地,土地,地方)、(b)A plot of land(一块地)、(c)A property(资产,不动产)常用复数形式;(d)An estate(财产,房地产,庄园)中,只有(b)与 a site 的含义最接近,所以应该选(b)。

11. (d)

本句需要选同前一句中的 erected(被竖立,被建造)含义相同的词或词组,才能同前一句意义相符合。(a)put off(推迟)、(b)put over(推迟,耽搁,把……运过去)、(c)put in(插入,加进)、(d)put up(建造,盖起)中,只有(d)与 erected 含义相同,所以应该选(d)。

12. (b)

(a)replaces(替换,取代)、(b)stands for(代表,象征)、(c)is a representative of(是……的代表)、(d)is an agent for(是……的代理人)中,只有(b)与前一句中的 is a symbol of 含义最接近,所以应该选(b)。

4 句子结构答案

One *of the most famous monuments in the world, the Statue of Liberty, was presented to the United States of America in the 19th century by the people of France.*

Lesson 94
Future champions
未来的冠军

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

At a swimming pool in Los Angeles, children are taught to hold their breath under water before they can walk. They begin learning when they are two months old and, in time, they can pick up weights from the bottom of the pool. The game they enjoy most is the tricycle race, which takes place seven feet under water. Some children pedal their tricycles, while others push or pull them, and a few get across without coming up for air. (80 *words*)

At a swimming pool in Los Angeles, children who are taught to hold their breath under water before they can walk often begin learning to swim when two months old. Though they can pick up weights from the bottom of the pool, the game they enjoy most is the underwater tricycle race. This takes place seven feet under water and, while some children pedal their tricycles, others push or pull them. A few get across without coming up for air. (80 *words*)

作文参考答案

When the underwater tricycle race began, the children dived into the water. After they found their tricycles which were lined up on the floor of the pool seven feet under water, they started off. They competed against each other to reach the other end of the pool. Most children pedaled their tricycles, but some of them pushed or dragged them.

Towards the end of the race, a child who came first was pulling his tricycle, but he was so exhausted that he dropped it at last. The dropped tricycle, however, hindered two others just behind him. The two children struggled to get the tricycle out of the way. Just then, another child was pedaling hard and surpassed them. But as he was about to reach the other end and won the race, another child rose to the surface dragging up his tricycle. It was really an exciting and funny race.

(148 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

1. I wish you every success in your new job.
2. I am looking forward to seeing you soon.
3. I hope you will get better soon.

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

1. of

   approve of 批准，赞同

2. of... to

be guilty of 有……过失，犯……的罪
be condemned to death 判死刑

3. to...from
occur to... 被(某人)想到
different from 与……不同

4. on...on
consult sb. on sth. 就某事请教某人
act on... 按照(劝告、指示)行事

5. from...with
prevent sb. from doing sth. 阻止某人做某事
quarrell with 与……争吵

6. to...of
respond to 对……有反应，答复
be cured of 被治愈，除去(疾病)

7. with...on
live with sb. 与某人生活在一起
dependent on 依靠的，依赖的

8. with...to
reason with (以理)说服，规劝
rude to sb. 对……无礼，粗鲁的

9. to...wtih
grateful to 感谢的，致谢意的
patient with 耐心的，对……耐心的

10. at...on
good at 善于，擅长
rely on 依赖，依靠

11. of...for
think of 考虑，想
look for 寻找

12. in/with

interfere in/with 干涉,干预

13. in

believe in 相信;相信……的存在

14. to...in...with

obvious to 明显的

persist in doing sth. 坚持做某事

angry with sb. 对某人发怒

15. of...to

demand too much of him 对他要求太过分了

equal to 与……相等,胜任

16. of

be sure of oneself 有自信心

17. for

provide for 供给,提供

18. of ... to

afraid of 害怕,担心

19. for...for

blame sb. for sth. 因某事责备某人

responsible for 对……有责任的

20. on...in

keen on 对……有兴趣,喜爱

in one's efforts 努力,尝试

21. of...about

beware of 注意,当心

enthusiastic about 对……表示热心的

22. to

appeal to 向……提出恳求,呼吁

23. for/about...at/by

sorry for/about 对……感到遗憾

be shocked at/by 对……感到震惊

24. in

interested in 对……感兴趣

25. of...of

aware of 知道，意识到

ahead of 在……的前面

26. to...of

entitled to 对……享有权利

27. for

pay for 为……而付钱，赔偿

28. to

inferior to 比……差的，不如……好的

29. on

comment on 评论，对……提意见

30. on...of

pride oneself on 以……为自豪

capable of 能……的，有……能力的

31. to

accustomed to 习惯于

32. to/with...of

agree to/with 同意；对……表示同意

ignorant of 不知道的

33. to...to

confess to 向……承认，坦白

be converted to 使改变信仰，皈依

34. from...of

borrow ... from 向……借

shy of 羞于，对……感到害羞

35. in...on

fail in 在……上没成功，不及格

count on 指望，依靠

3 多项选择练习

1. (a)

根据课文第一句话可以判断，只有(a)Children can learn to swim much earlier than is commonly supposed(儿童可以在比通常人们想像的年龄更小的时候学习游泳)是课文所陈述的情况，而其他3个选择都与课文内容不符。所以(a)是正确答案。

2. (b)

根据课文第10行，只有(b)Not all the children ride their tricycles during the underwater race(不是所有的孩子在水下比赛中都骑三轮车)是课文所暗示的情形，其他3个选择都与课文内容不符合。

3. (c)

只有(c)taught how to swim(被教如何游泳)与前一句中的instructed in swimming(被教授游泳)意义相同，其他3个选择(a)learnt to swim(学游泳)、(b)learnt swimming和(d)learnt how to swim都有"学游泳"的意义，都与instructed in swimming意义不同，不符合题义。所以(c)是正确答案。

4. (b)

只有(b)in spite of the fact that(尽管，不顾)最符合这个句子的要求。而其他3个选择都不合乎语法，(a)in spite不是正确表达方式；(c)in spite of(不顾)后面只能跟名词，不能跟从句，而本句需要的是能够引导从句的短语；

(d)despite 含义与 in spite of 相同，后面也只能跟名词。因此只能选(b)。

5. (a)

本句需要一个与前一句中的 are accustomed to(习惯于)含义相同的词组，才能使两个句子意义相同。(b)are used、(c)used to 和(d)used 都与 are accustomed to 意义不符合，也不合乎语法，只有(a)are used to(习惯于)符合题义。因此应该选(a)。

6. (d)

本句是针对游泳池提问的疑问句。游泳池应该用深度来测量而不应该用高度。因此(b)How tall 和(c)How high (多高)都不合乎题义。而(a)How deeply 不合乎语法，应该是 How deep 才正确。只有(d)What depth(多深)是问深度的，最合乎题义和语法，并能同回答 Seven feet 相符合，所以(d)是正确答案。

7. (a)

只有(a)against one another 是正确表达方式，并合乎题义。所以应该选(a)。其他 3 个选择都不是正确的表达方式，意思不通顺。

8. (c)

本句需要选出与前一句中的形容词 reluctant(不情愿的，勉强的)含义相反的词组，才能与前一句含义相符合。(a)unwilling to(不情愿的)、(b)not ready to(没准备好的)、(c)willing to(情愿的)、(d)slow to(迟缓的)这 4 个选择中，只有(c)willing to 是 reluctant 的反义词，符合题义，所以应该选(c)。

9. (d)

(a)It is common(它是普通的)、(b)It is well known(它是著名的)、(c)It is pleasing(它是令人愉快的)和(d)They

like it very much(他们非常喜欢它)这 4 个选择中，只有(d)与前一句 The game is popular(这游戏是大众喜爱的)含义相最接近，因此(d)是正确答案。

10. (a)

句中的 A tricycle 是"三轮车"，当然有 3 个轮子。因此只有(a)three wheels(3 个轮子)最合乎题义，其他 3 个选择(b)two wheels、(c)four wheels 和(d)one wheel 都与三轮车无关，因此都不正确。

11. (b)

(a)begin as 不是正确表达方式，应该是 begin with(以……开始)；(b)grow up to be(成长为，发展成)、(c)get into(陷入某种状态)、(d)happen to be(碰巧成为)这 4 个选择中，只有(b)的意思最贴切，最合乎这个句子的要求，所以应该选(b)grow up to be(他们将会成为未来的冠军)。若选其他 3 个都意思不通顺。

12. (c)

只有选(c)out of breath(上气不接下气)才能使这个句子与前一句 Some of us are gasping for air(我们中的一些人已喘不过气了)意义相符合。(a)without breath 不是固定短语；(b)breathing(呼吸)不合乎题义；(d)coughing(咳嗽)更不符合题义；所以(c)是正确答案。

4 句子结构答案

It is not long *before they are accustomed to swimming*.

Lesson 95
A fantasy
纯属虚构

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

While the Ambassador of Escalopia was in his office, university students set the basement of the Embassy on fire. When the Ambassador went to investigate, a man called Horst aimed a fire extinguisher at him because he thought that the Ambassador was on fire. Moreover, there was a hole in the Ambassador's hat which had been made when someone fired a shot through his office window. The Ambassador was lucky, for he was not wearing it at the time. (78 *words*)

The Ambassador of Escalopia was in his office when university students set the Embassy basement on fire. After the Ambassador had gone to investigate, a man called Horst aimed a fire extinguisher at him under the impression that the Ambassador was on fire. In addition to this, there was a hole in the Ambassador's hat. It had been made when someone fired a shot through his office window. It was lucky for the Ambassador that he was not wearing it. (79 *words*)

作文参考答案

Upon hearing that the fire broke out in the basement, the Ambassador of Escalopia went down immediately to investigate. He shouted at Horst and ordered him to put out the fire quickly. Horst explained that the fire had already been extinguished, but it seemed to him that the Ambassador was on fire. The Ambassador denied it. But Horst insisted that he was on fire and aimed the fire extinguisher at him. At this point, the Ambassador got very angry, so he decided to get Horst posted. He said that he would send Horst to the South Pole. Then Horst explained to him that Escalopia had already broken off diplomatic relations with the South Pole. The Ambassador, who was at a loss what to say, went out angrily. Now Horst was pleased with himself. (132 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

Dear Alice,

I have some news for you. I am going to hold a dinner party at home next Saturday to celebrate the tenth anniversary of our graduation from the university. As you are both my intimate friend and former classmate, I would like to invite you to the party. Besides, I shall invite many old friends. It must be a cheerful and exciting occasion, for we haven't seen these friends for years. We can talk about our good old days at the university and about our present. I am sure we shall have a good time. Please come to my house at 4 p.m. next Saturday. I shall be looking forward to seeting you. (115 *words*)

关键句型练习答案

A. When she asked what had happened and how his clothes had got into such a mess, the Ambassador answered drily that a fire extinguisher had been responsible. He then told her that university students had set the Embassy on fire that morning. His wife was most surprised and asked him where he had been at the time. The Ambassador answered that he had been in his office as usual. When the fire broke out in the basement, he had gone down to investigate and a man called Horst had aimed a fire extinguisher at him. Horst thought the Ambassador was on fire. The Ambassador said that he must definitely get the fellow posted. His wife suddenly noticed a big hole in her husband's hat and asked him how he could explain it. The Ambassador said that someone had fired a shot through his office window. The shot was accurate, but fortunately he had not been wearing his hat at the time. If he had, he would not have been able to get home for lunch.

B. have *just* received ... said ... has broken ... were demonstrating/demonstrated ... broke ... set ... were protesting ... has *recently* been imposed/was *recently* imposed ... said ... has been *seriously* affected ... is said ... was *bravely* defended ... kept ... announced ... would be taken

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

根据课文第 11 行，只有(d)because Horst thought he was on fire 与课文内容相符合，其他 3 个选择都与课文内容不符。

2. (a)

根据课文所描述的情景，只有(a)calm(沉着的，冷静的)最能形容那位大使的表情。而其他 3 个选择(b)angry (气愤)、(c)worried(担心的)和(d)upset(心烦的)都与课文所描绘的情形不符。

3. (b)

只有(b)was shocked(感到震惊，受到惊吓)与前一句中的 got a shock(吓了一跳)意义最接近。(a)has shocked、(c)was shocking 和(d)shocked 都是主动语态，只是时态不同，与前一句含义不符，只有(b)表示被动的意义，合乎题义，所以应该选(b)。

4. (a)

只有选(a) to burn(烧掉)才与前一句 They set the Embassy on fire(他们放火烧着了大使馆)的含义相符合，并合乎语法。若选(b)buring、(c)for burning 和(d)in burning 都不符合语法，因为他们都不能跟在动词 try 后面。try 后面可以跟动词不定式：try to do sth. 或跟名词 try sth.，所以只有(a)是正确答案。

5. (d)

本句是将前面的直接疑问句"Where were you?"转换成了间接疑问句形式，主句是 His wife wanted to know where...，间接问句应该用陈述句语序，时态应该由原来的一般过去时变成过去完成时，人称也要作相应的改变

也才合乎语法。(a)he was 是陈述句语气,但时态与间接疑问不相符,因此不合乎语法;(b)was 不是完整句子;(c)was he 时态和语序都不正确;只有(d)he had been 是陈述语气,又是过去完成时,符合语法,所以应该选(d)。

6. (c)

只有选(c)have him posted(把他打发走)才能同前一句 I must get that fellow posted 的意义相同。因为 have him posted 与 get him posted 意思相同,都是“把某人派走”的意思,但暗示的是让别人去做,而不是说话人自己去做。而(a)post him 是“派他走”的意思,是指说话人自己去做的;(b)have posted him 同(a)含义相同只是时态不同,它们都与前一句意义不符;(d)have got him posted 不是正确的短语。所以(c)是最佳答案。

7. (d)

只有选(d)not to be 最合乎语法,并与前一句 Fortunately I wasn't wearing it 含义保持一致。not to be 是动词不定式的否定形式,它后面省略了 wearing it,即 not to be wearing it。动词不定式的否定形式应该将否定词 not 放在 to 前面,而不应该放在后面,因此(a)to be not、(b)to not be 和(c)to don't be 都不合乎语法。

8. (c)

前半句中的 in a mess 是“一塌糊涂”、“肮脏”的意思,后半句是对 in a mess 的进一步说明,因此需要选出同它含义相同的词或词组。(a)inside out(里面翻到外面)、(b)upside down(颠倒,混乱不堪)、(c)dirty(肮脏的)、(d)back to front 这 4 个词中,只有(c)dirty 与 in a mess 含义最接近,所以应该选(c)。

9. (a)

只有(a)与句中的动词 put 构成的短语 put out(熄灭)能

说明 fire extinguisher 的用途，而其他 3 个选择(b)in、(c)off、(d)over 都不合乎题义，所以只有(a)是正确答案。

10. (c)

本句需要一个与前一句中的 set ... on fire(放火烧着了)含义相同的词组才能与前一句意义相符合。(a)fire it(使……爆炸，向它开枪)、(b)shoot it(向它开枪，射中它)、(c)burn it down(把它烧毁)、(d)light it up(照亮它，点燃烟等)这 4 个选择中，只有(c)与 set ... on fire 的含义最接近，因此应该选(c)。

11. (d)

本句需要一个同前一句中的 broke out(开始，爆发)含义相同的词或词组，才能与前一句意义相符合。(a)burst(爆炸，炸裂)、(b)burst out(冲出)、(c)set out(出发，着手)和(d)began(开始，着手)这 4 个选择中，只有(d)began 与 broke out 含义相同，所以(d)是正确答案。

12. (c)

本句需要一个与前一句中的 be posted(被派任)含义相同的词或词组，才能与前一句含义相吻合。(a)dismissed(被解散，被免除职务，职位)、(b)sent by air(通过航空邮寄)、(c)sent to another place(被派往另一个地方)和(d)shot(被抛出，被射出)这 4 个选择中，只有(c)最接近 be posted 的意义，所以(c)是最佳答案。

4 句子结构答案

'How *did your clothes get into such a mess?*'

Lesson 96
The dead return
亡灵返乡

1 写作练习

摘要写作参考答案

The Japanese annual Festival for the Dead is a cheerful occasion. As the dead are said to return home, food is laid out for them and lanterns are lit to guide them on their way. People dance and sing all night and the uneaten food is thrown into the sea or into a river the next morning. In some places, the lanterns are placed on the sea and people watch from the shore until the lanterns drift out of sight. (80 *words*)

The Japanese annual Festival for the Dead is a cheerful occasion, for the dead are said to return home. Not only is food laid out for them, but lanterns are lit to guide them as well while people dance and sing all night. The uneaten food is thrown into the sea or a river the next morning. In some places, the lanterns are placed on the sea. People watch from the shore as the lanterns drift out of sight. (79 *words*)

作文参考答案

The Festival for the Dead was a traditional Japanese festival held once a year. In the early morning, people made

some small lanterns, and prepared special food in order to welcome the dead to their homes. When the night fell, food was laid out for them, and lanterns were hung outside each house to help them to find their way. Throughout the night, people danced and sang in the brightly lit streets.

The following morning, the food was thrown away into the sea as people considered it would be unlucky for the living to eat it. And thousands of lanterns were placed on the sea to guide the dead back to the other world. All the people stood on the shore watching the lanterns drifting slowly away until they finally disappeared, and the sun rose up high in the sky. It was really a cheerful and moving spectacle. (146 *words*)

书信写作参考答案

Dear Tom,

It is very kind of you to invite me to the party, but I am sorry to say that I cannot come because I bought tickets for the Cup Final a month ago. You know it is very difficult to get the tickets. And I have already arranged to go with several friends. So please excuse me for not coming to your party. I hope you will have a wonderful time then. Thank you all the same.

(79 *words*)

2 语法、词汇练习

关键句型练习答案

A.	1. usual	2. among	3. manager	4. clothes
	5. greets	6. clean	7. washing	8. temper

9. too　　10. fairly　　11. enough　　12. single

13. queue

B. 1. in　　2. out of　　3. up　　4. over

5. away from　　6. for　　7. in　　8. out

9. down　　10. after　　11. into　　12. over

13 out　　14 up

3 多项选择练习

1. (d)

从课文第 1～3 行可以看出，只有(d) the dead are welcomed home by the living 与课文内容相符合，并能说明这个节日为什么是欢乐的，而其他 3 个选择虽然都是课文涉及的内容，但不是这节日欢乐的原因。所以(d)是正确答案。

2. (c)

根据课文第 5～6 行，只有(c) They are supposed to help the dead to find their way 与课文内容相符合，而其他 3 个选择都与课文内容不符。所以(c)是正确的。

3. (c)

这是一个针对频度提问的疑问句，回答是 Only once a year(一年只有一次)，需要一个合适的疑问词，使其与回答相符合。(a)How much 是问不可数名词的多少，而不是问频度的；(b)How many(多少)和(d)Which times(哪些时候)也不是问频度的；只有(c)How many times(多少次)可以对频度提问，并与回答相符合，所以应该选(c)。

4. (b)

本句是将前面的被动语态句 The dead are said to return (据说死去的人要回来)变成了主动语态，需要选出合适

的主语和谓语。(a)It is saying 不合乎逻辑，因为主动语态的主语应该是人，不应该用 it 作主语；(c)People are said 是被动语态，不合乎逻辑和语法；(d)It said 也不正确，因为主语是 It，不是人；只有(b)People say 是主动语态并且是以人作主语，最合乎语法和题义，所以应该选(b)。

5. (a)

本句需要一个同前一句的时间状语 All night long(整个夜晚)含义相同的短语，才能使两个句子意义相同。(b)in all the night 不合乎惯用法，应该将介词 in 去掉才正确；(c)the night long 不是正确表达方式，意义不通顺；(d)in the night 不合乎语法，应该是 at night；只有(a)during the whole night(整个夜晚)既合乎语法又合乎题义，因此应该选(a)。

6. (d)

这是一个含有 If 引导的条件从句的句子，主句用的是一般将来时，If 从句应该用一般现在时才合乎语法规则。(a)would eat 是过去将来时；(b)will eat 是一般将来时；(c)had eaten 是过去完成时；这 3 个选择都不合乎语法，只有(d)eats 是一般现在时第 3 人单数形式，只有(d)与 occassion 的含义相近，所以(d)是最佳答案。

7. (C)

本句的关系从句是过去完成时，需要一个与时态相符合的时间短语。只有(c)the previous night(前一个夜晚)能用于过去完成时，故选(c)。

8. (d)

本句需要一个同前一句中的名词 occasion(节日，重大时刻)含义相近的名词。(a)situation(形势，情况)、(b)condition(条件，情况)、(c)place(地点，情形)和

(d)event(要事，大事)中，只有(d)与 occasion 含义相近，所以(d)是最佳答案。

9. (a)
只有选(a)away 才能与前一句 The food is thrown into the river 含义相符合。(b)off、(c)out，(d)down 都与前一句所表达的意思不相符，所以(a)是最佳答案。

10. (b)
只有选(b)after(之后)，才与前一句中的时间状语从句... when the festival is over(在节日结束时)含义相同，而其他 3 个选择(a)during(在……期间)、(c)before(在……之前)和(d)at the same time as(在……的同时)都不符合题义。所以(b)是正确答案。

11. (c)
只有(c)show them the way(给他们指路)与前一句中的 guide the dead to the other world(指引亡灵返回另一个世界)含义相符合。其他 3 个选择(a)drive them(驱赶他们)、(b)steer them(引导他们)、(d)instruct them(教导他们)都不如(c)的意义更贴切，所以(c)是最佳答案。

12. (b)
本句需要一个与前一句中的 spectacle(壮观场面)含义相同的词，才能与前一句意义相一致。(a)view(风景，视野)、(b)sight(情景，壮观，景色)、(c)vision(视觉，梦幻，想像)、(d)viewpoint(看法，观点)中，只有(b)sight 与 spectacle 含义最接近，因为它们都有"壮观景色"的含义，其他 3 个选择意思都不够恰当，所以(b)是最佳答案。

4 句子结构答案

As they *are expected to be hungry after their long journey*, *food is laid out for them*.